

目 录

前 言	
第一章 GMAT 语法考试总论	1
第二章 句子结构	6
第三章 主谓一致	49
第四章 动词形式	77
第五章 分词和不定式	116
第六章 平行结构	147
第七章 比较结构	187
第八章 修饰语、定语从句和状语从句	223
第九章 词的使用与惯用法	259
第十章 逻辑表达	297
第十一章 综合练习题及其详解	332

第一章

GMAT 语法考试总论

In Egypt in the late Paleolithic period, the climate changed, pastures became deserts, and the inhabitants were forced to withdraw to the land bordering the Nile from their hunting grounds.

(A) inhabitants were forced to withdraw to the land bordering the Nile from their hunting grounds

(B) inhabitants had been forced to withdraw from their hunting grounds to the bank of the Nile

(C) inhabitants were forced to withdraw from their hunting grounds to the land bordering the Nile

所述答案最有效地表达了原句所陈述的合理意思及合理重心

3. GMAT 语法考试的一个最普遍原则

(1) 表达的准确性：准确意思的表达清晰、准确

(2) 表达的简洁性：符合语法规则，句子结构正确以及用词准确

2. GMAT 语法考试的两个基本要求

(1) 语义重复

同时使用包含相同核心意思的词语，同时的词语搭配，词的位置正确，避免词义的

(2) 同义重复

平行结构词组前缀

通常语法规则包括主谓一致，句子结构，谓词动词形式，非谓词动词形式，比较结构

(1) 语法规则

1. GMAT 语法考试的重点

时，我们可以总结如下

根据上述 GMAT 语法考试的特点，我们可以总结出

GMAT 语法考试的特点

This question tests correctness and other aspects of grammar. The correct answer is the one that follows the regular rules of standard written English. The other answers are incorrect because of grammatical errors, choice of words, and sentence construction. The correct answer is the one that follows the regular rules of standard written English. The other answers are incorrect because of grammatical errors, choice of words, and sentence construction.

This question presents a sentence with a blank. The sentence you will find five ways to complete the blank. The first answer is the original; the other four are variations. You must choose the first answer; otherwise choose the other.

Directions:

Section II: Sentence Completion

一、解读 Sentence Correction 的 Directions

Directions:

This question presents a sentence, all or part of which is underlined. Beneath the sentence you will find five ways of phrasing the underlined part. The first of these repeats the original; the other four are different. If you think the original is best, choose the first answer; otherwise choose one of the others.

This question tests correctness and effectiveness of expression. In choosing your answer, follow the requirements of standard written English; that is, pay attention to grammar, choice of words, and sentence construction. Choose the answer that produces the most effective sentence; this answer should be clear and exact, without awkwardness, ambiguity, redundancy, or grammatical error.

根据上述机考 GMAT 中 Sentence Correction 的 Directions 以及相关考题考点统计分析,我们可以得出以下结论:

1. GMAT 语法考试的三大重点

1) 语法规则

常考语法规则包括主谓一致、句子结构、谓语动词形式、非谓语动词形式、比较结构、平行结构和修饰语。

2) 词的使用

词的使用包括词的标准书面语用法、简洁的习惯搭配、词的位置正确、避免词与词的语义重复。

3) 逻辑表达

逻辑表达包括表达的简洁性、逻辑意思的合理性和单一性。

2. GMAT 语法考试的两个基本要求

1) 表达的准确性:符合语法规则,句子结构正确以及用词准确。

2) 表达的有效性:逻辑意思的表达清晰、准确。

3. GMAT 语法考试的一个最高原则

所选答案要最有效地表达原句所陈述的合理意思及合理重心。

案例解析

In Egypt in the late Paleolithic period, the climate changed, pastures became deserts, and the *inhabitants were forced to withdraw to the land bordering the Nile from their hunting grounds*.

- (A) inhabitants were forced to withdraw to the land bordering the Nile from their hunting grounds
- (B) inhabitants had been forced to withdraw from their hunting grounds to the land that bordered the Nile
- (C) inhabitants were forced to withdraw from their hunting grounds to the land bordering the

Nile

- (D) inhabitants having been forced to, withdrew from their hunting grounds to the land that bordered the Nile
- (E) inhabitants withdrew, because they were forced to, from their hunting grounds to the land bordering the Nile

1) 三大重点的考查

① 语法规则

- A. 句子结构——并列句(句子 1 the climate changed, 句子 2 pastures became deserts, and 句子 3)
- B. 谓语动词形式——时态选择(B 选项中过去完成时 had been forced to 错)
- C. 非谓语动词形式——分词短语(C 选项中分词的完成时态作定语, 错)

② 词的使用

- A. 习惯搭配——withdraw from; from...to...
- B. 词的位置正确——划线部分的介词短语 from their hunting grounds 位置不对, 应靠近其修饰对象 withdraw。

③ 逻辑表达

- A. 逻辑意思的单一性——划线部分的介词短语 from their hunting grounds 语法上应就近修饰 the Nile, 而逻辑上应修饰 withdraw, 所以其修饰对象不单一。
- B. 逻辑意思的合理性——the land 与 border the Nile 的合理逻辑关系应为: 后者作为前者的动作具有客观性、多次性和重复性, 无明确时间概念。应使用-ing 形式作定语强调这一逻辑关系, 这里不能用定语从句作定语强调动作的一次性和具体时间下的具体行为。所以 B 和 D 选项的 that bordered the Nile 错。

2) 两个基本要求的实现

- ① 表达的准确性: C 选项符合语法规则(时态 were forced to), 句子结构正确(句子 1, 句子 2 and 句子 3)以及用词准确(withdraw from...to...)。
- ② 表达的有效性: 逻辑意思的表达清晰、准确(the land bordering the Nile)。

3) 最高原则的体现

所选答案(C 选项为正确答案)最有效地表达了原句所陈述的合理意思及合理重心(inhabitants were forced to withdraw...)。而 D、E 选项的 inhabitants withdrew... 改变原句的合理重心 inhabitants were forced to...。另外, D 选项将原主句内容变成无根据添加的 because 从句的内容, 句子意思和重心都改变。

二、题干和选项的阅读方法

1. 题干的阅读方法

- 1) 找出基本结构(包括主句的基本结构和重要从句的基本结构)。
- 2) 抛弃可抛弃的成分(包括定语、状语、插入语等修饰性成分)。
- 3) 回避不能理解的词、短语。

2. 选项的阅读方法

- 1) 因为 A 选项和题干的划线部分一样, 所以阅读选项时, A 选项可以不读。

- 2) 阅读选项时,不断地比较选项间的差异,尤其是用词与句子结构的变化。
- 3) 用选项替换题干划线部分,进行上下文语法与逻辑分析。

三、答题的程序和方法

1. 抓基本结构和明显错误(基本结构过于复杂时,就放弃基本结构的寻找,直接找明显错误)。
特别说明:万一看完句子后一头雾水,请不要绝望,立即进入下一步。
2. 寻找选项间的差异,通过选项对比寻找解题的突破口。
3. 关注原句中没有划线的部分(通过划线部分和未划线部分的协调来寻找答案)和划线部分容易出错的地方(如代词)。
4. 密切关注习惯搭配、形式对称、逻辑搭配、简洁性、意思单一性。
5. 选项错误的寻找顺序——从易到难
 - 从明显的、绝对的错误到相对错误;
 - 从语法错误到逻辑错误;
 - 从基本结构中的错误到修饰性成分中的错误。

示范

Where once the union had acquiesced to the prejudices of its English-speaking members by supporting the imposition of an alien tax on immigrant workers, after 1897 the United Mine Workers made a determined effort to enlist Italians and Slavs in its ranks.

- (A) Where once the union had acquiesced to the prejudices of its English-speaking members by supporting
- (B) Where once the union acquiesced to its English-speaking members' prejudice for the support of
- (C) While once the union had acquiesced to the prejudices of its English-speaking members in support of
- (D) While once the union acquiesced to its English-speaking members' prejudice in supporting
- (E) While once the union had acquiesced to the prejudices of its English-speaking members in its supporting of

1. 抓基本结构——Where(尽管)从句, the United Mine Workers made a determined effort to...; 划线部分无明显错误。
2. 寻找选项间的差异,通过选项对比寻找解题的突破口——had acquiesced (ACE)与 acquiesced(BD)的时态不同;在短语 by supporting(A), for the support of(B), in support of (C), in supporting(D), in its supporting of (E) 中, E 选项的 in its supporting of 不符合习惯搭配,所以错。排除 E 选项。
3. 关注原句中没有划线的部分(通过划线部分和未划线部分的协调来寻找答案)—— after

1897 the United Mine Workers made a determined effort to... 决定了划线部分的 the union had acquiesced to... 过去完成时正确和划线部分容易出错的地方(本句代词 its 没有错)。排除 B、D 选项。

4. 密切关注习惯搭配、形式对称、逻辑搭配、简洁性、意思单一性——C 选项的 in support of... 语法上应作定语修饰 its English-speaking members, 但逻辑上应作状语修饰 had acquiesced to..., 修饰对象不单一。排除 C 选项。

正确答案为: A 选项。

四、GMAT 语法的重要性和学习目标

有效的 GMAT 语法复习在整个 GMAT 复习中占有非常重要的地位, 这种重要性体现在:

1. 保证语法部分的较高正确率将决定能否取得 GMAT 高分。比方说, 如果语法部分能保证 75% ~ 80% 的正确率, 逻辑和阅读部分只要分别达到 50% ~ 60%、25% ~ 35% 的正确率, verbal 就可以拿到 31 ~ 33, 总分将达到 680 ~ 710 (数学有 49 ~ 50)。

2. 与阅读和逻辑相比, 通过短时间的有效的训练可以大幅度提高语法部分的正确率。这是因为: 首先, GMAT 语法规则是有限的, 通过反复训练能够很快掌握和适应标准书面语的语法规则。其次, 相对于阅读和逻辑来说, 语法题目的阅读量比较少, 容易拿分。复习到最后, 阅读速度将成为提高正确率的瓶颈, 逻辑和阅读部分将很难有大的提高。

3. 语法部分将很难利用机经, 所以只能通过自己的扎实努力提高成绩。

学习 GMAT 语法必须实现三大目标:

1. 培养程序化解题的思维, 面对每一道题目, 都必须具有庖丁解牛般的技艺。
2. 培养对常见错误的敏感性, 对屡试不爽的一些语法规则要熟记心中。
3. 培养快速阅读的习惯, 能够迅速准确地抓住句子的基本结构和意思。

总之, 当你把这本书啃下来的时候, 当你有这样的感觉时——“GMAT 语法就那么回事, 考来考去就那么几个知识点, 我都可以去教 GMAT 语法了”——那么恭喜你, 你可以粉墨登场了。

第二章

GMAT 语法学习目标和

GMAT

句子结构

第一节 句子结构

一、语法单位与层次

现代英语的语法结构可按五个层次划分:句子(sentence)、从句(clause)、短语(phrase)、词(word)、词素(morpheme),其中句子是最高层次的语法单位,词素是最低的语法单位。

GMAT 的语法考试只涉及前四个层次,但与词素有关的构词法可以帮助考生推测生词的词性和含义。这一目前世界上最难的语法考试以句子为中心测试考生的三方面能力:

1. 语法规则的使用能力,约占全部考点的 50%。
2. 词与短语的准确使用能力,约占全部考点的 30%。
3. 对语法结构背后的逻辑含义的理解力,约占全部考点的 20%。

近几年的机考题中针对上述第 3 种能力所设计的考点与考题有增加的趋势。

二、句子的基本结构

一个规范的完整句子一般由核心部分(主语核心词+谓语部分)+可抛弃成分(定语/定语从句、状语/状语从句、同位语和独立成分/插入语)组成。所以在阅读句子时,可先抛弃可抛弃的成分,把握其基本结构和核心意思。例如:

Traditionally, the first firm to commercialize a new technology has benefited from the unique opportunity to shape product definitions, forcing followers to adapt to a standard or invest in an unproven alternative.

该句的基本结构为:..., the first firm to... has benefited from the unique opportunity to..., ...

三、句子分类

根据句子中主谓结构的套数(一套、二套或多套)和各套主谓结构之间的关系,英语句子可分为简单句、并列句和主从句。

1. 简单句:只含有一套主谓结构。
2. 并列句:由两套或两套以上并列的主谓结构组成的句子。
3. 主从句:含有两套或两套以上主谓结构,其中一套为主句,其余为从句,在语法上作为主句的一个成分。
4. 并列主从复合句:并列句与主从句的融合结构,即其中的两大部分是并列的,而一个或每个并列分句又是一个主从句。这种结构实际上仍属于主从复合句。

GMAT 语法考试以主从句和并列句为主,并从语义上考查上述各句子内部的逻辑关系,尤其是不同的逻辑关系不能相互颠倒、混淆或随意改变:

- 1) 简单句表达主次关系:主谓表达核心意思,修饰词或修饰短语表达次要意思。
- 2) 并列句表达并列关系:并列的主谓结构强调两个或两个以上的核心意思同等重要。
- 3) 主从句表达主从关系:主句表达主要意思,从句表达从属意思。

四、句子结构的完整性

一个完整的句子中主语和谓语是必不可少的,常见的错误是:出现三种不完整的句子结

构。一是缺少主句；二是缺少主语；三是缺少谓语，包括主句缺谓语和从句缺谓语两种情况。尤其是 what 从句不能缺少谓语。例如：the necessity of what kind of military action in order to do... 是错误的，而正确的表达方式 of what military action is necessary to do...

五、准确使用标点符号

GMAT 考试中常用标点符号有逗号、分号、冒号、破折号，具体用法如下：

1. 标准书面语中，逗号不能连接两个或三个句子，即两个或三个句子用逗号连接(句子 1, 句子 2 或句子 1, 句子 2, 句子 3)是永远错误的表达。修改办法有：
 - 1) 用分号连接：句子 1; 句子 2 或句子 1; 句子 2; 句子 3 (GMAT 考试中较少出现)
 - 2) 用连词“and”连接：句子 1 and 句子 2 或句子 1, 句子 2 and 句子 3 (GMAT 考试中较少出现)
 - 3) 用逗号和连词同时连接：句子 1, and 句子 2 或句子 1, 句子 2, and 句子 3
 - 4) 把一个句子变成短语或变为另一个句子的从句：句子 1, 短语/从句或句子 1, and 句子 2, 短语/从句
2. 主谓之间不能加逗号(即主语, 谓语)，除非有插入成分(即主语, 插入成分, 谓语)。
3. 分号前后必须使用完整主谓结构(即句子 1; 句子 2)，它不能连接句子与短语(即句子; 短语或短语; 句子)。
4. 冒号后可以使用：一个句子、句子并列、词或短语并列。
5. 破折号可以引出：作补充说明的句子或短语、同位语、插入语、列举的事物。

六、副词不能代替连词

then, also, therefore, however 等副词不能代替 and 起连词的作用。例如，then 在并列结构中的用法为：do A and then do B; doing A and then doing B; suspect sb. of having done A and then of doing B, 上述结构中的连词 and 不能省略。

七、介词不能代替连词

任何介词都不能用作连词引导从句，即介词后不能加主谓结构。例如：High levels of fertilizer and pesticides, needed by farmers try to produce high yields of the same crop year after year, pollute water supplies. 句中的介词 by 应改为连词 when。

第二节 名词性从句

在句法功能上，名词性从句相当于一个名词，因此而得名。名词性从句根据功能可分为三类：主语从句、宾语从句和表语从句。

名词性从句通常要用连接词语引出。根据连接词语的形态和意义，可分为两类：that 型(由从属连词 that 引导)和疑问词型(由从属连词 whether, 连接代词 who, whom, whose, what, which, whoever, whatever 等和连接副词 where, when, how, why 等引导)。

一、主语从句

1. 主语从句的位置

主语从句可以位于句子前部,也可以位于句子后部,视具体情况而定。一般来说,在不考虑前后文的单句中,如果主语从句不比其余部分长,也就是不影响句子的平衡时,或是不作为新信息时,多数位于句子前部;否则,多数位于句子后部。

2. 主语从句可以用形式主语 it 代替。

1) It be + adj. (如 likely, possible, evident, surprising, true) + that...

2) It be + -ed 分词(如 estimated, expected, predicted, anticipated, required, proved, found, feared, assumed, admitted, noted, supposed, reported, suggested, decided, noticed) + that...

3) It be + 名词词组(如 good news to sb., a fearful disappointment to sb., a pity) + that...

4) It + seem/happen/appear + that...

3. 主语从句只能使用陈述语序。

4. 带有主语从句的复合句中,主语从句作为一个整体,视为单数,谓语动词也相应用第三人称单数形式。

5. 主语从句可以并列。

6. 习惯搭配

It may well (很可能) be that...; It may be that...

二、宾语从句

1. 宾语从句可分为两类:动词型宾语从句和介词型宾语从句。

2. 动词型宾语从句引导词 that 在标准书面语中一般不能省略。

3. 宾语从句的时态可以与主句谓语动词时态不一致。表示客观存在、科学事实、统计数据、研究结论、商业惯例等常用一般现在时。

4. 宾语从句使用陈述语序。

5. 表示建议、命令、要求的动词的宾语从句,使用动词原形表示虚拟语气(参见第四章第三节)。

6. 介词后一般只能接疑问词引导的宾语从句,不可以接 that 引导的宾语从句。但有三个例外:but that, except that(= but that), in that(= because) 属于约定俗成的表达方式。

7. 若宾语从句后有补语,通常用形式宾语 it 来代替,如:...make it clear that...

三、表语从句

1. 表语从句位于主句系动词之后,可分为两类:be + that 型从句和 be + 疑问词型从句。

2. be + that 型从句

例如: The result is that water supplies are being taken from farmers to meet the needs of a growing urban population.

3. be + 疑问词型从句

例如: What is in question is whether an improvement in nutrition was the main reason for the decline of infectious diseases before the late nineteenth century.

4. 表语从句使用陈述语序。

5. 主句主语是 reason 时,表语从句要用 that 引导,不可用 because。但 reasons 作主语时,表语要用名词短语并列,例如: The most common reasons for...are 名词短语 1, 名词短

语 2 and 名词短语 3。

第三节 特殊结构

一、强调结构

1. It is/was + 强调对象 + that/ who
2. It was not until...that...(直到...才...)
3. 强调动词: do/ did/ does + verb
4. if any: 作插入成分, 强调名词短语, 意为“如果说有的话”。
5. many + 名词短语, if not most, verb

例如: Although Ms. Bakara had previously emphasized that she could not speak for other Black people, she ventured to do so on this one occasion because she firmly believed that many minority people, if not most, would agree with her.

6. ...as...as...; if not more so,...

例如: The use of chemical pesticides in this country is as extensive as it was ten years ago, if not more so.

二、倒装结构

1. so/ such...that 中 so 短语和 such 短语位于句首时, 主句需要部分倒装。
2. 否定性词或短语位于句首时, 引起部分倒装: never; no longer; rarely; hardly; few; little; not until.
3. 全倒装结构: 介词短语/-ing 分词短语/-ed 分词短语/形容词短语 + be 动词 + 主语(主语与前面的 be 动词主谓一致)。

三、as 结构

1. as 作介词: as + n. 表示作为..., 为..., 以...; 常用结构有:
 - 1) n. + as + n.
 - 2) v. + as + n: as 引出宾语补语; 这样的动词有 accept, classify, define, describe, know, name, refer to, regard, speak of, state, take, think, view 等。
 - 3) v. + as + n.: as 引出方式状语。
2. as 作连词:
 - 1) 表示时间, 意为“一...就...”, “当...时”, “随着...”。
 - 2) 表示原因, 意为“由于”, “因为”, “既然”。
 - 3) 表示动作的相似性(GMAT 考试中出现最多的形式), 意为“就像...”; 当 as 从句与主句中的谓语相同时, as 从句中的谓语可用 do 代替, 以免重复; 句型结构有以下几种: (just) as..., + 主句; (just) as..., so + 主句; (just) as..., so too + 主句(部分倒装)。
3. as 偶尔作指代词, 代替简单主句。

例如: Indirect socialization also occurs, as when television shows or films reinforce

stereotyped images of women and men.

4. inasmuch as: 既然; 因为, 由于。

5. insofar as: 在...的范围。

四、同位结构

1. 同位结构起修饰语的作用, 一般用于修饰名词或者名词短语。

2. 同位结构必须对其修饰对象具有解释力。

3. 同位结构的位置: 名词前或名词后, 一般在修饰对象的后面。

4. 同位结构不影响主谓一致。

5. 同位结构中名词的数可以和其修饰对象的数不一致。

6. 同位结构的形式:

1) 名词性同位结构, 名词解释名词:

n., n.; n., a / an + n. 或 a / an + n., n.; the + n. + n. (前面的 the + n. 为同位结构)

2) 内容具体化同位结构:

抽象名词(theory / evidence / belief / principle) + that 从句, that 从句对抽象名词进行具体化解释。

特别注意: 具体化同位结构(表示整体含义)与 of 结构(表示所属关系)的区别。

3) 概括性同位结构:

用一个概括性的名词去概括前面的解释对象: 短语/句子, a program/ information/ an effort/ a practice that...

特别注意: 概括性同位结构必须能“概括”, 逻辑意思要符合生活事理和科技常识。

4) 名词重复性同位结构:

n., n. (重复所修饰的名词) + that 定从

5) 代词代替性同位结构:

n., one / ones + that 定从

五、独立主格结构

1. 独立主格结构在句首或句尾, 起状语作用, 表伴随原因、条件、状态等。

2. 一般独立主格, 与主句形成松散的逻辑关系, 形式为:

n. + n.; n. + -ed / -ing 形式; n. + 介词短语; n. + 形容词短语。

3. with 型独立主格, 与主句形成紧密的逻辑联系, 形式为:

with + n. + -ed / -ing 形式; with + n. + adj.; with + n. + 介词短语。

4. each 型独立主格, 强调句尾名词, 形式为:

句子 + 复数名词结尾, each + 介词短语 / 形容词短语 / -ed 形式 / -ing 形式。

六、省略结构

1. 省略的前提条件是必须保持句子意思的完整无缺, 不能引起争议和歧义。

2. 省略往往是为了避免重复。可以承接前面的内容省略(承前省略), 有可以承接后文的内容省略(后指省略)。例如:

He is not only a teacher of English, but also of Chinese. (of 前省略了 a teacher)

3. 省略的部分要能够“还原”，还原后语法上要求结构对应，逻辑关系正确。

4. 定语从句中的省略(详见第八章)。

5. 状语从句中的省略(详见第八章)。

6. 比较从句中的省略(详见第七章)。

7. 并列结构中的省略：

1) 省略相同的主语、宾语、连系动词、助动词、情态动词：

sb. do...and (sb.) do...; sb. do (sth.) and do sth.; sth. be A and (be) B; be doing...and doing...; be done and done; have done...and done...; will do...and do...; must/would/should/can/could/may do...and do...

2) 两个句子并列，第一个句子含有 be 动词或者 become，第二个句子中的 be 动词或者 become 必须省略，同时，一些重复的名词或形容词也必须省略。例如：

Once the economic and social usefulness of the motor car was demonstrated and its superiority to the horse proved, ... (proved 前省略了 was)

8. be 动词或 being 常倾向于省略：

be known as being sth. (省去 being); n., being sth. (省去 being)

9. 习惯性省略

as needed; as planned; as required; as scheduled

whenever necessary / needed / possible; wherever necessary / needed / possible than ever; than before; than ever before; than usual; than expected; than predicted; than estimated; than anticipated

consider sth. (省 to be) sth.; consider sth. (省 to be) adj.; prove (省 to be) adj.

七、否定结构

1. 全部否定

1) 用 not 否定谓语动词。

2) 除 not 外，其他表示全部否定意义的词有：no, no one/nobody, none (of), neither...nor..., never, neither, nor, nothing。

2. 部分否定

1) 某些不定代词与否定词连用，表示部分否定，如：all, every, both 等。

2) 某些副词与否定词连用，表示部分否定，如：always, often, quite, entirely, altogether 等。

3. 双重否定

1) 形式上是否定，内容上是肯定，表达强烈语气。

2) 形式一：否定词 + 否定词缀，如：not incapable, not unlike..., nothing impossible, never dissatisfied。

3) 形式二：否定词 + 含有否定意义的词语，如：there is no doubt that...; Man cannot live without water。

4) 形式三：否定词 + 否定词或否定句，如：

No one should do nothing to society.

He is nothing if not diligent.

4. 意义上的否定

英语中有些词和短语在意义上表示否定,如: little, few, seldom, scarcely, hardly, too...to, rather than, fail/failure to do..., in the absence of, no more...than...(与...同样不), no amount of(怎么...也不...), no longer, by no means, in no way, cannot...too。

· 练习题及其详解 ·

1. Often visible as smog, ozone is formed in the atmosphere from hydrocarbons and nitrogen oxides, two major pollutants emitted by automobiles, react with sunlight.

- (A) ozone is formed in the atmosphere from
- (B) ozone is formed in the atmosphere when
- (C) ozone is formed in the atmosphere, and when
- (D) ozone, formed in the atmosphere when
- (E) ozone, formed in the atmosphere from

必杀一步

一步: 句子结构

- A 选项 划线部分介词 from 后跟一个完整主谓结构, 错: hydrocarbons and nitrogen oxides 是主语, two major pollutants emitted by automobiles 作 hydrocarbons and nitrogen oxides 的同位语, react 是谓语动词。介词后面只能加上名词或名词短语, -ing 形式以及名词性从句, 不能跟一个完整主谓结构。
- C 选项 and 连接主句和 when 状语从句, 主从和从句不能够并列。
- D 选项 句子结构“形容词短语, 名词, -ed 分词短语”没有谓语动词, 句子结构不完整。
- E 选项 同 D 选项, 没有谓语动词, 句子结构不完整, 并且同 A 选项, 介词 from 后面跟完整主谓结构, 错。 ➤ 一步到位, 排除 A C D E

13

正确选项 B

2. Quasars, at billions of light-years from Earth the most distant observable objects in the universe, believed to be the cores of galaxies in an early stage of development.

- (A) believed to be
- (B) are believed to be
- (C) some believe them to be
- (D) some believe they are
- (E) it is believed that they are

必杀一步

一步: 句子结构

- A 选项 句子结构: 名词, 插入语, -ed 分词短语。缺谓语动词, 句子结构不完整。
- C D E 选项 句子结构: 名词, 插入语, 句子。垂悬的句首名词 Quasars 与主句相分离, 功能不明确, 句子结构不合理。 ➤ 一步到位, 排除 A C D E

正确选项 B

believe 的习惯搭配: believe + that 从句; believe sth. to be; believe sth.

错误用法: believe sth. sth.; believe sth. that...

3. Computers are becoming faster, more powerful, and more reliable, and so too

are modems, they are the devices to allow two or more computers to share information over regular telephone lines.

- (A) so too are modems, they are the devices to allow
- (B) so too are modems, the devices that allow
- (C) so too modems, the devices allowing
- (D) also modems, they are the devices that allow
- (E) also modems, which are the devices to allow

读题

句子 1, and 句子 2, 句子 3. 其中, 句子 2 是 so too 位于句首的倒装结构。

必杀一步

一步: 句子结构

A 选项 句子 1, and 句子 2, 句子 3. 三个句子并列, 应该在最后一个句子前加上连词。

C 选项 句子, and so too modems. so too modems 句子结构不完整。so too 后面必须加句子(使用倒装结构)。

D 选项 句子 1, and also modems, 句子 2. 名词短语不能和句子 1、句子 2 构成平行结构, 并且句子 1 和句子 2 之间缺少连接词。

E 选项 句子, and also modems. 句子和名词短语形式不对称, 不能构成平行结构。

一步到位, 排除 A C D E

正确选项 B

同位结构

句子 1, and 句子 2, the devices that ...: the device that... 作 modems 的同位结构。

4. At ground level, ozone is a harmful pollutant, but in the stratosphere it shields the Earth from the most biologically harmful radiation emitted by the Sun, radiation in the ultraviolet band of the spectrum.

- (A) in the stratosphere
- (B) in the stratosphere, in which
- (C) it is in the stratosphere in which
- (D) in the stratosphere where
- (E) it is in the stratosphere and

读题

句子 1, but in the stratosphere + 句子 2

必杀二步

一步: 句子结构

B D 选项 but 后是一个介词短语, “句子, but + 介词短语 + 定语从句”, 句子结构不合理, 这里的 but 后应加完整主谓结构。排除 B D

二步: 不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

C E 选项 in the stratosphere 原来充当从属性成分, C E 选项把 in the stratosphere 变为主句的内容, 改变原句的重心。排除 C E

正确选项 A

5. While some propose to combat widespread illegal copying of computer programs by attempting to change people's attitudes toward pirating, others by suggesting reducing software prices to decrease the incentive for pirating, and still others by calling for the prosecution of those who copy software illegally.

- (A) by suggesting reducing software prices to decrease the incentive for pirating, and still others by calling
- (B) by suggesting the reduction of software prices to decrease the incentive for pirating, and still others call
- (C) suggest the reduction of software prices for decreasing the incentive for pirating, and still others call
- (D) suggest the reduction of software prices to decrease the incentive for pirating, and still others by calling
- (E) suggest reducing software prices to decrease the incentive for pirating, and still others are calling

第二步

一步: 句子结构

- A 选项 while 引导状语从句, 划线部分是两个代词并列, 句子结构为: while..., others and others, 整个句子缺主句。
 - B 选项 句子结构为: while..., others and + 句子, and 连接代词和句子, 句子结构混乱。
 - D 选项 句子结构为: while..., 句子 and others, and 连接句子和代词, 句子结构混乱。
- 排除 A B D

二步: 动作目的的表达

动作的目的关系用 to do 表示。

- C 选项 动作的目的用 for doing 表达, 错。而且, for decreasing... 修饰对象有争议, 可能作 the reduction of software prices 的定语, 也可能作 suggest... 的状语。
- 排除 C

正确选项 E

6. The demand for airplane mechanics is expected to grow about ten percent a year in the next decade, largely because new federal rules calling for major modifications to older planes and because the air-lines are adding hundreds of new jets.

- (A) new federal rules calling for major modifications to older planes
- (B) new federal rules, which call for major modifications to older planes
- (C) new federal rules call for major modifications to older planes
- (D) major modifications to older planes called for by new federal rules
- (E) major modifications to older planes are called for according to new federal rules

读题

The demand is expected to grow, largely because... and because...

必杀二步

一步: 句子结构

because 引导原因状语从句, 后面应该加上完整主谓结构。

A B D 选项 because 后面都是名词短语, 错。 ➤ 排除 A B D

二步: 主动优先原则

在同等情况下(主被动语态都可以接受), 优先使用主动语态。并且 E 选项中被动语态的动作执行者应该用 by 表示, 而不用 according to 表示。 ➤ 排除 E

正确选项 C

7. The filibuster, a parliamentary device that slows the snail's pace that prevails even in the best of times in congressional sessions and tests the endurance of everyone associated with it, seems more and more an anachronism in the age of telecommunications.

- (A) sessions and tests the endurance of everyone associated with it, seems
- (B) sessions and tests the endurance of everyone who is associated with it, seeming to be
- (C) sessions, tests the endurance of everyone associated with it, seems
- (D) sessions, that tests the endurance of everyone associated with it and seems
- (E) sessions, testing the endurance of everyone associated with it and seeming

读题

The filibuster, 同位语, seems more and more...

a parliamentary device that slows...and tests...作 the filibuster 的同位语

必杀二步

一步: 句子结构的完整性

B 选项 The filibuster, 同位语, seeming to be..., 句子缺谓语动词。

D 选项 The filibuster, a device that slows..., that tests...and seems..., 句子缺谓语动词。

E 选项 The filibuster, a device that slows..., testing...and seeming..., 句子缺谓语动词。 ➤ 排除 B D E

二步: 动词的并列

动词的并列必须用连词连接。

C 选项 the filibuster, a device that slows..., tests..., seems..., 定语从句中谓语动词 slows 和 tests 并列, 缺少连词 and。 ➤ 排除 C

正确选项 A

8. The energy source on *Voyager 2* is not a nuclear reactor, in which atoms are actively broken apart; rather a kind of nuclear battery that uses natural radioactive decay to produce power.

- (A) apart; rather
- (B) apart, but rather
- (C) apart, but rather that of
- (D) apart, but that of

(E) apart; it is that of

第二步

一步: 句子结构

分号前后必须是完整的主谓结构。

A 选项 分号后是一个名词短语 a kind of..., 句子结构不完整。✂ 排除 A

二步: 代词指代

C D E 选项 代词 that 没有指代对象。✂ 排除 C D E

正确选项 B

sth. is not a nuclear reactor, but rather a kind of nuclear battery...

名词的否定形式

not A, but B; not A, but rather B; A, rather than B; A, not B. not... but rather... 比 not... but... 语气强烈。

9. Like many others of his generation of Native American leaders, Joseph Brant lived in two worlds; born into an Iroquois community and instructed in traditional Iroquois ways, he also received an education from English-speaking teachers.

- (A) Like many others of his generation of Native American leaders, Joseph Brant lived in two worlds;
- (B) Like many others of his generation of Native American leaders, living in two worlds, Joseph Brant was
- (C) Like many another of his generation of Native American leaders, Joseph Brant, living in two worlds, was
- (D) As with many others of his generation of Native American leaders, living in two worlds, Joseph Brant was
- (E) As with many another of his generation of Native American leaders, Joseph Brant lived in two worlds;

17

第二步

一步: 句子结构

逗号不能连接两个完整的主谓结构。

B C 选项 Like sb., JB was born into... and instructed in... (句子 1), he also received ... (句子 2). “句子 1, 句子 2”永远错。

D 选项 As with sb., JB was born into... and instructed in... (句子 1), he also received ... (句子 2). “句子 1, 句子 2”永远错。✂ 排除 B C D

二步: 习惯用法

习惯搭配: one... another; each... the other; each other; some... others

E 选项 many another 不符合习惯搭配。✂ 排除 E

正确选项 A

分号的使用

分号可以连接两个完整的主谓结构: Like many others of..., JB lived in... (句子 1); born into... and instructed in..., he also received... (句子 2)。

10. A representative of the Women's Bureau of the United States Department of Labor contends that employers who offer benefits which permit that employees can balance home and work responsibilities better, realizing gains in attendance, recruiting, and retention.

- (A) which permit that employees can balance home and work responsibilities better, realizing
- (B) which permit employees balancing home and work responsibilities better will realize
- (C) that permit employees to balance the responsibilities of home and work better will realize
- (D) that permit employees a better balance between the responsibilities of home and work, thus realizing
- (E) such that employees are permitted a balance between home and work responsibilities, and they will realize

此题二步

一步: 句子结构

A 选项 contend 的宾语从句缺少谓语动词: 主语是 employers, who 定语从句修饰 employers, which 定语从句修饰 benefits, that 引导 permit 的宾语从句, realizing 为非谓语动词。

D 选项 contend 的宾语从句缺少谓语动词: 主语是 employers, who 定语从句修饰 employers, that 定语从句修饰 benefits, realizing 为非谓语动词。

E 选项 and 连接一个句子 they will realize... 和名词短语 employers who..., 永远错。

排除 A D E

二步: 习惯用法

permit sb. to do sth.

A 选项 permit + that 从句, 永远错。

B 选项 permit sb. doing 永远错。

E 选项 sb. be permitted sth. 永远错。排除 A B E

正确选项 C

11. El Niflo, the periodic abnormal warming of the sea surface off Peru, a phenomenon in which changes in the ocean and atmosphere combine allowing the warm water that has accumulated in the western Pacific to flow back to the east.

- (A) a phenomenon in which changes in the ocean and atmosphere combine allowing the warm water that has accumulated
- (B) a phenomenon where changes in the ocean and atmosphere are combining to allow the warm water that is accumulating
- (C) a phenomenon in which ocean and atmosphere changes combine and which allows the warm water that is accumulated
- (D) is a phenomenon in which changes in the ocean and atmosphere combine to allow

the warm water that has accumulated
(E) is a phenomenon where ocean and atmosphere changes are combining and allow the warm water accumulating

必杀二步

一步: 句子结构

A B C 选项 句子“El Niño, 插入语, a phenomenon + 定语从句”缺少谓语动词, 句子结构不完整。 ➤ 排除 A B C

二步: 习惯用法

修饰 phenomenon 的定语从句的关联词只能使用 in which。

E 选项 where 引导定语从句修饰 phenomenon, 不符合习惯用法, 并且 allow...doing 也不符合习惯搭配, 正确用法为 allow...to do。 ➤ 排除 E

正确选项 D

12. The rising of costs of data-processing operations at many financial institutions has created a growing opportunity for independent companies to provide these services more efficiently and at lower cost.

- (A) The rising of costs
- (B) Rising costs
- (C) The rising cost
- (D) Because the rising cost
- (E) Because of rising costs

必杀三步

一步: 句子结构

D 选项 整个句子成为 because 状语从句的内容, 缺少主句。

E 选项 because of + 句子, 结构混乱。 ➤ 排除 D E

二步: 主谓一致

谓语动词 has created 决定了主语必须是单数名词或单数名词短语。

B 选项 主语核心词为复数。 ➤ 排除 B

三步: 用词倾向性

动词 rise(v.) 有名词形式 rise(n.), 就不倾向使用 the rising 代替动作性名词 rise。

A 选项 the rising of costs 不符合习惯表达。 ➤ 排除 A

正确选项 C

rising 作为现在分词形式修饰 cost, 定冠词 the 限定主语核心词 cost。

13. In 1973 mortgage payments represented twenty-one percent of an average thirty-year-old male's income; and forty-four percent in 1984.

- (A) income; and forty-four percent in 1984
- (B) income; in 1984 the figure was forty-four percent
- (C) income, and in 1984 forty-four percent
- (D) income, forty-four percent in 1984 was the figure

(E) income that rose to forty-four percent in 1984

必杀三步

一步: 句子结构

分号前后必须是完整的主谓结构, 逗号不能连接两个完整的主谓结构。

A 选项 分号后句子结构不完整, 错。

D 选项 逗号连接两个完整的主谓结构, 错。 ➤ 排除 A D

第二步: 并列句的省略

两个句子并列, 第一句中有 be 动词或 become, 第二句中的 be 动词或 become 可以省略, 同时, 一些重复的名词和形容词也可以省略。

C 选项 and 前的并列分句使用实义动词 represent, 在第二个分句中省略实义动词, 不符合并列句的省略原则。 ➤ 排除 C

第三步: 修饰对象的合理性

E 选项 that 定语从句就近修饰 income, income rose to forty-four percent 逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 E

正确选项 B

14. The proposed health care bill would increase government regulation of health insurance, establish standards that would guarantee wider access to people with past health problems and to workers changing jobs who otherwise could be uncovered for months.

- (A) establish standards that would guarantee wider access to people with past health problems and to workers changing jobs who
- (B) establishing standards that would guarantee wider access to people with past health problems and to workers who are changing jobs and
- (C) to establish standards that would guarantee wider access to people with past health problems and to workers who change jobs that
- (D) for establishing standards that would guarantee wider access for people with past health problems and workers changing jobs who
- (E) for the establishment of standards that would guarantee wider access for people with past health problems and workers who are changing jobs that

读题

The bill would increase ..., establish...

必杀三步

一步: 句子结构

A 选项 逗号连接两个动词 increase 和 establish, 句子结构错误。修改方法: 1 > 添加连接词, 使两个动作变为并列关系; 2 > 把第二个动作变为从属动作, 使两者变为主从关系。 ➤ 排除 A

第二步: 定语从句修饰对象的合理性

C E 选项 that otherwise could be uncovered (没上保险) 就近修饰 jobs, 逻辑意思不合理。

➤ 排除 C E

三步:目的关系的合理性

C 选项 to establish 作为谓语动词 would increase government regulation 的目的,逻辑关系不合理。

D 选项 for + doing 表示动作的目的,不符合习惯表达,并且目的关系也不合理。

E 选项 the establishment of sth. 表达不简洁,而且 for + 动作性名词,表示动作的目的,不符合习惯表达,目的关系也不合理。 ➤ 排除 C D E

补选

习惯用法

D E 选项 access for sb. 搭配错,应改为: access to sb.。

正确选项 B

-ing 分词短语 establishing standards 作为 increase government regulation 的伴随动作状语。

workers who are changing jobs and otherwise could be uncovered for months. are changing 和 could be uncovered 并列,共同作定语从句的谓语动词,workers could be uncovered for months,逻辑意思合理。

15. The original building and loan associations were organized as limited life funds, whose members made monthly payments on their share subscriptions, then taking turns drawing on the funds for home mortgages.

- (A) subscriptions, then taking turns drawing
- (B) subscriptions, and then taking turns drawing
- (C) subscriptions and then took turns drawing
- (D) subscriptions and then took turns, they drew
- (E) subscriptions and then drew, taking turns

必杀二步

一步:动作间的逻辑关系

动作间的逻辑关系可以分为三种:并列、伴随动作、伴随结果。

从逻辑上分析,原句动作 made monthly payments 和 take turns doing 应该是并列关系,而不是伴随关系。

A B E 选项 taking turns... 分词短语在句尾表示伴随动作或伴随结果,与动作 made monthly payments 间的逻辑关系不合理。 ➤ 排除 A B E

二步:句子结构

D 选项 句子 1, whose..., 句子 2: 逗号连接了两个完整的主谓结构,错。 ➤ 排除 D

正确选项 C

16. South Korea has witnessed the world's most dramatic growth of Christian congregations; church membership is expanding by 6.6 percent a year, fully two-thirds of the growth coming from conversions rather than the population increasing.

- (A) coming from conversions rather than the population increasing

- (B) coming from conversions rather than increases in the population
- (C) coming from conversions instead of the population's increasing
- (D) is from conversions instead of population increases
- (E) is from conversions rather than increasing the population

必杀二步

一步: 平行结构形式要对称

rather than 前面是名词短语 conversions, 为保持形式上的对称, 后面也必须使用名词短语。

A C E 选项 increasing 是 increase(v.) 的-ing 形式, 强调动作, 其实 increase(n.) 本身就可以表示 increase(v.) 的名词形式; conversions 和 increasing 形式不对称。

☞ 排除 A C E

二步: 句子结构

逗号不能连接两个完整的主谓结构; 分号前后必须是完整的主谓结构。

D E 选项 整句的结构为: 句子 1; 句子 2, 句子 3。句子 2 和句子 3 之间用逗号连接, 错。

☞ 排除 D E

正确选项 B

17. The modernization program for the steel mill will cost approximately 51 million dollars, which it is hoped can be completed in the late 1980's.

- (A) The modernization program for the steel mill will cost approximately 51 million dollars, which it is hoped can be completed in the late 1980's.
- (B) The modernization program for the steel mill, hopefully completed in the late 1980's, will cost approximately 51 million dollars.
- (C) Modernizing the steel mill, hopefully to be completed in the late 1980's, will cost approximately 51 million dollars.
- (D) The program for modernizing the steel mill, which can, it is hoped, be completed in the late 1980's and cost approximately 51 million dollars.
- (E) Modernizing the steel mill, a program that can, it is hoped, be completed in the late 1980's, will cost approximately 51 million dollars.

读题

主句, + which 定语从句

必杀二步

一步: 标准书面语原则

1 > hope 在书面语中的两种习惯用法: it is hoped that..., it 作为形式主语指代后面的 that 从句; it is hoped 作为插入语, 前后用逗号隔开。☞ 排除 A

2 > hopefully 在口语中表示两个意思: 充满希望的; 人们希望的。在书面语中为保证意思单一性, 一般不使用 hopefully。☞ 排除 B C

二步: 句子结构的完整性

D 选项 句子结构为: 名词短语(主语), + which 定语从句; which 从句中包含 it is hoped

插入语。整个句子缺谓语, 句子结构不完整。 排除 D

补选

定语从句修饰对象的合理性

A 选项 which 从句就近修饰 dollars, 逻辑意思不合理。

正确选项 E

句子结构: doing sth. (主语), + a program that... (同位语), + will do...

18. An array of tax incentives has led to a boom in the construction of new office buildings; so abundant has capital been for commercial real estate that investors regularly scour the country for areas in which to build.

- (A) so abundant has capital been for commercial real estate that
- (B) capital has been so abundant for commercial real estate, so that
- (C) the abundance of capital for commercial real estate has been such
- (D) such has the abundance of capital been for commercial real estate that
- (E) such has been an abundance of capital for commercial real estate

必杀二步

一步: 习惯搭配

so...that... 作状语, 修饰形容词、副词或动词。

B 选项 so + adj. + so that 永远错。

D 选项 such...that...: such 后面须加名词才能与 that 搭配。 排除 B D

二步: 句子结构

C E 选项 “句子 1, 句子 2” 结构在标准书面语中永远错: 逗号不能用在两个完整的主谓结构之间。sth. be such 结构也永远错。 排除 C E

正确选项 A

在 so...that... 句型中, so 短语在句首, 必须使用部分倒装。该句正常语序为: capital has been so abundant for ... that investors regularly scour...

19. Iguanas have been an important food source in Latin America since prehistoric times, and it is still prized as a game animal by the campesinos, who typically cook the meat in a heavily spiced stew.

- (A) it is still prized as a game animal
- (B) it is still prized as game animals
- (C) they are still prized as game animals
- (D) they are still prized as being a game animal
- (E) being still prized as a game animal

必杀三步

一步: 代词指代

A B 选项 单数代词 it 无法指代复数名词 Iguanas, it 没有指代对象。 排除 A B

二步: 句子结构

E 选项 句子, and being done: being done 不能与句子(完整主谓结构)并列。✗ 排除 E

三步:简洁性原则

D 选项 being 多余,可以省略,prized as 后面可以直接加名词。✗ 排除 D

正确选项 C

20. Many writers of modern English have acquired careless habits that damage the clarity of their prose, but these habits can be broken if they are willing to take the necessary trouble.

- (A) but these habits can be broken (B) but these habits are breakable
(C) but they can break these habits (D) which can be broken
(E) except that can be broken

读题

句子 1, but these habits can be broken if they are willing... (句子 2)。

必杀三步

一步:代词指代

A B 选项 根据代词指代对象的逻辑查找顺序,句子 2 的 if 条件句中的代词 they 应该优先指代主句主语 habits, habits are willing to do, 逻辑意思不合理。✗ 排除 A B

二步:逻辑意思的合理性

D 选项 定语从句关系代词 which 就近指代 prose, prose can be broken, 逻辑搭配不合理。✗ 排除 D

三步:句子结构

E 选项 except 的习惯搭配为 except that + 主谓结构, 所以 except that can be broken 缺主语。✗ 排除 E

正确选项 C

句子 2 中的两个代词 they 都指代句子 1 的主语 writers of modern English, 逻辑搭配合理。

21. Although dozens of New York's small museums are either devoted to local history or various ethnic groups, there are many one-of-a-kind museums from Manhattan to the Bronx that are open for exploration on summer weekends.

- (A) Although dozens of New York's small museums are either devoted to local history or various ethnic groups, there are
(B) Although dozens of New York's small museums are devoted to local history or various ethnic groups
(C) Dozens of New York's small museums are devoted to local history or various ethnic groups, but there are
(D) Dozens of New York's small museums are devoted to local history or various ethnic groups, and there are also
(E) Devoted to local history or various ethnic groups, dozens of New York's small museums and also

读题

Although small museums are either devoted to...or..., there are...

必杀三步

一步:平行结构形式要对称

A 选项 either devoted or ethnic groups, 动词 devoted 与名词短语 ethnic groups 形式不对称。✂ 排除 A

二步:句子结构的完整性

B 选项 未划线的部分是个名词短语, although 状语从句 + 名词短语, 主句缺谓语动词。

E 选项 -ed 分词短语, + 两个并列的名词短语: 整个句子缺谓语动词, 句子结构不完整。

✂ 排除 B E

三步:句子间的逻辑关系

small museums 与 big museums 是相反概念, one-of-a-kind museums 与 one-of-all-kinds museums 也构成相反概念。

C 选项 dozens of New York's small museums 与 many one-of-a-kind museums 不是相反概念, 所以两个并列分句在逻辑意思上不能形成对比关系, 转折连词 but 使用不准确。✂ 排除 C

正确选项 D

22. As sales of cars and light trucks made in North America were declining 13.6 percent in late February, many analysts conclude that evidence of a recovering automotive market remains slight.

25

- (A) As sales of cars and light trucks made in North America were declining 13.6 percent in late February, many analysts conclude
- (B) Since sales of cars and light trucks made in North America declined 13.6 percent in late February, and many analysts conclude
- (C) With sales of cars and light trucks made in North America declining 13.6 percent in late February, with many analysts concluding
- (D) Because sales of cars and light trucks made in North America declined 13.6 percent in late February, many analysts concluded
- (E) Because of sales of cars and light trucks made in North America declining 13.6 percent in late February, therefore, many analysts concluded

读题

As sales were declining...in late February, many analysts conclude that...

必杀三步

一步:时态判断

A 选项 decline 和 conclude 的动作都发生在 late February 里, in late February 标志着它所修饰的动词必须使用一般过去时, 从句为过去进行时 were declining, 主句为一般现在时 conclude, 主从句时态都不正确。✂ 排除 A

二步:句子结构

B 选项 从句, and 主句, 主从句不能够并列, 句子结构不合理。

C 选项 with sales of..., with many analysts... 两个介词短语用逗号连接, 缺少主句, 句子结构不完整。 ➤ 排除 B C

三步: 不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

原句中的状语从句强调整体概念 sales of cars and light trucks declined。

E 选项 介词短语 because of 强调部分概念 sales of cars and light trucks, 改变原句的强调重心, 并且 therefore 多余, 也不能与 because of 搭配, 必须省略。 ➤ 排除 E

正确选项 D

23. The caterpillar of the geometrid moth strikes when special tactile hairs on its body are disturbed, after capturing its prey, holds the victim so that it cannot escape.

- (A) strikes when special tactile hairs on its body are disturbed,
- (B) striking when special tactile hairs on its body are disturbed, but
- (C) which strikes when special tactile hairs on its body are disturbed,
- (D) which, striking when special tactile hairs on its body are disturbed,
- (E) strikes when special tactile hairs on its body are disturbed and,

读题

The caterpillar(主语) + strikes(谓语动词 1) + when 从句, 插入语, + and holds(谓语动词 2)。

必要三步

一步: 动词并列

动词并列时需要有连词连接。

A 选项 跳过 when 状语从句和插入语, 明显错误在于两个谓语动词 strikes 和 holds 之间没有连词。 ➤ 排除 A

二步: 不能改变原句合理的意思和重心

B 选项 连词 but 表转折, 而原句中并没有转折含义。而且 but 在下述结构中永远不能成立: 主语(The caterpillar of...) + but + 谓语动词(holds...)。

C 选项 原主句谓语动词 strikes 变成了 which 定语从句的谓语动词, 原句合理的意思和重心被改变。 ➤ 排除 B C

三步: 句子结构的完整性

D 选项 名词短语(The caterpillar of...) + which 定语从句(which, ..., holds...), 句子缺谓语动词, 结构不完整性。 ➤ 排除 D

正确选项 E

24. Growing competitive pressures may be encouraging auditors to bend the rules in favor of clients; auditors may, for instance, allow a questionable loan to remain on the books in order to maintain a bank's profits on paper.

- (A) clients; auditors may, for instance, allow
- (B) clients, as an instance, to allow

- (C) clients, like to allow
 (D) clients, such as to be allowing
 (E) clients; which might, as an instance, be the allowing of


必杀一步

一步: 举例的表达方式

for instance/for example; such as + n./doing...; whether it is A or B or C

B E 选项 as an instance, 不符合习惯搭配。

C 选项 like to do, 不符合举例的表达方式。

D 选项 such as to do, 不符合举例的表达方式。  一步到位, 排除 B C D E

补选

1> 句子结构的完整性

分号前后必须使用完整的主谓结构。

E 选项 分号后是一个 which 引导的从句, 不是完整的主谓结构。

2> 情态动词不可以随意添加、省略或改变

B C D 选项都没有保留原句中的情态动词 may。

正确选项 A

25. Galileo was convinced that natural phenomena, as manifestations of the laws of physics, would appear the same to someone on the deck of a ship moving smoothly and uniformly through the water as a person standing on land.

27 

- (A) water as a (B) water as to a
 (C) water; just as it would to a (D) water, as it would to the
 (E) water; just as to the


读题

sb. was convinced that sth. would appear the same to...as...

必杀一步

一步: 平行结构形式要对称

the same...as...标志着使用平行结构: the same to sb. 决定了 as 后也必须使用 to sb. 的形式, 以保证前后形式的对称。

只有 B 选项符合平行结构形式对称的要求。  一步到位, 排除 A C D E

补选

句子结构的完整性

分号前后必须使用完整的主谓结构。

C E 选项 分号后面的结构不是一个完整的主谓结构, 句子结构不完整。

正确选项 B

26. The current administration, being worried over some foreign trade barriers being removed and our exports failing to increase as a result of deep cuts in the value of

the dollar, has formed a group to study ways to sharpen our competitiveness.

- (A) being worried over some foreign trade barriers being removed and our exports failing
- (B) worrying over some foreign trade barriers being removed, also over the failure of our exports
- (C) worried about the removal of some foreign trade barriers and the failure of our exports
- (D) in that they were worried about the removal of some foreign trade barriers and also about the failure of our exports
- (E) because of its worry concerning the removal of some foreign trade barriers, also concerning the failure of our exports

必杀三步

一步:副词不能起连词的作用

B 选项 worrying over..., also over..., also 是副词,不能连接两个介词短语。

E 选项 its worry concerning..., also concerning..., also 不能起连词的作用。

➡ 排除 B E

二步:时态判断

A 选项 being worried 过去分词的进行时态作定语修饰 the current administration。

B 选项 worrying 现在分词作定语修饰 the current administration。

现在分词强调正在进行,强调动作,过去分词强调已经完成、强调状态。

...has formed a group to study...表明,逻辑上句子没有强调“正在担心”,所以进行时态的使用没有依据。 ➡ 排除 A B

三步:代词指代

D 选项 谓语动词 has formed 表明了主语 the current administration 是单数,划线部分的代词 they 不能指代单数名词 the current administration。 ➡ 排除 D

补遗

用词倾向性

在标准书面语中, worry 后面倾向于用介词 about / over,而不使用 concerning。

正确选项 C

平行结构

the removal of sth. and the failure of sth. 动作性名词 removal 短语和动作性名词 failure 短语并列,形式对称、概念对等。

27. However much United States voters may agree that there is waste in government and that the government as a whole spends beyond its means, it is difficult to find broad support for a movement toward a minimal state.

- (A) However much United States voters may agree that
- (B) Despite the agreement among United States voters to the fact
- (C) Although United States voters agree
- (D) Even though United States voters may agree

(E) There is agreement among United States voters that

必杀二步

一步:连词 **that** 不能随意省略

同位语从句连词 **that** 和宾语从句连词 **that** 不能省略。

B 选项 the fact 后的同位语从句连词 **that** 不能省略。

C D 选项 agree 后的宾语从句连词 **that** 不能省略。 ➡ 排除 B C D

二步:句子结构

E 选项 there is agreement... 作为独立的主谓结构(本身还是错误的搭配),代回原句变成“句子 1,句子 2”这一错误结构,因为逗号不能连接两个完整的主谓结构。

➡ 排除 E

补选

情态动词不能随意省略

B C E 选项 省略情态动词 may, 改变原句的合理意思。

正确选项 A

however much 表达强烈的语气, much 修饰 agree, B C D E 四个选项都没有保持这种强烈语气。

28. Sartre believed each individual is responsible to choose one course of action over another one, that it is the choice that gives value to the act, and that nothing that is not acted upon has value.

- (A) each individual is responsible to choose one course of action over another one
- (B) that each individual is responsible for choosing one course of action over another
- (C) that each individual is responsible, choosing one course of action over another
- (D) that each individual is responsible to choose one course of action over the other
- (E) each individual is responsible for choosing one course of action over other ones

读题

sb. believed + 宾语从句; believed 后是三个宾语从句并列。

必杀三步

一步:宾语从句的连词 **that** 不能省略

A E 选项 省略连词 **that**, 错。 ➡ 排除 A E

二步:习惯搭配

1> responsible 的正确用法: be responsible for sth.; be responsible for doing sth.; be responsible to sb.。

A D 选项 be responsible to do 永远错。

2> 习惯搭配: one... another; each... the other; each other; some... others。 A 选项 one... another one, D 选项 one... the other, E 选项 one... other ones 全部错。

➡ 排除 A D E

三步:不能改变原句的合理重心

C 选项 choosing 作为伴随状语,而原句中 choosing 是谓语的一部分,所以原句重心被改

变。 \Rightarrow 排除 C

正确选项 B

29. When rates were raised in 1985, postal service officials predicted they would make further rate increases unnecessary for at least three years.

- (A) they would make further rate increases unnecessary
- (B) they would mean that further rate increases would not be needed
- (C) that it would not be necessary for further rate increases
- (D) that the increase would make further rate increases unnecessary
- (E) further rate increases will not be needed

秒杀二步

一步: 宾语从句的连词 **that** 不能省略

A B E 选项 predicted 引导宾语从句, 连词 **that** 省略。 \Rightarrow 排除 A B E

二步: 代词指代

代词 **it** 不能指代: 介词短语; 前面整个句子。 **it** 可以向后指代: 主语从句; 不定式短语。
C 选项 代词 **it** 没有指代对象, 向前搜索全部是复数名词, 向后 **it** 不能指代介词短语 **for sth.**。 \Rightarrow 排除 C

正确选项 D

the increase 指前面整个句子, 用一个概括性的词代替代词的指代对象, 避免代词指代不清。

30. The extraordinary diary of William Lyon Mackenzie King, prime minister of Canada for over twenty years, revealed that this most bland and circumspect of men was a mystic guided in both public and private life by omens, messages received at seances, and signs from heaven.

- (A) that this most bland and circumspect of men was a mystic guided in both public and
- (B) that this most bland and circumspect of men was a mystic and also guided both in public as well as
- (C) this most bland and circumspect of men was a mystic and that he was guided in both public and
- (D) this most bland and circumspect of men was a mystic and that he was guided in both public as well as
- (E) this most bland and circumspect of men to have been a mystic and that he guided himself both in public as well as

秒杀二步

一步: 宾语从句的连词 **that** 不能省略 \Rightarrow 排除 C D

二步: 习惯用法

B D E 选项 **both...as well as...** 不符合习惯搭配, 应使用 **both...and...**。

\Rightarrow 排除 B D E

补选

不能改变原句的合理重心

原句 guided 作为-ed 分词修饰 a mystic。

B 选项 guided 作为动词与 was 并列。

C D E 选项 宾语从句并列, was guided/guided 成为宾语从句的谓语动词。

BCDE 四个选项把原句中的从属成分变为并列成分, 改变原句合理重心。

正确选项 A

31. The commission proposed that funding for the park's development, which could be open to the public early next year, is obtained through a local bond issue.

- (A) that funding for the park's development, which could be open to the public early next year, is
- (B) that funding for development of the park, which could be open to the public early next year, be
- (C) funding for the development of the park, perhaps open to the public early next year, to be
- (D) funds for the park's development, perhaps open to the public early next year, be
- (E) development funding for the park, which could be open to the public early next year, is to be

必杀二步

一步: 宾语从句的连词 that 不能省略 ➤ 排除 D E

二步: 习惯搭配

sth. (物) propose + that 从句 (that 从句不使用虚拟语气); sb. (人) propose + that 从句 (that 从句必须使用动词原形表示虚拟语气); propose sb. to do (不能使用被动语态); propose doing sth.; propose sth.

A 选项 人 (the commission) 作 proposed 的主语, that 宾语从句的谓语动词 is 没有使用原形表示虚拟语气, 错。

C 选项 propose sth. to be done 不符合习惯搭配。 ➤ 排除 A C

补选**1> 用词倾向性**

在标准书面语中, 倾向于用情态动词或 probably 表示可能性, 而不倾向于使用 maybe 或 perhaps。

2> 修饰关系的合理性

A D 选项 逗号后的定语逻辑上不能修饰 the park's development。

正确选项 B

32. Once they had seen the report from the medical examiner, the investigators did not doubt whether the body recovered from the river was the man who had attempted to escape from the state prison.

- (A) did not doubt whether the body recovered from the river was
- (B) have no doubt whether the body recovered from the river was
- (C) had not doubted that the body recovered from the river was
- (D) have no doubt whether the body recovered from the river was that of
- (E) had no doubt that the body recovered from the river was that of

读题

Once..., the investigators did not doubt whether the body was the man.

必杀二步

一步:宾语从句的连词

doubt 用肯定形式,可以由 whether 或 that 引导宾语从句,如 doubt whether.../ doubt that...;doubt 用否定形式,只能由 that 引导宾语从句,如 do not doubt that...。

A 选项 did not doubt whether...错。

B D 选项 no doubt whether...错。排除 A B D

二步:逻辑搭配的合理性

C 选项 the body... was the man...(尸体是那个男人),逻辑搭配不合理。排除 C

正确选项 E

the body was that of the man,that 指代 body,尸体是那个男人的尸体,逻辑搭配合理。

32

33. Judge Lois Forer's study asks why do some litigants have a preferred status over others in the use of a public resource, the courts, which in theory are available to all but in fact are unequally distributed among rich and poor.

- (A) do some litigants have a preferred status over others in the use of a public resource, the courts, which in theory are available to all but in fact are unequally distributed among
- (B) some litigants have a preferred status over others in the use of a public resource, the courts, which in theory are available to all but in fact are unequally distributed between
- (C) do some litigants have a preferred status over another in the use of a public resource, the courts, in theory available to all but in fact are unequally distributed among
- (D) some litigants have a preferred status to another in the use of a public resource, the courts, in theory available to all but in fact not equally distributed between
- (E) does one litigant have a preferred status over the other in the use of a public resource, the courts, in theory available to all but in fact they are not equally distributed among

读题

Study asks why do sb. have a preferred status over others in the use of...
in the use of...在...方面; the courts 作为 a public resource 的同位语

必杀二步

一步:宾语从句用陈述语序

A C E 选项 ask 的宾语从句使用疑问语序。排除 A C E

二步:习惯用法

D 选项 some...another 搭配错。正确用法为:some...others; one...another; each...the other。排除 D

补选

between 与 among 的区别

两者之间用 between...and..., 三者或三者以上之间用 among。

A C E 选项 rich 和 poor 两者之间不能用介词 among。

正确选项 B

34. A prolific architect who worked from the turn of the century until the late 1950's, Julia Morgan designed nearly 800 buildings in California, perhaps most notably William Randolph Hearst's monumental estate at San Simeon.

- (A) Julia Morgan designed nearly 800 buildings in California, perhaps most notably William Randolph Hearst's monumental estate at San Simeon.
- (B) Perhaps the most notable of the nearly 800 buildings in California designed by Julia Morgan was William Randolph Hearst's monumental estate at San Simeon
- (C) of the nearly 800 buildings in California designed by Julia Morgan, perhaps the most notable was William Randolph Hearst's monumental estate at San Simeon
- (D) nearly 800 buildings in California were designed by Julia Morgan, of which William Randolph Hearst's monumental estate at San Simeon is perhaps the most notable
- (E) William Randolph Hearst's monumental estate at San Simeon is perhaps the most notable of the nearly 800 buildings in California designed by Julia Morgan

33

读题

A prolific architect, Julia Morgan designed...

必杀一步

一步:同位语

a prolific architect 作为主语的同位语,决定了主语必须是人。

B C D E 选项 主语都不是人,使得主语同位语 a prolific architect 缺乏解释力。

一步到位,排除 B C D E

正确选项 A

35. Architects and stonemasons, huge palace and temple clusters were built by the Maya without benefit of the wheel or animal transport.

- (A) huge palace and temple clusters were built by the Maya without benefit of the wheel or animal transport
- (B) without the benefits of animal transport or the wheel, huge palace and temple clus-

ters were built by the Maya

- (C) the Maya built huge palace and temple clusters without the benefit of animal transport or the wheel
- (D) there were built, without the benefit of the wheel or animal transport, huge palace and temple clusters by the Maya
- (E) were the Maya who, without the benefit of the wheel or animal transport, built huge palace and temple clusters

读题

名词, 句子

必杀一步

一步: 同位结构

根据“名词, 句子”这一句子结构, 可以判断句首名词应该充当句子主语的同位结构。划线部分的主语必须和 *architects and stonemasons* 属于同一类概念, 否则同位结构无法解释说明主语。*architects and stonemasons* 指人, 主语也必须属于人的范畴。

只有 C 选项 *the Maya* 指人。一步到位, 排除 A B D E

补遗

准确使用逗号

当主语和谓语之间没有任何插入语时, 主谓语之间不能够用逗号隔开。

E 选项 *architects and stonemasons, were the Maya...*: 主语和谓语之间用逗号隔开, 错。

正确选项 C

36. In June of 1987, *The Bridge of Trinquetaille*, Vincent van Gogh's view of an iron bridge over the Rhone sold for \$20.2 million and it was the second highest price ever paid for a painting at auction.

- (A) Rhone sold for \$20.2 million and it was
- (B) Rhone, which sold for \$20.2 million, was
- (C) Rhone, was sold for \$20.2 million,
- (D) Rhone was sold for \$20.2 million, being
- (E) Rhone, sold for \$20.2 million, and was

必杀一步

一步: 同位语和它的解释对象的区分

A D 选项 *Vincent van Gogh's view* 和谓语动词 *sold for / was sold for* 没有逗号, 说明 *The Bridge of Trinquetaille* 是主语同位语, *Vincent van Gogh's view* 是句子主语, “景色被卖了 \$20.2 million”, 逻辑意思不合理。

B E 选项 *Vincent van Gogh's view* 前后被逗号隔开, 说明 *Vincent van Gogh's view* 作为主语 *The Bridge of Trinquetaille* 的同位语, *The Bridge of Trinquetaille was the second highest price*, 逻辑意思不合理。一步到位, 排除 A B D E

补选

1> 修饰关系的合理性

B 选项 which 定语从句就近修饰 Rhone(河的名称), 导致定语从句逻辑意思不合理。

2> 习惯用法

动词 sell 可以用主动的形式表示被动的含义, 如 sth. sell well 表示什么东西卖得好。但当表示什么东西卖多少钱时必须使用被动语态: sth. be sold for ...。

A B E 选项 sold for \$ 20.2 million, 被动语态缺 be 动词。

正确选项 C

Vincent van Gogh's view 前后被逗号隔开, 作为句子主语 *The Bridge of Trinquetaille* 的同位语, 起解释说明作用; 句意“作品被卖了 \$ 20.2 million”符合生活事理。

句尾名词短语 the second highest price 就近作为 \$ 20.2 million 的同位语。

37. The capital of Bosnia-Herzegovina, Sarajevo's population on the eve of the First World War was 51,919.

- (A) Bosnia-Herzegovina, Sarajevo's population
- (B) Bosnia-Herzegovina is Sarajevo, whose population
- (C) Bosnia-Herzegovina is Sarajevo, with a population
- (D) Bosnia-Herzegovina, Sarajevo having a population that
- (E) Bosnia-Herzegovina, the population of Sarajevo

必杀二步

一步: 同位结构要有解释力

A E 选项 the capital of... 作为主语的同位语, 与主语 population 不属于同一类概念, 无法起到解释说明同位结构的作用。 ➤ 排除 A E

二步: 句子结构

C 选项 介词 with 后面不能跟完整主谓结构 population was 51,919。

D 选项 The capital of ..., Sarajevo having... 缺少谓语动词, 句子结构不完整。

➤ 排除 C D

正确选项 B

38. For members of the seventeenth-century Ashanti nation in Africa, animal-hide shields with wooden frames were essential items of military equipment, a method to protect warriors against enemy arrows and spears.

- (A) a method to protect
- (B) as a method protecting
- (C) protecting
- (D) as a protection of
- (E) to protect

必杀二步

一步: 同位结构要有解释力

A 选项 a method(抽象名词)作为 equipment(物质名词)的同位结构, 无法解释说 equipment, “军事装备是一种方法”, 逻辑关系不合理, 同位结构不具有解释力。

B 选项 “军事装备作为一种方法”，逻辑关系不合理，as a method 没法解释说明 equipment。

D 选项 a protection 是抽象名词，“军事装备作为一种保护”，逻辑关系不合理，as a protection 没法解释说明物质名词 equipment。 ➤ 排除 A B D

第二步：目的关系的合理性

E 选项 sth. is a military equipment, 表示一种状态，“sth. 是一种军事装备，目的是为了保护...”，“状态的目的”逻辑意思不合理，应该是“动作的目的”才合理。 ➤ 排除 E

正确选项 C

-ing 分词短语 protecting... 在句尾作伴随作用状语。

39. In terms of physics, the characteristic feature of the roller coaster is that the cars' potential energy, gained through their being lifted by a chain drive through the Earth's gravity to the top of the first drop, has been converted to kinetic energy by the time the ride ends.

- (A) cars' potential energy, gained through their being lifted by a chain drive
- (B) cars' potential energy, a gain achieved as they are lifted by a chain drive
- (C) potential energy from the cars' being lifted by a chain drive
- (D) potential energy of the cars, gained as a chain drive lifts them
- (E) potential energy gained by the cars, being achieved while a chain drive lifts them

读题

In terms of ..., the feature of ... is that the potential energy, 修饰语, has been converted to ...

必需二步

一步：逻辑意思的合理性

A C 选项 through / from their/the cars' being done by... 表示被动动作产生 potential energy, 逻辑意思别扭，不符合物理学原理；而且从习惯搭配上看，prep. + one's being done 永远错。

E 选项 being achieved while... 作定语修饰 the cars, the cars being achieved 逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 A C E

第二步：同位结构要有解释力

B 选项 a gain 是动作性名词，作为物质名词 potential energy 的同位语，缺乏解释力。 ➤ 排除 B

补遗

用词倾向性

1> 一句话中尽量避免重复使用同一个词

A 选项 through their being lifted by a chain drive through 重复使用介词 through。

2> 无生命事物的所有格形式

A B 选项 标准书面语中，无生命事物的所有格形式优先使用 noun of noun 结构，较少使用“noun's...”这一结构。

正确选项 D

-ed 分词 gained 跳过介词短语 of the cars 修饰 potential energy; as 作连词引导时间状语从句; them 指代 cars。

40. Gall's hypothesis of there being different mental functions localized in different parts of the brain is widely accepted today.

- (A) of there being different mental functions localized in different parts of the brain is widely accepted today
- (B) of different mental functions that are localized in different parts of the brain is widely accepted today
- (C) that different mental functions are localized in different parts of the brain is widely accepted today
- (D) which is that there are different mental functions localized in different parts of the brain is widely accepted today
- (E) which is widely accepted today is that there are different mental functions localized in different parts of the brain

秒杀二步

一步:整体概念与部分概念的区别

A B 选项 hypothesis of sth. 的 of 结构表所属关系, 强调部分概念; 从逻辑上分析, hypothesis 后面应该加上同位语从句, 解释说明假设的具体内容, 强调整体概念。

➤ 排除 A B

二步:绝对错误的形式

A 选项 there being sth. 永远错。

D E 选项 there be sth. done 永远错, 应改为 sth. be done。 ➤ 排除 A D E

补选

1> 简洁性原则

D 选项 which is that 表达不简洁, 必须省略 which is, 直接用 that 引导同位语从句。

2> 不能改变原句的合理重心

E 选项 把原句的主句内容改为定语从句, 把原句中的从句内容改为主句, 改变句子重心。

正确选项 C

41. A "calendar stick" carved centuries ago by the Winnebago tribe may provide the first evidence that the North American Indians have developed advanced full-year calendars basing them on systematic astronomical observation.

- (A) that the North American Indians have developed advanced full-year calendars basing them
- (B) of the North American Indians who have developed advanced full-year calendars and based them
- (C) of the development of advanced full-year calendars by North American Indians, basing them

(D) of the North American Indians and their development of advanced full-year calendars based

(E) that the North American Indians developed advanced full-year calendars based

必杀二步

一步:时态判断

A 选项 定语从句的时态 have developed 与主句的时间标志 centuries ago 不一致, 错。

➤ 排除 A

二步:具体化同位结构与所属关系的区别

the evidence + that 从句: 具体化同位结构, that 从句对 evidence 具体化, 表示证据的具体内容, 强调整体意思。

B C D 选项 the evidence of... 强调所属关系, 改变了原句的整体意思和强调重心。

➤ 排除 B C D

正确选项 E

42. Under the restructuring, the huge organization that operates the company's basic businesses will be divided into five groups, each with its own executive.

(A) each with its own executive

(B) all having their own executive

(C) each having their own executive

(D) with its own executive for each

(E) every one with an executive of their own

必杀二步

一步:独立主格结构

each 引导强调型独立主格: 句子 + 复数名词结尾, each + 介词短语 / 形容词短语 / -ing 短语 / -ed 短语; each 指代前述复数名词的每一个。

B D E 选项 都不符合上述独立主格形式。 ➤ 排除 B D E

二步:代词与代词的一致性

C 选项 代词 each 与代词 their 数上不一致。 ➤ 排除 C

正确选项 A

43. Chinese, the most ancient of living writing systems, consists of tens of thousands of ideographic characters, each character miniature calligraphic composition inside its own square frame.

(A) each character a miniature calligraphic composition inside its

(B) all the characters a miniature calligraphic composition inside their

(C) all the characters a miniature calligraphic composition inside its

(D) every character a miniature calligraphic composition inside their

(E) each character a miniature calligraphic composition inside their

读题

Chinese(主语), 主语同位语, consists of..., each 引导的强调性独立主格。

/ 必杀二步

一步: 独立主格结构

独立主格结构放在句首或句尾, 起状语的作用, 表伴随原因、条件、状态等。

独立主格结构分为三种类型:

1> 一般独立主格: 与主句逻辑关系松散

形式为: n. + n.; n. + -ed / -ing 形式; n. + 介词短语; n. + 形容词短语

2> with 引导的独立主格: 与主句逻辑关系紧密

形式为: with + n. + -ed / -ing 形式; with + n. + adj.; with + n. + 介词短语

3> each 引导的强调型独立主格: 强调句尾的复数名词

形式为: 句子 + 复数名词结尾, each + 介词短语 / 形容词短语 / 名词短语 / -ing 形式 / -ed 形式

B C E 选项 都不符合强调型独立主格的形式。 ➤ 排除 B C E

二步: 代词指代

D 选项 their 不可能指代 every character。

C 选项 its 不可能指代 all the characters。 ➤ 排除 C D

补选

逻辑意思的合理性

BC 选项 all the characters(复数)与 a miniature calligraphic composition(单数)在逻辑意思上不能搭配。

正确选项 A

39

44. Dr. Tonegawa won the Nobel Prize for discovering how the body can constantly change its genes to fashion a seeming unlimited number of antibodies, each specifically targeted at an invading microbe or foreign substance.

(A) seeming unlimited number of antibodies, each specifically targeted at

(B) seeming unlimited number of antibodies, each targeted specifically to

(C) seeming unlimited number of antibodies, all specifically targeted at

(D) seemingly unlimited number of antibodies, all of them targeted specifically to

(E) seemingly unlimited number of antibodies, each targeted specifically at

必杀二步

一步: 形容词和副词的准确使用

A B C 选项 形容词 seeming 修饰名词 number of antibodies, 修饰关系不合理, 应该改为副词 seemingly 修饰形容词 unlimited。 ➤ 排除 A B C

二步: 独立主格结构

强调型独立主格强调复数名词: 句子 + 复数名词结尾, each + 介词短语 / 形容词短语 / -ing 短语 / -ed 短语

D 选项 all of them targeted to... 不符合强调型独立主格的形式, 而且 targeted to 也不符

合习惯搭配, 应使用 targeted at。 ➤ 排除 D

正确选项 E

45. The diet of the ordinary Greek in classical times was largely vegetarian—vegetables, fresh cheese, oatmeal, and meal cakes, and meat rarely.

- (A) and meat rarely
- (B) and meat was rare
- (C) with meat as rare
- (D) meat a rarity
- (E) with meat as a rarity

读题

The diet was largely vegetarian—X1, X2, X3, and X4, and meat rarely.

划线部分必须与主句 the diet was vegetarian 有紧密联系, 但又不能成为 X1, X2, X3, and X4 的一部分。

必需二步

一步: 副词和形容词的准确使用

A 选项 副词 rarely 不能修饰名词 meat。

B C 选项 形容词 rare 是个多义词, 可以表示稀少的, 也可以表示(肉)半熟的, 标准书面语中要避免使用容易引起争议的多义词。并且在原句中, 划线部分是从属成分, B 选项把从属关系改为并列关系, 改变了原句的重心。 ➤ 排除 A B C

二步: 独立主格结构

C 选项 with + n. + as + adj. (with meat as rare) 不能用作独立主格结构, 因为 as 作为介词后面不能加形容词, 应加名词。

D 选项 一般独立主格结构(名词 + 名词/形容词/介词短语/分词短语)与主句间没有紧密逻辑联系, 而主句中 largely vegetarian 表明, meat 相对于所列举的 X1, X2, X3, and X4(vegetarian foods)来说应是 a rarity, 所以需用 with 引导的独立主格, 以体现两者之间的这种紧密的“普遍——稀少”逻辑联系。 ➤ 排除 C D

正确选项 E

46. When the technique known as gene-splicing was invented in the early 1970's, it was feared that scientists might inadvertently create an "Andromeda strain," a microbe never before seen on Earth that might escape from the laboratory and it would kill vast numbers of humans who would have no natural defenses against it.

- (A) it would kill vast numbers of humans who would have no natural defenses against it
- (B) it might kill vast numbers of humans with no natural defenses against it
- (C) kill vast numbers of humans who would have no natural defenses against it
- (D) kill vast numbers of humans who have no natural defenses against them
- (E) kill vast numbers of humans with no natural defenses against them

读题

when..., it was feared that..., a microbe never before seen ... that 定语从句

排除第二步

一步:并列句的省略

that 定语从句跳跃修饰名词性同位语 a microbe, 定语从句中包含两个并列的动作 escape 和 kill, 关系代词 that 充当 kill 的主语, 所以划线部分的 it 多余。 ➤ 排除 A B

第二步:代词指代

D E 选项 代词 them 语法上必须指代复数名词, 而逻辑上应指代单数名词 a microbe, 语法上和逻辑上产生矛盾, 代词指代有争议。 ➤ 排除 D E

正确选项 C

47. Intar, the oldest Hispanic theater company in New York, has moved away from the Spanish classics and now it draws on the works both of contemporary Hispanic authors who live abroad and of those in the United States.

- (A) now it draws on the works both of contemporary Hispanic authors who live abroad and of those
- (B) now draws on the works of contemporary Hispanic authors, both those who live abroad and those who live
- (C) it draws on the works of contemporary Hispanic authors now, both those living abroad and who live
- (D) draws now on the works both of contemporary Hispanic authors living abroad and who are
- (E) draws on the works now of both contemporary Hispanic authors living abroad and those

排除第二步

一步:并列句的省略

A C 选项 并列句主语相同, 应该省略重复的主语, 代词 it 多余。 ➤ 排除 A C

第二步:平行结构形式要对称、意思要合理

A E 选项 those 指代重复的复数名词 contemporary Hispanic authors, 但是 contemporary Hispanic authors 有修饰语限制, those 其实指代“居住在海外的当代西班牙作家”, 所以 those in the United States 逻辑意思不合理。

D 选项 both of...and...平行结构的形式不对称。 ➤ 排除 A D E

备选

避免 both...and...结构产生争议

E 选项 一种可能, both 可以作为定语修饰 author, 由 and 连接两个名词短语; 另一种可能, both 与 and 构成搭配, 所以 both 的作用引起争议。

正确选项 B

those 指代 contemporary Hispanic authors, 所以 both those (contemporary Hispanic authors) who live abroad and those (contemporary Hispanic authors) who live in the United

States, 平行结构形式对称, 意思单一合理。

48. Visitors to the park have often looked up into the leafy canopy and saw monkeys sleeping on the branches, whose arms and legs hang like socks on a clothesline.

- (A) saw monkeys sleeping on the branches, whose arms and legs hang
- (B) saw monkeys sleeping on the branches, whose arms and legs were hanging
- (C) saw monkeys sleeping on the branches, with arms and legs hanging
- (D) seen monkeys sleeping on the branches, with arms and legs hanging
- (E) seen monkeys sleeping on the branches, whose arms and legs have hung

此题二步

一步: 并列结构的省略

并列结构中相同的助动词必须省略, 保留第一个助动词, 如 have/has/had done and done, be doing... and doing..., will/would do... and do...。

A B C 选项 have looked 与 saw 时态不一致, 并且没有线索表明两个动作发生有先后顺序, 所以没有合理理由保证这种不一致可以接受。 ➤ 排除 A B C

二步: 修饰语修饰对象的合理性

A B E 选项 非限定性定语从句与其逻辑修饰对象 monkeys 被隔离, 只能就近修饰 branches, “树枝的胳膊和腿挂起来像袜子”不合理。 ➤ 排除 A B E

正确选项 D

have looked and seen..., seen 前省略了助动词 have。

独立主格结构

with arms and legs hanging... 是 with 引导的独立主格, 作状语就近修饰 sleeping。这种独立主格有三种形式: with + n. + -ed / -ing 形式; with + n. + adj.; with + n. + 介词短语。

49. According to a panel of health officials, there has been a great deal of confusion in the medical profession about whether obesity is a biological disorder posing serious health risks or a condition more related to appearance than to health.

- (A) about whether obesity is a biological disorder posing serious health risks or a condition more related to appearance than to
- (B) with respect to obesity being a biological disorder posing serious health risks or if it is related more to appearance than
- (C) over whether or not obesity is a biological disorder posing serious health risks or it is a condition more related to appearance than to
- (D) about obesity and if it is a biological disorder posing serious health risks or a condition related to appearance more than to
- (E) concerning whether obesity is a biological disorder posing serious health risks or it is a condition related to appearance more than

读题

According to sb., there has been a great deal of confusion about whether obesity is a biolog-



ical disorder or a condition.

必杀二步

一步:平行结构形式要对称

B 选项 名词短语 obesity being... 和 if 从句形式不对称,不能够用 or 连接。

D 选项 名词 obesity 和 if 从句形式不对称,不能够用 and 连接。 ➤ 排除 B D

二步:并列句的省略

两个句子并列,主语-系动词结构相同,第二个句子的主语和系动词必须省略。

C E 选项 obesity is a biological disorder 和 it(指代 obesity)is a condition 并列,it is 必须省略。 ➤ 排除 C E

补选

1> 标准书面语原则

标准书面语中,if 不能表示是否,只能表示如果。

B D 选项 if 表示是否引导状语从句,错。

2> 简洁性原则

C 选项 whether or not 表达不简洁,必须省略 or not。

3> 修饰语位置的改变

原句 more 修饰 related, D E 选项改变 more 的位置,导致修饰关系不清楚,改变原句的意思。

4> 用词倾向性

标准书面语中,表达“关于...”优先使用介词 about /over,不倾向于使用 concerning / with respect to。

正确选项 A

50. Scientists believe that unlike the males of most species of moth, the male whistling moths of Nambung, Australia, call female moths to them by the use of acoustical signals, but not olfactory ones, and they attract their mates during the day, rather than at night.

- (A) by the use of acoustical signals, but not olfactory ones, and they attract
- (B) by the use of acoustical signals instead of using olfactory ones, and attracting
- (C) by using acoustical signals, not using olfactory ones, and by attracting
- (D) using acoustical signals, rather than olfactory ones, and attract
- (E) using acoustical signals, but not olfactory ones, and attracting

读题

Scientists believe that unlike X1, X2 call sth., and they attract sth.

必杀二步

一步:名词的否定形式

not X1, but X2; not X1, but rather X2; X1, rather than X2; X1, not X2

A E 选项 X1, but not X2 不符合习惯表达;后文的 rather than at night 暗示使用 rather than 替换 but not 更符合形式对称原则。 ➤ 排除 A E

第二步: and 连接对象的合理性.

原句中, attract 逻辑上应作为谓语动词与 call 并列。

- B 选项 and 如果连接 call 与 attracting, 形式不对称; and 如果连接 attracting 和 using, 逻辑意思不合理。此外, by the use of sth. 与 instead of using... 不能构成平行结构。
- C 选项 and 连接 by using... 和 by attracting..., 逻辑意思 “the male whistling moths call female moths to them both by using acoustical signals and by attracting their mates during the day” 不合理。排除 B C

补选

并列句的省略

两个句子并列, 第一句中有 be 动词或 become, 第二句中的 be 动词或 become 可以省略, 也包括一些重复的名词和形容词也可以省略。

A 选项 attract 前重复的主语 they 必须省略。

正确选项 D

call female moths... using X1, rather than X2, and attract their mates during the day, rather than at night

51. Any medical test will sometimes fail to detect a condition when it is present and indicate that there is one when it is not.

- (A) a condition when it is present and indicate that there is one
(B) when a condition is present and indicate that there is one
(C) a condition when it is present and indicate that it is present
(D) when a condition is present and indicate its presence
(E) the presence of a condition when it is there and indicate its presence

此题一步

一步: 省略结构必须能够还原

A B 选项 indicate there is one when it is not 中, 状语从句 when it is not 省略的表语无法还原, 也就是说状语从句不能按语法要求承接 there is one 省略。

D E 选项 indicate its presence when it is not 中, when it is not 也无法承前省略重复的名词 its presence, 因为 it is not its presence 意思不合理。

上述四个选项中的状语从句省略都没有语法和逻辑依据, 错。

一步到位, 排除 A B D E

补选

不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

原句 to detect 的宾语为 a condition, 语法上和逻辑上都合理。

B D 选项 to detect 的宾语为 when 从句, 原句的合理重心被改变。

E 选项 to detect 的宾语为 the presence of, 原句的合理重心被改变。

正确选项 C

省略的依据

代词 it 都指代 a condition; when it is not 状语从句承接其修饰对象 it is present 省略了

重复的形容词 present。

52. Unlike Gertrude Stein, Ezra Pound, and other expatriates, William Carlos Williams insisted that poets honor their own regions and employ specifically American rhythms.

- (A) Unlike Gertrude Stein, Ezra Pound, and other expatriates, William Carlos Williams insisted
- (B) Although Gertrude Stein, Ezra Pound, and other expatriates did not, William Carlos Williams' insistence was
- (C) Contrary to Gertrude Stein, Ezra Pound, and other expatriates, it was William Carlos Williams who insisted
- (D) As opposed to what Gertrude Stein, Ezra Pound, and other expatriates did, William Carlos Williams was to insist
- (E) While Gertrude Stein, Ezra Pound, and other expatriates did not, William Carlos Williams was insistent

读题

Unlike GS, EP, and other expatriates, WCW insisted that...
that 从句使用动词原形,表示虚拟语气。

必杀二步

一步:省略的成分必须能够还原

B E 选项 主句中只有 be 动词,所以从句中的 did 无法指代任何实义动词。

排除 B E

二步:比较对象之间要有可比性

C 选项 contrary to 后面必须加抽象名词修饰主句,而 GS, EP, and other expatriates 是实义名词。

D 选项 what 从句与 WCW(人)无法比较。排除 C D

正确选项 A

53. Critics of the trend toward privately operated prisons consider corrections facilities to be an integral part of the criminal justice system and question if profits should be made from incarceration.

- (A) to be an integral part of the criminal justice system and question if
- (B) as an integral part of the criminal justice system and they question if
- (C) as being an integral part of the criminal justice system and question whether
- (D) an integral part of the criminal justice system and question whether
- (E) are an integral part of the criminal justice system, and they question whether

必杀一步

一步:习惯性省略

标准书面语中 consider 后面常省略 to be 和 as,正确用法为:consider sth. sth.; consider sth. adj.。

A 选项 consider sth. to be, 不符合习惯搭配。

B C 选项 consider sth. as sth., 不符合习惯搭配。

E 选项 consider + 句子, 缺 that, 不符合习惯搭配: consider 后可用宾语从句, 但须加 that 引导。一步到位, 排除 A B C E

补选

1> 标准书面语原则

在标准书面语中, if 不能表示“是否”, 只能表示“如果”, 引导条件从句。用 whether 表示“是否”。

2> 动词并列

B E 选项 动词 consider 和 question 并列, question 前面的主语 they 多余, 应省略。

正确选项 D

54. In 1791 Robert Carter III, one of the wealthiest plantation owners in Virginia, stunned his family, friends, and neighbors by filing a deed of emancipation, setting free the more than 500 slaves who were legally considered his property.

- (A) setting free the more than 500 slaves who were legally considered
- (B) setting free more than the 500 slaves legally considered as
- (C) and set free more than 500 slaves, who were legally considered as
- (D) and set free more than the 500 slaves who were legally considered
- (E) and he set free the more than 500 slaves who were legally considered as

必杀二步

一步: 习惯性省略

标准书面语中 consider 后面不能加 to be / as, 正确用法为: consider sth. sth., consider sth. . adj.。

B C E 选项 considered as his property 不符合习惯搭配。排除 B C E

二步: 定冠词的位置

定冠词 the 应放在“more than + 数词 + 名词”前面, 不能放在 more than 后面。

B 选项 more than the 500 slaves 中定冠词 the 的位置错, 应放在 more than 前面。

D 选项 定冠词 the 放在 500 slaves 前面, 使 who 定语从句修饰 500 slaves, 逻辑意思变为: 就 500 个奴隶是 Robert Carter III 的财产, 但是他释放了 500 多个奴隶, 说明他还释放了一些不属于他个人财产的奴隶。定冠词 the 位置的变化, 导致修饰关系的变化, 从而改变逻辑意思。排除 B D

正确选项 A

55. George Sand (Aurore Lucile Dupin) was one of the first European writers to consider the rural poor to be legitimate subjects for literature and portray these with sympathy and respect in her novels.

- (A) to be legitimate subjects for literature and portray these
- (B) should be legitimate subjects for literature: portray these
- (C) as being legitimate subjects for literature and portraying them

(D) as if they were legitimate subjects for literal; and portray them

(E) legitimate subjects for literature and to portray them

必杀一步

一步:习惯性省略

在标准书面语中, consider 的习惯用法: consider sth. sth.; consider sth. adj.。

A 选项 consider sth. to be, 不符合习惯搭配。

B 选项 consider sth. should be, 不符合习惯搭配。

C 选项 consider sth. as being, 不符合习惯搭配。

D 选项 consider sth. as if, 不符合习惯搭配。 ➤ 一步到位, 排除 A B C D

正确选项 E

56. The company announced that its profits declined much less in the second quarter than analysts had expected it to and its business will improve in the second half of the year. had expected it to and its business will improve.

(A) had expected it to and its business will improve

(B) had expected and that its business would improve

(C) expected it would and that it will improve its business

(D) expected them to and its business would improve

(E) expected and that it will have improved its business

必杀二步

一步:习惯性省略

“比预期”的表达方法: than expected; than sb. expected; than sb. had expected

A C D 选项 expect 后面加上宾语, 不符合“比预期”的习惯用法。 ➤ 排除 A C D

二步:时态判断

E 选项 宾语从句的一般将来时与主句的一般过去时不协调, 并且从逻辑关系看, expect 发生在 decline 以前, decline 使用一般过去时, expect 应该使用过去完成时。

➤ 排除 E

正确选项 B

57. The report on the gross national product—the nation's total production of goods and services—showed that second-quarter inflation was somewhat lower than a previous estimation and the savings rate slightly higher.

(A) a previous estimation and the savings rate slightly higher

(B) a previous estimation and with a slightly higher savings rate

(C) a previous estimate and that the savings rate is slightly higher

(D) previously estimated and a slightly higher savings rate

(E) previously estimated and that the savings rate was slightly higher

读题

The report on sth. showed that inflation was lower than a previous estimation and the

savings rate higher.

此步二步

一步:习惯性省略

A B C 选项 a previous estimation 是个抽象名词短语,与 inflation 没有可比性;“比想像的,比预料的,比估计的”的习惯表达为:than expected / than predicted / than estimated。✂ 排除 A B C

二步:平行结构形式要对称

D 选项 and 连接 that 定语从句和名词短语,平行结构形式不对称。✂ 排除 D

正确选项 E

宾语从句并列

the report showed that 句子 1 and that 句子 2。

58. Analysts blamed May's sluggish retail sales on unexciting merchandise as well as the weather, colder and wetter than was usual in some regions, which slowed sales of barbecue grills and lawn furniture.

- (A) colder and wetter than was usual in some regions, which slowed
- (B) which was colder and wetter than usual in some regions, slowing
- (C) since it was colder and wetter than usually in some regions, which slowed
- (D) being colder and wetter than usually in some regions, slowing
- (E) having been colder and wetter than was usual in some regions and slowed

读题

sb. blamed sth. on X1 as well as X2; blame...on...把...归咎于...

此步二步

一步:修饰关系的合理性

A C 选项 定语从句 which slowed sth.就近修饰 some regions,some regions slowed sth.逻辑意思不合理,定语从句应该跳跃修饰 the weather。✂ 排除 A C

二步:习惯性省略

“比平常...”的固定表达:than usual

A E 选项 than was usual,be 动词 was 多余。

C D 选项 than usually,不符合习惯表达。✂ 排除 A C D E

外推

-ing 分词短语在句尾的作用

-ing 分词短语在句尾优先充当伴随结果状语或伴随动作状语。

D E 选项 being colder and wetter/having been colder and wetter 在句尾优先作状语修饰动词,而不是作定语修饰名词 weather。

正确选项 B

which 定语从句修饰名词 weather; -ing 分词短语 slowing 在句尾,作定语从句的伴随结果状语。

第三章

一致

主谓一致

五、主谓一致的一般规则

1. 复数名词 + 复数动词 + each + verb, 谓后动词用复数。
each of 复数名词 + verb, 谓后动词用单数。
2. 物质名词 (如 equipment, stone, citrus, iron, milk, alcohol) 作主语, 谓后动词用单数。
3. 数词 + 单位词 + 复数名词 + of + 不可数名词, 谓后动词用复数。例如:
From 1050 to 1350, several million tons of stone were quarried in France for the building of ...
4. 学科名词作主语, 谓后动词用单数。但是, 统计等 (statistics) 作“统计数据”时, 经各等 (economics) 作“经济政策”时, 谓后动词用复数。
5. 以 -s 结尾的专有名词, 如国家名称, 谓后动词用单数。例如: 哈佛大学。
6. A or B \ not A but B \ either A or B \ A not B, not only A but also B, neither A nor B 作主语时, 谓后动词用单数, 形式由 B 决定。

作主语时, 谓后动词用单数, 形式由 B 决定。

英语中的主谓一致性是指主语同谓语之间数的一致性关系。谓语动词的单数或复数形式通常由主语的单数或复数来决定。

一、主语的核心词原则

阅读句子时,主语后过多的修饰语(比如定语、定语从句或插入成分)常常会影响我们判断主谓一致。遇到这样的句子,解题方法是:先找出主语的核心词,然后再看谓语动词的单复数形式是否与其对应。例如:在“the + 名词1 + of + 名词2 + 定语从句 + 主句谓语动词”这样的句子中,名词1为核心词,主句谓语动词应与名词1保持数的一致。

二、定语从句中的主谓一致

1. 名词1 of 名词2 + that verb
先用逻辑关系判断出 that 引导的定语从句修饰名词1还是名词2,再根据名词1或名词2来判定动词的单复数形式。
2. (only/ but) one of 复数名词 + that verb(复数)
that 引导的定语从句修饰复数名词,谓语动词用复数。
3. the (only) one of 复数名词 + that verb(单数)
that 引导的定语从句修饰 the (only) one,谓语动词用单数。

三、倒装结构中的主谓一致

1. 在 there be A and B 句型中,由靠近 be 动词的 A 决定 be 动词的数的形式。
2. 在全倒装结构中,谓语动词的数的形式由谓语动词后的主语的形式决定。例如:
Out of sth. grows a market for... (a market 决定动词用单数 grows)
At stake, ..., is the solvency of the bank... (the solvency 决定 be 动词用单数 is)
3. 在部分倒装结构中,主语前的助动词的数的形式由该主语的数决定。

四、主语从句作主语时的主谓一致

主语从句作主语时,谓语动词一般用单数,但 what, who 等引导的主语从句含有复数意义时,动词可用复数形式。

五、主谓一致的一般规则

1. 复数名词/复数代词 + each + verb, 谓语动词用复数。
each of 复数名词 + verb, 谓语动词用单数。
2. 物质名词(如 equipment, stone, citrus, iron, milk, dioxin)作主语,谓语动词用单数。
3. 数词 + 单位词复数 + of + 不可数名词/物质名词,谓语动词用复数。例如:
From 1050 to 1350, several million tons of stone were quarried in France for the building of...
4. 学科名词作主语,谓语动词用单数。但是,统计学(statistics)作“统计数据”讲,经济学(economics)作“经济政策”讲时,谓语动词用复数。
5. 以-s 结尾的疾病、国家名称或机构名称用作单数作主语时,谓语动词用单数。
6. A or B / not A but B / either A or B / A nor B / not only A but also B / neither A nor B 作主语时,谓语动词单复数形式由 B 决定。

7. A with B / A, including B / A as well as B / A, together with B / A, along with B / A, no less than B / A, more than B / A besides B / A except B 作主语时, 谓语动词形式由 A 决定。
8. 在“A, 举例短语 (such as...)/分词短语/介词短语/同位语/不定式等插入成分, 谓语动词”结构中, A 决定谓语动词的形式。
9. “no + 名词”结构作主语时, 由名词的单复数形式决定谓语动词的数的形式。例如:
No job has more influence on the future of the world.
No letters survive from this early period.
10. part of + n. / most of + n. / all of + n. / some of + n. / 分数或百分数 of + n. / the rest of + n. 作主语时, 谓语动词的数的形式由 of 后的名词的单复数决定。
11. a body of / a collection of / an array of / a series of / a set of / a portion of / a group of + 复数名词, 谓语动词用单数。
12. a total of + 复数名词作主语, 谓语动词用复数。
the number of + 复数名词作主语, 谓语动词用单数; a number of + 复数名词作主语, 谓语动词用复数。
the average of + 复数名词作主语, 谓语动词用单数; an average of + 复数名词作主语, 谓语动词用复数。
13. neither 作主语时, 谓语动词用单数。
14. 不定式短语或-ing 分词短语作主语, 谓语动词用单数。
15. one in / out of + 复数名词(意为“…分之一”)作主语, 谓语动词用单数形式。
two / three... in / out of + 复数名词(意为“…分之二/之三”)作主语, 谓语动词用复数形式。

练习题及其详解

1. While all states face similar industrial waste problems, the predominating industries and the regulatory environment of the states obviously determines the types and amounts of waste produced, as well as the cost of disposal.

- (A) all states face similar industrial waste problems, the predominating industries and the regulatory environment of the states obviously determines
- (B) each state faces a similar industrial waste problem, their predominant industries and regulatory environment obviously determine
- (C) all states face a similar industrial waste problem, their predominating industries and regulatory environment obviously determines
- (D) each state faces similar industrial waste problems, the predominant industries and the regulatory environment of each state obviously determines
- (E) all states face similar industrial waste problems, the predominant industries and the regulatory environment of each state obviously determine

答案二步

一步: 主谓一致

A C D 选项 主句中, 复数主语 the... and the... 与单数谓语动词 determines 主谓不一致。

排除 A C D

第二步:代词指代

B 选项 代词 their 无法指代单数名词 each state。 排除 B

正确选项 E

2. The lack of complete historical records from the mid-to-late 1800's have made some Black inventions difficult to trace to their originators.

- (A) have made some Black inventions difficult to trace to their originators
- (B) have made for difficulties in tracing some inventions by Blacks to their originators
- (C) have made it difficult to trace some inventions by Blacks to their originators
- (D) has made it difficult to trace some inventions to their Black originators
- (E) has made it difficult in tracing some Black inventions to their originators

读题

The lack of sth. have made sb. difficult to do sth.

必杀二步

一步:主谓一致

A B C 选项 单数主语 lack 与复数谓语动词 have 主谓不一致。 排除 A B C

第二步:代词指代

E 选项 作为形式宾语的代词 it, 不能向后指代介词短语 in tracing...。 排除 E

补选

make 的习惯搭配

make sth. sth.; make sth. + adj.; make it + adj. + to do...

正确选项 D

形式宾语 it 向后指代不定式短语 to trace...

3. Psychologists now contend that the way adults think and feel are determined as much by their peers in early childhood than by their parents.

- (A) are determined as much by their peers in early childhood than by their
- (B) are determined as much by peers in early childhood as do their
- (C) is determined as much by their early childhood peers as by their
- (D) have been determined by childhood peers as much as their
- (E) was determined as much by one's peers in childhood as by one's

读题

Sb. contend that the way are determined as much by...than by...

必杀二步

一步:主谓一致

A B D 选项 contend 的宾语从句中,单数主语 the way 与谓语动词的复数形式 are deter-

mined/have been determined 主谓不一致。 ➤ 排除 A B D

第二步:代词指代

E 选项 代词 one 指代单数名词短语中的核心词,无法指代复数名词 adults。 ➤ 排除 E

补选

比较结构

A 选项 as much ... than ... 搭配错。

B 选项 as much by ... as do sb. 结构中, as ... as ... 前后形式不对称。

正确选项 C

The way sb. do is determined as much by ... as by ...

4. Inflation in medical costs slowed in 1986 for the fifth consecutive year but were still about 50 percent greater than the rate of price increases for other items included in the consumer price index.

- (A) Inflation in medical costs slowed in 1986 for the fifth consecutive year but were
- (B) Inflation in medical costs slowed for the fifth consecutive year in 1986 but was
- (C) In 1986 inflation in medical costs were slowed for the fifth consecutive year but were
- (D) 1986 was the fifth consecutive year in which inflation in medical costs slowed but was
- (E) 1986 was the fifth consecutive year that inflation in medical costs were slowed, but they were

53

必杀二步

一步:主谓一致

主语核心词是 inflation。

A C 选项 inflation 与 were 主谓不一致。 ➤ 排除 A C

第二步:不能改变原句的合理重心

D E 选项 把原句中时间状语变为主语,改变原句重心。 ➤ 排除 D E

正确选项 B

5. The direction in which the Earth and the other solid planets—Mercury, Venus, and Mars—spins were determined from collisions with giant celestial bodies in the early history of the Solar System.

- (A) spins were determined from
- (B) spins were determined because of
- (C) spins was determined through
- (D) spin was determined by
- (E) spin was determined as a result of

必杀二步

一步:主谓一致

A B 选项 主句主语为单数名词 the direction, 与谓语动词 were 主谓不一致。

A B C 选项 定语从句主语 the earth and other solid planets 与其谓语动词 spins 主谓不一致。排除 A B C

第二步:被动语态

被动语态中,动作的执行者用介词 by 表示。排除 E

正确选项 D

6. While larger banks can afford to maintain their own data-processing operations, many smaller regional and community banks are finding that the cost associated with upgrading data-processing equipment and with the development and maintenance of new products and technical staff are prohibitive.

- (A) cost associated with
- (B) costs associated with
- (C) costs arising from
- (D) cost of
- (E) costs of

读题

While large banks can afford, many smaller banks are finding that the cost are prohibitive.

while 在句首引导状语从句,表示转折含义。在英语中有三个类似的词表示转折含义: while, whereas, where。三者的区别为: where 只能放在句首作状语表示转折含义 (where..., + 主句.), 不能放在主句后的从句前面 (主句, + where...), 因为 where 可能作定语, 从而是修饰对象产生混淆; while 和 whereas 可放在句首, 也可放在主句后面的从句前面, 都引导状语从句, 表转折含义。

必杀二步

一步:主谓一致

A D 选项 find 的宾语从句中, 主语 cost 与谓语动词 are 主谓不一致。排除 A D

第二步:习惯用法

C 选项 costs arising from X1 and with X2, arising 与介词短语 with X2 不能搭配。

E 选项 costs of X1 and with X2, cost 与介词短语 with X2 不能搭配。排除 C E

正确选项 B

7. Since 1986 enrollments of African Americans, American Indians, and Hispanic Americans in full-time engineering programs in the United States has steadily increased, while the number of other students who enter the field has fallen.

- (A) has steadily increased, while the number of other students who enter the field has fallen
- (B) has steadily increased, while other students entering the field have declined in number
- (C) increased steadily, while there was a decline in the number of other students entering the field

(D) have steadily increased, while the number of other students entering the field has fallen

(E) have steadily increased, while that of other students who enter the field fell

读题

Since 1986 enrollments has increased, while the number of... has fallen.

秒杀二步

一步:主谓一致

A B 选项 复数主语 enrollments 与单数谓语动词 has increased 主谓不一致。

排除 A B

二步:时态判断

since 1986 标志着所修饰的动词必须使用现在完成时态。

C 选项 主句使用一般过去时 increased, 错。

E 选项 主句使用现在完成时 have increased, 从句使用一般过去时 fell, 主从句时态不协调, 且没有合理的理由。排除 C E

补选

代词指代

E 选项 Enrollments have increased, while that of... fell. that 无法指代复数名词 enrollments。

正确选项 D

55

8. The growing demand for housing, traffic congestion, and longer commuting trips has all but eliminated the cost advantage of owning a house in many rural communities.

(A) The growing demand for housing, traffic congestion, and longer commuting trips has

(B) Traffic congestion, the growing demand for housing, and longer commuting trips has

(C) Longer commuting trips, traffic congestion, and the growing demand for housing has

(D) Traffic congestion, longer commuting trips, and the growing demand for housing have

(E) The growing demand for housing, as well as traffic congestion and longer commuting trips, have

读题

The growing demand for X1, X2, and X3 has all but eliminated the advantage of... all but 几乎...

秒杀二步

一步:主谓一致

B C 选项 复数主语 X1, X2, and X3 和谓语动词 has 主谓不一致。

E 选项 单数主语 the growing demand 与谓语动词 have 主谓不一致。 ➤ 排除 B C E

第二步: 平行结构的意思单一性

平行结构的并列项组合不能引起争议。

A 选项 the growing demand for X1, X2, and X3 也可以理解为 demand for housing, (demand for) traffic congestion and (demand for) longer commuting trips, 逻辑搭配不合理。 ➤ 排除 A

正确选项 D

9. Some analysts contend that true capitalism exists only when the ownership of both property and the means of production is regarded as an inalienable right of an individual's, and it is not a license granted by government and revoke at whim.

(A) is regarded as an inalienable right of an individual's, and it is not

(B) are regarded as individuals' inalienable rights, and that it not be

(C) is regarded as an individual's inalienable right, not as

(D) are regarded as an individual's inalienable rights, not when they are

(E) is regarded as the inalienable rights of an individual, not when it is

必杀二步

一步: 主谓一致

both...and...连接 property 和 the means of production, 作 of 的宾语; 主语核心词是单数名词 the ownership, 谓语动词应该用单数形式。 ➤ 排除 B D

第二步: 习惯用法

be regarded as X1, not as X2

A 选项 sth. be regarded as X1, and it is not X2 不符合习惯用法。

E 选项 sth. be regarded as X1, not when it is X2 不符合习惯用法。 ➤ 排除 A E

补遗

1> 用词倾向性

在标准书面语中不倾向于使用双重所有格形式, 如 A 选项中的 right of an individual's。

2> regard 的其他习惯搭配

be regarded as + n./ adj. / -ing 形式

3> 名词的否定形式

not A, but B; not A, but rather B; A, rather than B; A, not B

正确选项 C

10. Despite no proof that the consumption of any particular foods reverse hardening of the arteries, studies indicate that refraining from eating certain foods could help reverse blockage of coronary arteries, the blood vessels that feed the heart.

(A) Despite no proof that the consumption of any particular foods reverse hardening of the arteries, studies indicate that refraining from eating certain foods could

(B) Despite no foods having been proved to reverse hardening of the arteries when con-

sumed, studies indicate that refraining from eating certain foods can

- (C) Although the consumption of no particular foods have been proved to reverse hardening of the arteries, studies indicate that to refrain from eating certain foods could
- (D) Although not proved that the consumption of any foods reverse hardening of the arteries, studies indicate that refraining from eating certain foods can
- (E) Although it has not been proved that the consumption of any particular food will reverse hardening of the arteries, studies indicate that refraining from eating certain foods can

读题

Despite no proof that... (具体化同位结构), studies indicate that doing sth. could help do...

必杀二步

一步:主谓一致

- A 选项 proof 的同位语从句中,单数主语 consumption 与谓语动词 reverse 主谓不一致。
- C 选项 although 状语从句中,单数主语 consumption 与复数谓语动词 have been proved 主谓不一致。
- D 选项 consumption 与 reverse 主谓不一致。排除 A C D

二步:-ing 分词的完成时态

现在分词的完成时态不能作定语修饰名词。

- B 选项 现在分词的完成时态 having been proved 作定语修饰 foods,绝对错。

排除 B

正确选项 E

it has been proved that..., it 作为形式主语指代后面的 that 从句,that 从句充当主语。

57

11. Paleontologists believe that fragments of a primate jawbone unearthed in Burma and estimated at 40 to 44 million years old provide evidence of a crucial step along the evolutionary path that led to human beings.

- (A) at 40 to 44 million years old provide evidence of
- (B) as being 40 to 44 million years old provides evidence of
- (C) that it is 40 to 44 million years old provides evidence of what was
- (D) to be 40 to 44 million years old provide evidence of
- (E) as 40 to 44 million years old provides evidence of what was

读题

sb. believe that sth. provide evidence of...

必杀二步

一步:主谓一致

- B C E 选项 宾语从句的主语 fragments 与谓语 provides 主谓不一致。排除 B C E

二步:习惯用法

美国英语中, estimated at 后常用价格等数量词,除此以外的概念优先用 estimated to

be 表达。

A 选项 40 to 44 million years 是时间概念, estimated 后面应该跟不定式短语 to be...。

➡ 排除 A

补选

简洁性原则

C E 选项 evidence of 后面的 what was 多余, 应直接用 evidence of + 名词。

正确选项 D

12. Some scientists have been critical of the laboratory tests conducted by the Federal Drug Administration on the grounds that the amounts of suspected carcinogens fed to animals far exceeds those that humans could consume.

- (A) far exceeds those that humans could consume
- (B) exceeds by far those humans can consume
- (C) far exceeds those humans are able to consume
- (D) exceed by far those able to be consumed by humans
- (E) far exceed those that humans could consume

读题

sb. have been critical of sth. on the grounds that...

必杀二步

一步: 主谓一致

A B C 选项 on the grounds that... 中的谓语动词 exceeds 与复数名词 the amounts of sth.

主谓不一致。 ➡ 排除 A B C

二步: 逻辑意思的合理性

D 选项 形容词短语 able to (表示能力) 修饰 those (指代 amounts), amounts are able to...

数量能够..., 逻辑意思不合理。 ➡ 排除 D

补选

1> 关系代词省略的合理性

B C 选项 those 与 humans 之间的关系代词 that 在语法上可以省略, 但保留 that 可以使修饰关系更清晰, 所以 those that sb. do (及物动词) 应成为优先选择的结构。

2> 习惯用法

be able to do 一般作为表语, 较少作定语, 并且 to do 不使用被动语态。

正确选项 E

在含有比较意义的结构中, 用代词 those 代替作为比较对象的重复复数名词 the amounts。

13. Bluegrass musician Bill Monroe, whose repertory, views on musical collaboration, and vocal style were influential on generations of bluegrass artists, was also an inspiration to many musicians, that included Elvis Presley and Jerry Garcia, whose music differed significantly from his own.

- (A) were influential on generations of bluegrass artists, was also an inspiration to many musicians, that included Elvis Presley and Jerry Garcia, whose music differed significantly from
- (B) influenced generations of bluegrass artists, also inspired many musicians, including Elvis Presley and Jerry Garcia, whose music differed significantly from
- (C) was influential to generations of bluegrass artists, was also inspirational to many musicians, that included Elvis Presley and Jerry Garcia, whose music was different significantly in comparison to
- (D) was influential to generations of bluegrass artists, also inspired many musicians, who included Elvis Presley and Jerry Garcia, the music of whom differed significantly when compared to
- (E) were an influence on generations of bluegrass artists, was also an inspiration to many musicians, including Elvis Presley and Jerry Garcia, whose music was significantly different from that of

读题

sb., whose X1, X2 and X3 were..., was also an inspiration to...

必杀二步

一步:主谓一致

C D 选项 定语从句中谓语动词 was 与主语 X1, X2 and X3 主谓不一致。 ➡ 排除 C D

二步:用词倾向性

在标准书面语中,应优先使用动词去替换: be + 动词的形容词形式; be + 动词的名词形式; have + 动词的名词形式。

A C D 选项 be + 动词的形容词形式 be influential, 应该用 influence 替换。

E 选项 be + 动词的名词形式 be an influence, 也应该用动词形式 influence 替换。

➡ 排除 A C D E

补选

定语从句逻辑意思的合理性

A C 选项 that included Elvis Presley and Jerry Garcia 就近修饰 musicians, musicians included Elvis Presley and Jerry Garcia, 逻辑意思不合理。

正确选项 B

14. The delinquency rates on mortgages for office buildings, hotels, shopping malls, and other commercial properties held by the nation's insurance companies in recent months have increased sharply, leading to predictions that foreclosures on these types of loan could double over the next three years.

- (A) in recent months have increased sharply, leading to predictions that foreclosures on these types of loan could double over the next three years
- (B) have increased sharply in recent months, leading to predictions that foreclosures on these types of loans could double over the next three years

- (C) have increased sharply in recent months, leading to predictions that doubling of foreclosures on these types of loans could occur over the next three years
- (D) has increased sharply in recent months, and lead to predictions that over the next three years doubling of foreclosures on this type of loan could occur
- (E) in recent months has increased sharply, and this leads to predictions that foreclosures on that type of loan in the next three years could double

读题

The delinquency rates have increased sharply, leading to...

必杀三步

一步:主谓一致

D E 选项 复数主语 the delinquency rates 与单数谓语动词 has increased 主谓不一致。

➤ 排除 D E

二步:简洁性原则

C 选项 predictions 的同位语从句中, doubling of... could occur 故意复杂化, 表达笨拙, 不简洁。 ➤ 排除 C

三步:修饰语修饰对象的单一性

A 选项 in recent months 可以向前修饰 held by..., 也可以向后修饰 have increased, 修饰语的位置使修饰对象引起了争议。 ➤ 排除 A

正确选项 B

改变 in recent months 的位置, 把它放在了谓语动词后面, 使它只能修饰 have increased。

15. According to scientists at the University of California, the pattern of changes that have occurred in human DNA over the millennia indicate the possibility that everyone alive today might be descended from a single female ancestor who lived in Africa sometime between 140,000 and 280,000 years ago.

- (A) indicate the possibility that everyone alive today might be descended from a single female ancestor who
- (B) indicate that everyone alive today might possibly be a descendant of a single female ancestor who had
- (C) may indicate that everyone alive today has descended from a single female ancestor who had
- (D) indicates that everyone alive today may be a descendant of a single female ancestor who
- (E) indicates that everyone alive today might be a descendant from a single female ancestor who

读题

According to..., the pattern of changes(主语) + indicate(谓语) + 宾语从句。

必杀三步

一步:主谓一致

主语 the pattern of changes + that 从句,核心词是 the pattern, 所以主语按单数名词来处理。

A B 选项 复数谓语 indicate 与单数主语主谓不一致。 ➤ 排除 A B

二步:习惯用法

习惯搭配: descend(verb.) from...; a descendant(noun.) of...。

E 选项 a descendant from 永远错。 ➤ 排除 E

三步:不能改变原句的合理意思

C 选项 情态动词 may 的位置改变,从而改变原句合理意思。“变化模式表明”与“变化模式可能表明”逻辑意思上有区别。 ➤ 排除 C

补遗**1> 利用主谓一致判定定语从句的修饰对象**

未划线部分的主语: X1 (the pattern) of X2 (changes) + that 从句,定语从句是就近修饰 of 后面的名词 X2 还是 of 前面的名词 X1,可以由主谓一致进行判断。本题中 that 定语从句中的谓语动词 have occurred 决定了定语从句修饰复数名词 changes, 如果谓语动词改为 has occurred, 修饰对象就是单数名词 the pattern。

2> 避免意思重复

A 选项 the possibility 和 might be 意思重复。

B 选项 might 和 possibly 意思重复。 ➤ 排除 A B

正确选项 D

61

16. Out of America's fascination with all things antique have grown a market for bygone styles of furniture and fixtures that are bringing back the chaise longue, the overstuffed sofa, and the claw-footed bathtub.

- (A) things antique have grown a market for bygone styles of furniture and fixtures that are bringing
- (B) things antique has grown a market for bygone styles of furniture and fixtures that is bringing
- (C) things that are antiques has grown a market for bygone styles of furniture and fixtures that bring
- (D) antique things have grown a market for bygone styles of furniture and fixtures that are bringing
- (E) antique things has grown a market for bygone styles of furniture and fixtures that bring

读题

介词短语 out of ... 在句首的全倒装结构: Out of sth. (介词短语) have grown (谓语动词) a market (主语)。

全倒装结构的形式:

介词短语/分词短语/形容词短语 + be + 主语 (主语与前面的 be 动词主谓一致)

必杀二步

一步:主谓一致

全倒装结构,动词后面的名词为主语。

A D 选项 单数名词 a market 和谓语动词的复数形式 have grown,主谓不一致。

➡ 排除 A D

二步:定语从句修饰对象的合理性

定语从句可以通过其主谓一致保证其修饰对象的单一性和合理性。

C E 选项 定语从句 that bring back...语法上就近修饰 furniture and fixtures,但“家具(furniture and fixtures)把家具(chaise lounge 等)带回来”不合理,它在逻辑上应该跳跃修饰单数名词 a market。 ➡ 排除 C E

正确选项 B

定语从句的谓语动词 is 保证了定语从句只能跳跃修饰单数名词 a market,且逻辑意思“市场把 chaise lounge 等老式家具带回来”合理:老式家具在市场上重新出现。

17. The period when the great painted caves at Lascaux and Altamira were occupied by Upper Paleolithic people has been established by carbon-14 dating, but what is much more difficult to determine are the reason for their decoration, the use to which primitive people put the caves, and the meaning of the magnificently depicted animals.

- (A) has been established by carbon-14 dating, but what is much more difficult to determine are
- (B) has been established by carbon-14 dating, but what is much more difficult to determine is
- (C) have been established by carbon-14 dating, but what is much more difficult to determine is
- (D) have been established by carbon-14 dating, but what is much more difficult to determine are
- (E) are established by carbon-14 dating, but that which is much more difficult to determine is

读题

The period when... has been established, but what... are the reason, the use, and the meaning.

必杀一步

一步:主谓一致

C D E 选项 未划线部分 when 从句作定语修饰 the period,复数谓语动词 have been established / are established 与单数主语 the period 主谓不一致。 ➡ 排除 C D E

what 引导的主语从句中,当 what 在从句中充当主语时,从句谓语动词的单复数形式一般与主句谓语动词相一致;当 what 在从句中充当宾语时,主句谓语动词的单复数形式一般由主句谓语动词后的名词决定。

A 选项 在 but 后的句子中, what 充当主语从句的主语, 从句谓语动词 is 与主句谓语动词 are 不一致。 排除 A

补选

定语从句的习惯搭配

the period when... a time when.../at a time when the year that...
the way in which... the way + 句子 the way + to do
an age in which... the next time + 句子 phenomenon in which...

正确选项 B

18. Although it claims to delve into political issues, television can be superficial such as when each of the three major networks broadcast exactly the same statement from a political candidate.

- (A) superficial such as when each of the three major networks
- (B) superficial, as can sometimes occur if all of the three major networks
- (C) superficial if the three major networks all
- (D) superficial whenever each of the three major networks
- (E) superficial, as when the three major networks each

必杀二步

一步: 主谓一致

A D 选项 单数主语 each of the three major networks 与复数谓语动词 broadcast 主谓不一致。 排除 A D

二步: 不能改变原句的合理意思

B C 选项 把原句的 when 时间状语从句改为 if 条件状语从句, 必然改变原句的意思。并且 B 选项随意添加实义动词 occur。 排除 B C

补选

习惯用法

A 选项 such as 不能加句子, such as 后只能加名词或名词短语的省略形式或-ing 形式, 表示举例。

正确选项 E

as 的特殊用法

as 代替前面主句, 后面加上介词短语或者 when 从句。

19. The peaks of a mountain range, acting like rocks in a streambed, produce ripples in the air flowing over them; the resulting flow pattern, with crests and troughs that remain stationary although the air that forms them is moving rapidly, are known as "standing waves".

- (A) crests and troughs that remain stationary although the air that forms them is moving rapidly, are
- (B) crests and troughs that remain stationary although they are formed by rapidly mov-

ing air, are

- (C) crests and troughs that remain stationary although the air that forms them is moving rapidly, is
- (D) stationary crests and troughs although the air that forms them is moving rapidly, are
- (E) stationary crests and troughs although they are formed by rapidly moving air, is

读题

分号前的句子没有划线可以跳过不读。分号后: The pattern, with..., are known as...

必杀二步

一步: 主谓一致

A B D 选项 单数主语 pattern 与复数 be 动词 are, 主谓不一致。✂ 排除 A B D

二步: 状语从句的修饰对象

状语从句不能修饰介词短语。

D E 选项 although 状语从句修饰介词短语 with stationary crests and troughs, 错。

✂ 排除 D E

正确选项 C

20. Declining values for farm equipment and land, the collateral against which farmers borrow to get through the harvest season, is going to force many lenders to tighten or deny credit this spring.

- (A) the collateral against which farmers borrow to get through the harvest season, is
- (B) which farmers use as collateral to borrow against to get through the harvest season, is
- (C) the collateral which is borrowed against by farmers to get through the harvest season, is
- (D) which farmers use as collateral to borrow against to get through the harvest season, are
- (E) the collateral against which farmers borrow to get through the harvest season, are

读题

主语, 同位语, is going to do...

declining 作为定语修饰 values, 而不是-ing 分词在句首作状语。

必杀二步

一步: 主谓一致

主语核心词是复数名词 values, 谓语动词应该使用复数形式。✂ 排除 A B C

二步: 定语从句

关系代词充当介词宾语时, 应将介词提前, 构成介词 + which 型定语从句。

✂ 排除 D

正确选项 E

同位结构

the collateral(抵押品)作为名词性同位结构,解释说明 farm equipment and land。

21. Efforts to equalize the funds available to school districts, a major goal of education reformers and many states in the 1970's, has not significantly reduced the gaps existing between the richest and poorest districts.

- (A) has not significantly reduced the gaps existing
- (B) has not been significant in reducing the gap that exists
- (C) has not made a significant reduction in the gap that exists
- (D) have not significantly reduced the gap that exists
- (E) have not been significant in a reduction of the gaps existing

读题

主语, 主语同位语, has not reduced...

必杀二步

一步: 主谓一致

主语核心词是复数名词 efforts, 谓语动词应该使用复数形式。 ➤ 排除 A B C

二步: 形容词和副词不能混淆

原句 significantly 表示很大程度上地(大大地)。

B C E 选项 significant 表示重要的, 形容词和副词在意思上有差别, 改变原句意思。

➤ 排除 B C E

正确选项 D

65

22. Thomas Eakins' powerful style and his choices of subject—the advances in modern surgery, the discipline of sport, the strains of individuals in tension with society or even with themselves—was as disturbing to his own time as it is compelling for ours.

- (A) was as disturbing to his own time as it is
- (B) were as disturbing to his own time as they are
- (C) has been as disturbing in his own time as they are
- (D) had been as disturbing in his own time as it was
- (E) have been as disturbing in his own time as

读题

sb.'s style and his choice——同位语——was as disturbing as...

必杀二步

一步: 主谓一致

A C 选项 复数主语... style and ... choices 与单数谓语动词 was/has, 主谓不一致。

➤ 排除 A C

二步: 时态判断

D E 选项 没有线索表明必须使用过去完成时或现在完成时; 而根据 in his own time, 主句必须使用一般过去时。 ➤ 排除 D E

正确选项 B

比较结构

sth. were as disturbing to his own time as they are compelling for ours: 有明显的标志 (be 动词 were 和 are) 表示不同时代下的比较。

23. Lacking information about energy use, people tend to overestimate the amount of energy used by equipment, such as lights, that are visible and must be turned on and off and underestimate that used by unobtrusive equipment, such as water heaters.

- (A) equipment, such as lights, that are visible and must be turned on and off and underestimate that
- (B) equipment, such as lights, that are visible and must be turned on and off and underestimate it when
- (C) equipment, such as lights, that is visible and must be turned on and off and underestimate it when
- (D) visible equipment, such as lights, that must be turned on and off and underestimate that
- (E) visible equipment, such as lights, that must be turned on and off and underestimate it when

读题

66 -ing 分词短语, + people tend to overestimate X1 and underestimate X2.

必杀二步

一步:主谓一致

A B 选项 that 定语从句跳过插入语 such as lights, 修饰单数物质名词 equipment, equipment 和 are 主谓不一致。 ➤ 排除 A B

第二步:对比对象形式要对称,概念要对等

B C E 选项 overestimate the amount of energy used by... and underestimate it when used by...

首先, amount... used by (名词短语) 与 it when (代词 + 状语从句), 对比对象形式上不对称; 其次, when used by 是状语从句省略, 就近修饰动词 underestimate, 逻辑主语等于所修饰的动词的主语 people, people are used by equipment 逻辑意思不合理; 最后, 对比结构中, 对比对象中出现的重复名词用 that 或 those 代替, 而不使用代词 it。 ➤ 排除 B C E

正确选项 D

overestimate the amount of energy used by... and underestimate that used by 中, that 指代重复的名词短语 the amount of energy, 所以 the amount of energy used by 与 that used by 对比对象形式对称, 概念对等。

定语从句要尽可能简化

把原句的定语从句 equipment that is visible 简化为形容词 + 名词 visible equipment, 表达简洁, 并且与对比对象中 unobtrusive equipment 形式对称。

24. Each of Hemingway's wives—Hadley Richardson, Pauline Pfeiffer, Martha Gel-

hom. and Mary Welsh—were strong and interesting women, very different from the often pallid women who populate his novels.

- (A) Each of Hemingway's wives—Hadley Richardson, Pauline Pfeiffer, Martha Gelhorn, and Mary Welsh—were strong and interesting women,
- (B) Hadley Richardson, Pauline Pfeiffer, Martha Gelhorn, and Mary Welsh—each of them Hemingway's wives—were strong and, interesting women,
- (C) Hemingway's wives—Hadley Richardson, Pauline Pfeiffer, Martha Gelhorn, and Mary Welsh—were all strong and interesting women,
- (D) Strong and interesting women—Hadley Richardson, Pauline Pfeiffer, Martha Gelhorn, and Mary Welsh—each a wife of Hemingway, was
- (E) Strong and interesting women—Hadley Richardson, Pauline Pfeiffer, Martha Gelhorn, and Mary Welsh—every one of Hemingway's wives were

必杀二步

一步:主谓一致

A 选项 单数主语 each of...与 be 动词 were 主谓不一致。破折号之间是插入语,解释说明主语,不影响主语的单复数。

D 选项 主语 strong and interesting women 与 be 动词 was 主谓不一致。

E 选项 主语 every one of...(单数)与 be 动词 were(复数)主谓不一致。 ➤ 排除 A D E

第二步:逻辑意思的合理性

B 选项 在破折号之间的插入语中,each of them 是单数概念,Hemingway's wives 是复数概念,each 不能成为 wives,所以单复数不协调,逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 B

补选

不能改变原句的合理重心

原句的重心在描述 Hemingway's wives。

D E 选项 句子重心转移到 strong and interesting women。

正确选项 C

25. As a result of the ground-breaking work of Barbara McClintock, many scientists now believe that all of the information encoded in 50,000 to 100,000 of the different genes found in a human cell are contained in merely three percent of the cell's DNA.

- (A) 50,000 to 100,000 of the different genes found in a human cell are contained in merely
- (B) 50,000 to 100,000 of the human cell's different genes are contained in a mere
- (C) the 50,000 to 100,000 different genes found in human cells are contained in merely
- (D) 50,000 to 100,000 of human cells' different genes is contained in merely
- (E) the 50,000 to 100,000 different genes found in a human cell is contained in a mere

读题

As a result of ..., sb. believe that all of the information are contained in...

as a result of 只能作状语,表示由于...,不能作定语或表语; noun + as a result of / be as a result of 绝对错。

必杀二步

一步:主谓一致

A B C 选项 information 是不可数名词,all of the information 与谓语 be 动词 are 主谓不一致。排除 A B C

二步:名词的逻辑对应

复数代词或 such / these / those + 复数名词,对应已经出现过的复数名词;单数代词或 the + 单数名词 / such a + 单数名词,对应已经出现过的单数名词。

D 选项 划线部分复数名词 human cells 与未划线部分 the cell 不能对应。排除 D

正确选项 E

未划线部分的 the cell 对应前面出现的单数名词短语 a human cell。

26. Since 1981, when the farm depression began, the number of acres overseen by professional farm-management companies have grown from 48 million to nearly 59 million, an area that is about Colorado's size.

(A) have grown from 48 million to nearly 59 million, an area that is about Colorado's size

(B) have grown from 48 million to nearly 59 million, about the size of Colorado

(C) has grown from 48 million to nearly 59 million, an area about the size of Colorado

(D) has grown from 48 million up to nearly 59 million, an area about the size of Colorado's

(E) has grown from 48 million up to nearly 59 million, about Colorado's size

必杀二步

一步:主谓一致

主语 the number of sth. 表示单数概念,谓语动词必须使用 has done。

A B 选项 the number of 与 have grown 主谓不一致。排除 A B

二步:永远错误的形式

from...to...结构中 to 前面不能够加 up 或者 down。

D E 选项 from...up to...永远错。排除 D E

补遗

名词所有格的表达

GMAT 考试中,无生命事物的所有格倾向于用 n. of n. (the size of Colorado) 的形式表达,而一般不使用 n.'s 形式 (Colorado's size),也不使用双重所有格形式 (the size of Colorado's)。

正确选项 C

独立主格结构

独立主格结构在句首或句尾,起状语作用,表伴随原因、条件、状态等。其形式有:n. + n.; n. + -ed / -ing 形式; n. + 介词短语; n. + 形容词短语。

C 选项中 an area about the size of colorado 是名词 + about 介词短语的独立主格形式。

27. In the last few years, the number of convicted criminals given community service sentences, which allow the criminals to remain unconfined while they perform specific jobs benefiting the public, have risen dramatically.

- (A) sentences, which allow the criminals to remain unconfined while they perform specific jobs benefiting the public, have
- (B) sentences, performing specific jobs that benefit the public while being allowed to remain unconfined, have
- (C) sentences, performing specific jobs beneficial to the public while they are allowed to remain unconfined, have
- (D) sentences which allow them to remain unconfined in their performing of specific jobs beneficial to the public has
- (E) sentences allowing them to remain unconfined while performing specific jobs that benefit the public has

读题

In the last few years, the number of sb..., which..., have risen dramatically.

in the last few years 决定了它所修饰的主句动词必须使用现在完成时; -ed 分词短语 given community service sentences 修饰 criminals; which 定语从句就近修饰 community service sentences.

69

必杀二步

一步:主谓一致

A B C 选项 名词短语 the number of + 复数名词,按单数概念处理,谓语动词 have 与单数主语主谓不一致。☞ 排除 A B C

二步:习惯用法

D 选项 介词 + one's doing (in their performing) 错,介词后必须直接加 doing... 或名词短语。☞ 排除 D

补选

分词短语作定语和定语从句作定语的区别

- 1> 当定语从句作定语和-ed 分词短语作定语都可以接受的情况下,根据表达简洁性原则,优先使用-ed 分词短语。
- 2> -ing 分词短语作定语强调动作的多次性 重复性和客观性,无明确时间概念;定语从句作定语强调动作的一次性,具体时间的具体行为。

A 选项 job benefiting the public 强调 job 的固有特征。

E 选项 job that benefit the public 强调 job 在具体时间下的具体行为。

正确选项 E

while performing ... 是状语从句省略的一种形式:就近修饰动词 remain,其逻辑主语等于 remain 的逻辑主语 them (即前文的 criminals)。

状语从句的省略形式

省略形式:表示转折、时间、条件的连接词 + 形容词短语 / 分词短语

错误形式:表示转折、时间、条件的连接词 + 介词短语 / 名词短语

特殊情况:whatever 和 once 可以加名词短语,表示状语从句省略。

逻辑主语:当状语从句的省略形式在句首时,其逻辑主语等于主句主语,但如果在句尾或者句中,其逻辑主语优先等于它所修饰的动词的逻辑主语。

28. Three out of every four automobile owners in the United States also own a bicycle.

- (A) Three out of every four automobile owners in the United States also own a bicycle.
- (B) Out of every four, three automobile owners in the United States also owns a bicycle.
- (C) Bicycles are owned by three out of every four owners of automobiles in the United States.
- (D) In the United States, three out of every four automobile owners owns bicycles.
- (E) Out of every four owners of automobiles in the United States, bicycles are also owned by three.

必杀二步

一步:主谓一致

B D 选项 单数谓语动词 owns 与复数主语 three automobile owners 主谓不一致。

➤ 排除 B D

二步:主动优先原则

C E 选项 bicycles are owned by 使用被动语态,并且被动语态改变原句的强调重心,原句是统计数据,强调有多少汽车拥有者拥有一辆自行车,C E 选项强调所有的自行车被谁拥有,逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 C E

正确选项 A

29. One of four babies are now born to mothers aged thirty years or more, compared with just one of six born in 1975.

- (A) of four babies are now born to mothers aged thirty years or more, compared with just one of six born
- (B) of four babies is now born to a mother whose age is thirty of older, compared to just one of six babies who were born
- (C) baby in four are now born to mothers aged thirty or older, compared to just one in six
- (D) baby in four is now born to a mother aged thirty or older, compared with just one in six
- (E) baby in four is now born to mothers aged thirty years or more, compared to just one in six

必杀二步

一步:主谓一致

A C 选项 单数主语 one of four babies/ one baby in four 与谓语动词 are 主谓不一致。

排除 A C

第二步:习惯用法

compare to 和 compare with 的区别:

compare X1 to X2 把 X1 比成 X2, X1 和 X2 是不同类事物, 强调相似性; compare X1 with X2 X1 与 X2 相比较, X1 与 X2 是同一类事物, 强调差异性。

B C E 选项 compared to 表示比成, 逻辑意思不合理。排除 B C E

补选

1> 形容词的准确使用

more 修饰数量多少, older 修饰岁数大小。

三十岁或三十岁以上可以用 aged thirty or older 表示; 三十岁和三十岁以上可以用 aged thirty and over 表示。

2> 定语从句的简化

当定语从句和分词短语作定语都可以接受的情况下, 根据简洁性原则, 优先使用分词短语作定语。

B 选项 定语从句 who were born 不简洁。

3> 用词倾向性

在标准书面语中, 表示统计数据的几分之几, 倾向于用 one (baby) in four 或者 one (baby) out of four 表达, 不倾向于使用 one of four (babies) 表达。

正确选项 D

71

30. Downzoning, zoning that typically results in the reduction of housing density, allows for more open space in areas where little water or services exist.

- (A) little water or services exist
- (B) little water or services exists
- (C) few services and little water exists
- (D) there is little water or services available
- (E) there are few services and little available water

必要二步

一步:形容词的准确使用

little 修饰不可数名词, few 修饰可数名词。

A B D 选项 little 不能修饰可数名词 services。排除 A B D

第二步:主谓一致

B 选项 X1 or X2 do, do 的单复数形式应该和 X2 保持一致, services 和 exists 主谓不一致。

C 选项 复数主语 X1 and X2 与单数谓语动词 exists 主谓不一致。排除 B C

正确选项 E

31. As the etched lines on computer memory chips have become thinner and the chips' circuits more complex, both the power of the chips and the electronic devices they drive have vastly increased.

- (A) the chips' circuits more complex, both the power of the chips and the electronic devices they drive have
- (B) the chips' circuits more complex, the power of both the chips and the electronic devices they drive has
- (C) the chips' circuits are more complex, both the power of the chips and the electronic devices they drive has
- (D) their circuits are more complex, the power of both the chips and the electronic devices they drive have
- (E) their circuits more complex, both the power of the chips and the electronic devices they drive have

读题

As sth. have become thinner and sth. more complex, both...and...have increased.

必需二步

一步:平行结构概念要对等

A C E 选项 power 是抽象名词, device 是具体名词, both the power and the devices 平行结构概念不对等。✂ 排除 A C E

二步:主谓一致

C 选项 谓语动词 has 与主语 both...and...主谓不一致。

D 选项 the power of ...have...主谓不一致。✂ 排除 C D

正确选项 B**并列句的省略**

两个句子并列,第一个句子含有 be 动词或者 become,第二个句子中的 be 动词或者 become 必须省略。

B 选项中, more complex 前省略了谓语动词 have become; chips 和 devices 都是具体名词,两者概念对等,可以构成 both the chips and the devices 的平行结构; the power of ... has...主谓一致。

32. The Federal Reserve Board's reduction of interest rates on loans to financial institutions is both an acknowledgment of past economic trends and an effort to influence their future direction.

- (A) reduction of interest rates on loans to financial institutions is both an acknowledgment of past economic trends and an effort
- (B) reduction of interest rates on loans to financial institutions is an acknowledgment both of past economic trends as well as an effort
- (C) reduction of interest rates on loans to financial institutions both acknowledge past economic trends and attempt
- (D) reducing interest rates on loans to financial institutions is an acknowledgment both of past economic trends and an effort
- (E) reducing interest rates on loans to financial institutions both acknowledge past economic trends as well as attempt

读题

The reduction of... is both an acknowledgment of ... and an effort to...

必杀三步

一步: 平行结构的习惯搭配

B E 选项 both... as well as 不符合习惯搭配, 应使用 both... and...。 ➤ 排除 B E

二步: 主谓一致

C 选项 单数主语 the reduction 与复数谓语动词 acknowledge 和 attempt 主谓不一致。

➤ 排除 C

三步: 平行结构形式要对称

D 选项 both of X1 and X2, of X1 和 X2 形式上不对称, 不能构成平行结构。 ➤ 排除 D

补选

不能改变原句的合理重心

原句动作性名词 reduction 作主语强调结果、状态。

D E 选项 -ing 形式作主语强调动作, 改变原句的强调重心。

正确选项 A

三个动作性名词 reduction, acknowledgment, effort 在逻辑上相互对应。

33. Foreign investors, because of their growing confidence in their capability for making profitable investments in the United States, have been led to move from passive involvement in commercial real estate partnerships to active development of their own increasingly ambitious projects.

73

- (A) Foreign investors, because of their growing confidence in their capability for making profitable investments in the United States, have been led
- (B) Foreign investors, growing confident about their capability for making profitable investments in the United States, has led them
- (C) Growing confidence in their ability to make profitable investments in the United States has led foreign investors
- (D) Growing confidence in their ability for making profitable investments in the United States have led foreign investors
- (E) Growing confident about their capabilities for making profitable investments in the United States, foreign investors have been led

读题

Foreign investors have been led to move from... to ...

必杀一步

一步: 习惯用法

- 1 > capability of doing / capability to do
- 2 > confidence in sth. / that 从句; confident about sth.
- 3 > sth. lead sb. to do; lead to 不能用被动语态

- A 选项 capability for doing sth. 搭配错; Foreign investors have been led to 被动语态错。
 B 选项 capability for doing sth. 搭配错, 并且 growing 是形容词, 不能修饰形容 confident。
 D 选项 ability for doing 搭配错。
 E 选项 growing 是形容词, 不能修饰形容词 confident; capability for doing sth. 搭配错; Foreign investors have been led to 被动语态错。 ➤ 排除 A B D E

补选

主谓一致

- B 选项 复数主语 foreign investors 与单数谓语动词 has done 主谓不一致。
 D 选项 Growing confidence in... have led... 主谓不一致。

正确选项 C

34. A recent national study of the public schools shows that there are now one microcomputer for every thirty-two pupils, four times as many than there were four years ago.

- (A) there are now one microcomputer for every thirty-two pupils, four times as many than there were
 (B) there is now one microcomputer for every thirty-two pupils, four times as many than there were
 (C) there is now one microcomputer for every thirty-two pupils, four times as many as there were
 (D) every thirty-two pupils now have one microcomputer, four times as many than there were
 (E) every thirty-two pupils now has one microcomputer, four times as many as

必杀二步

一步: 同级比较

A B D 选项 as many than 不符合习惯搭配, 应使用 as...as。 ➤ 排除 A B D

二步: 自然存在和主动拥有的区别

E 选项 sb. has... 强调主动拥有; 而原句用 there be... 强调自然存在。研究表明的是一个统计数据, 统计数据的描述用 there be 句型更符合逻辑。所以, E 选项错。

➤ 排除 E

补选

1> 主谓一致

there be 句型中, be 动词的形式与最靠近它的名词的单复数保持一致。

A 选项 there are 与 one microcomputer 主谓不一致。

2> 比较对象之间要有可比性

E 选项 as many as 前面是句子, 表示有多少计算机, 后面是时间短语, 两者没有可比性。

正确选项 C

不同时态的比较

不同时态的动作比较时, 必须有明显的标志表明动作发生在不同的时态下。

there is 表示现在有多少计算机, there were 表示过去有多少计算机, 比较对象形式对称。

35. Like the color-discriminating apparatus of the human eye, insects' eyes depend on recording and comparing light intensities in three regions of the electromagnetic spectrum.

- (A) insects' eyes depend on
- (B) an insect eye depends on
- (C) that of insects depend on the
- (D) that of an insect's eye depends on
- (E) that of an insect's is dependent on the

读题

Like the apparatus, insects' eyes depend on ...

必杀二步

一步: 比较对象之间要有可比性

A B 选项 the color-discriminating apparatus 与 eyes 没有可比性。 ➤ 排除 A B

二步: 平行结构

C E 选项 代入原句后使原句的平行结构 (recording and comparing...) 形式变得不对称 (the recording and comparing...)。 ➤ 排除 C E

补选

1> 主谓一致

C 选项 that 指代单数名词, 所以单数主语 that of ... 与复数谓语动词 depend 主谓不一致。

2> 名词所有格

E 选项 双重所有格 n./pron. + of + n.'s 在标准书面语中不能接受, 所以 that of an insect's 错。

正确选项 D

that 指代 the color-discriminating apparatus。

36. In the most common procedure for harvesting forage crops such as alfalfa, as much as 20 percent of the leaf and small-stem material, which is the most nutritious of all the parts of the plant, shattered and fell to the ground.

- (A) which is the most nutritious of all the parts of the plant, shattered and fell
- (B) the most nutritious of all parts of the plant, shatter and fall
- (C) the parts of the plant which were most nutritious, will shatter and fall
- (D) the most nutritious parts of the plant, shatters and falls
- (E) parts of the plant which are the most nutritious, have shattered and fallen

读题

In the most common procedure for... (介词短语), + as much as... (主语), + which 定语从句(插入语), + shattered and fell (谓语动词) ...

必杀二步

一步:时态判断

用时间标志判断:介词短语 in the most common procedure 决定主句时态应该是一般现在时。

用逻辑关系判断:which 定语从句中的时态应该与主句时态相协调。

A 选项 主句一般过去时(shattered and fell)与时间标志不协调,与定语从句时态(is)不协调。

C 选项 主句将来时(will shatter and fall)与时间标志不协调,与从句时态(were)不协调。

E 选项 主句现在完成时(have shattered and fallen)与时间标志不协调,与从句时态(are)不协调。 ✂ 排除 A C E

二步:主谓一致

作为主语的名词短语中,as much as 决定了主语为单数,核心词是物质名词 material,物质名词表示单数概念。leaf 和 small-material 两个并列的名词作定语共同修饰名词 material。

B 选项 谓语动词 shatter and fall 与单数主语主谓不一致。 ✂ 排除 B

补遗

定语从句要尽可能简化

C E 选项 定语从句 which were/are most nutritious 不简洁,可以简化为形容词 nutritious 直接修饰名词 parts。 ✂ 排除 C E

正确选项 D

同位语的单复数

同位语的单复数可以与其解释的对象不一致。

D 选项 the most nutritious parts of the plant 是复数概念,它作为名词性同位语解释说明前面的单数名词 material。

第四章

GMAT

动词形式

——时态、语态、语气和情态

1. 时态是指从动词本身所表示的时间来看，动词可以分为现在时、过去时和将来时。现在时又可以分为现在进行时和现在完成时；过去时可以分为过去进行时和过去完成时；将来时可以分为将来进行时和将来完成时。
2. 语态是指动词所表示的动作是由谁发出的，可以分为主动语态和被动语态。主动语态表示动作由主语发出，被动语态表示动作由宾语发出。
3. 语气是指动词所表示的动作是肯定的还是否定的，可以分为肯定语气和否定语气。肯定语气又可以分为肯定语气和否定语气；否定语气又可以分为肯定语气和否定语气。
4. 情态是指动词所表示的动作是可能的还是不可能的，可以分为可能语气和不可能语气。可能语气又可以分为可能语气和不可能语气；不可能语气又可以分为可能语气和不可能语气。

第一节 时态

在英语中,动作和状态发生的不同时间和不同方式要用动词的不同形式来表达,这些动词相应的不同形式称为时态。

一、常用时态及时态顺序

动词的时态从时间上可分为现在时、过去时、将来时和过去将来时;从方式上可分为一般式、进行式、完成式和完成进行式。时间与方式交叉可构成 16 种时态。其中 GMAT 常考的有:一般现在时、一般将来时、一般过去时、现在进行时、现在完成时、过去完成时和过去进行时。如果按照时间的自然逻辑顺序“过去——现在——将来”排列的话,那么这 7 个时态的顺序为:过去完成时——一般过去时——过去进行时——现在完成时——一般现在时——现在进行时——一般将来时。

二、时态判断的方法

1. 利用动作之间的逻辑关系判断。如:动作的先后关系。...expect that...中,that 从句的谓语动词发生在 expect 之后,必须使用一般将来时。

2. 利用时间关系判断。如:明显的时间标志 in the past 5 years 标志着所修饰的动词必须使用现在完成时;after the civil war, in 1933, two years/days/weeks ago, last year, from 1985 to 1989 标志着所修饰的动词必须使用一般过去时。

3. 利用某个形容词、副词判断。如:originally 标志着所修饰的动词必须使用一般过去时;the most common reasons, the common procedure 中的 common 标志着谓语动词必须使用一般现在时。

4. 利用未划线部分的暗示判断。

三、时态的改变

不能无根据地改变原句的时态,时态的改变一定要有逻辑理由或时间线索。

四、不同时态的并列

在有充分的逻辑理由或时间线索的情况下,不同时态的动词可以并列。

五、时态的呼应

1. 时态呼应是指从句中谓语动词的时态与主句中谓语动词的时态相照应,从而取得逻辑上的协调,主要应用于宾语从句、主语从句和表语从句中。

2. 主句的谓语动词为现在时或将来时,从句的谓语动词可以根据逻辑含义选用任何时态。

3. 主句的谓语动词为过去时,从句的谓语动词用过去的某种时态。

4. 主从句时态可以不一致,但必须有合理的理由。

1) 当从句表示客观事实或真理、习惯性的或反复出现的动作时,其时态不受主句谓语的影响,必须用一般现在时。

- 2) 带定语或状语的主从复合句的谓语动词一般不受时态呼应原则的限制,从句的谓语动词可以根据本身的意义选用所需时态。

六、完成时态的判断

1. 过去完成时

寻找过去时间标志或者过去行为,通过逻辑关系判断动作发生在过去某一时间之前或过去某一动作之前,即“过去的过去”。

2. 现在完成时

- 1) 据时间标志词判定使用现在完成时: since + 句子; since + 名词短语; since + 时间; since 作副词用; since then; within/during/over/in + the past/last/recent + 时间短语。
- 2) 依据前后文逻辑关系或主从句时态的协调判定使用现在完成时。
- 3) 现在完成时强调“迄今为止”(到说话者说该句话为止)。

七、一般现在时

表述反复发生的动作及人或事物的一般特征(不指特定的时间)、客观事实/存在、科学事实、地理位置、统计数据、研究结论、商业惯例、法律规定或合同约定等用一般现在时。

八、将来时

1. 条件从句、时间从句、方式从句、让步从句不能用一般将来时或过去将来时,常用一般现在时替代一般将来时,一般过去时替代过去将来时。
2. possibility that.../likelihood that...中, that 从句后用一般将来时。
3. 标准书面语中,优先使用一般将来时,主观将来时常用 be supposed to do 表达,较少用 be going to do,不使用 be to be doing, be to be done。
4. 依据时间标志词判定使用一般将来时。如: during the next 50 years, in the future。
5. 依据前后文逻辑关系判定使用一般将来时或过去将来时。

79

第二节 语态

一、语态的类型

英语动词有两种语态:主动语态,表示被说明的名词或代词是动作的执行者或状态的主体;被动语态,表示被说明的名词或代词是动作的承受者。

二、被动语态的构成

助动词 be + 过去分词,时态通过 be 动词的各种形式来体现。在英语中被动语态只有 10 种形式。现以 ask 为例,列表如下:

	一般式	进行式	完成式	完成进行式
现在时	am is asked are	am is being asked are	have been asked has	- - - -
过去时	was asked were	was being asked were	had been asked	- - - -
将来时	shall be asked will	- - - -	shall have been asked will	- - - -
过去将来时	should be asked would	- - - -	should have been asked would	- - - -

三、语态的选择

1. 最高原则:逻辑关系的合理性。

例如: Early soap operas moved to the daytime hours in the 1930's. 句中的 moved 应改为 were moved。

2. 主动优先原则: 有动作执行者时或主动语态与被动语态都可以接受时, 一般优先使用主动语态。

3. 使用主动语态的句子与使用被动语态的句子, 各自的重心不一样。例如:

films depict sth. as sth. 与 sth. be depicted as sth. in the films 侧重点(句子重心)不同。

4. 使用被动语态时, 动词执行者一般用 by 表示, 不能使用 according to...。

四、一般不用被动语态的动词或动词短语

lead; cause; enable; become; receive; visit; lack; enter; cost; possess; resemble; last; like; enjoy; notice; watch; look at; listen to; pay attention to; suit; fit; contain; so as to do; be able to do; be likely to do

五、主动形式表示被动含义

read like...; read well; prove helpful; sell well, 但 sth. be sold for + 价格;
be the most difficult to do; too + adj. + to do; be worth doing; require doing

六、既可用主动语态也可以用被动语态的动词

change; close; determine; end; finish; head; interest; issue; open; train
sth. be aimed at doing sth. sb. aim to do sth.
sth. be intended to do sth. sb. intend to do sth.
sth. be targeted at sth. sb. target sth.

第三节 语气

一、语气分类

英语中,谓语动词有三种语气:

1. 陈述语气:表述事实(某种情况是事实或不是事实,或提出询问,或是表示某种强烈的情绪)。

2. 祈使语气:表示愿望(要求、命令、劝告或建议等)。

3. 虚拟语气:表示假想(某种情况不肯定或与事实相反的假想情况以及主观态度)。

GMAT 语法考试只考陈述语气和虚拟语气。

二、虚拟语气的表达

1. if 条件从句的谓语动词用虚拟语气,主句谓语动词也要用虚拟语气。

1) 表示与现在的事实相反:从句的谓语动词用过去时(be 一律用 were),主句用 should (第一人称)/would (第二、三人称)/could/might + 动词原形。

2) 表示与过去的事实相反:从句的谓语动词用 had + 过去分词,主句用 should (第一人称)/would (第二、三人称)/could/might + have + 过去分词。

3) 表示与将来的事实相反:从句的谓语动词用 should + 动词原形,主句用 should (第一人称)/would (第二、三人称)/could/might + 动词原形。

81

2. without + 名词/代词,可表达虚拟条件。

3. should 条件从句用原形动词表达虚拟语气,但主句谓语动词不用虚拟语气形式。

三、后置主语从句中的虚拟语气

it is + adj. + that 结构中,that 从句用动词原形表示虚拟语气,这样的形容词有:

important / natural / essential / imperative / necessary / vital / advisable / obligatory / best / incredible / ironic / preferable / appropriate

四、宾语从句中的虚拟语气

1. 下列动词后的宾语从句使用动词原形表示虚拟语气(美国标准书面语中必须省略动词原形前的 should):

1) 表建议:advocate/advise/move/recommend that... do...; sb. suggest/propose that... do...

2) 表命令:order/decreed/mandate/command/demand that... do...

3) 表要求:request/require/insist that... do...; sth. require of sb. that... do...

2. 下列动词后的宾语从句不用虚拟语气:

allow that...; rule that...; sth. propose that...; sth. suggest that...

五、语气的强弱

所选答案要保持原句语气的强弱，不能随意改变。例如：

only if 和 if 不能替换；however much 和 however 不能替换；should 和 if 不能替换；

be not unlike 和 be like 不能替换；if 和 on condition that 不能替换；确 any + n. 和 n. 不能替换；just like 和 like 不能替换。

第四节 情态

从功能上分，动词分助动词和主动词。从词类上分，动词分为词汇动词、情态动词和基本动词 (be, have, do) 三种。词汇动词总是作主动词，情态动词总是作助动词，基本动词既可作助动词又可作主动词。

一、情态动词的功能

情态动词 (can / could, may / might, shall / should, will / would, must, need, ought to) 用来帮助主动词构成复合谓语，即情态动词 + 主动词 = 复合谓语。情态动词本身能够表示说话者对所述动作或状态的态度或看法。

1. 多数情态动词都有“推测性”和“非推测性”用法。must 表示推测时没有否定结构，其他表示推测意义的情态动词均有否定结构。

情态动词	非推测性用法	推测性用法
can / could	表示“能力”、“许可”	表示“可能”
may / might	表示“许可”	表示“可能”
will / would	表示“意志、意愿”	表示“推测”
should / ought to	表示“义务、必须”	表示“必然”
must	表示“义务、必须”	表示“必然”

2. 情态动词 + 动词的完成时态表示推测。

3. would, should, could 和 might 可用在非真实条件句中表示假想的可能，以至非事实。

4. 口语中，would, could, will 和 can 表示“请求”意义，常用于疑问句，委婉口气依次减弱，其中 would 程度最高，而 can 则直截了当。书面语中较少使用。GMAT 考试不考这一内容，只考 can 和 could 在时态上的区别。

5. must, need, ought to 和 should, 表示“必然”意义，依次从强到弱。其中 need 可作实义动词使用。

6. shall / should / will 可以表示“纯粹未来”。

7. may 可以表示“让步”意义，常见于 whatever 为主语的让步从句中，文体较正式。

二、情态动词可能程度的强弱顺序

强 —————→ 弱

must (= will have to) would should can could (can 的过去式) may might

除了 may 和 might 可以替换外，情态动词都不能相互替换。

三、“能力”与“可能性”的区别

根据生活事理或上下文逻辑关系判定用“能力”还是“可能性”。

1. can / could 与 cannot / could not 强调“可能性”。
2. be able to / be unable to 强调“能力”，表示特定的过去、现在或未来的能力，或经过某种努力而成功地获得的能力。
3. will be able to ... 表示将来“能力”或将来“可能性”。

四、情态动词的省略或添加

1. 原句有情态动词时，一般不省略。
2. 当使用情态动词导致前后文语义重复时，情态动词必须省去。例如：the possibility that ... might do ... 应改为 the possibility that ... do ...。
3. 情态动词不能随意改变或添加。改变或添加的前提条件是上下文逻辑关系有绝对要求。

五、so that 从句中的情态动词

so that 状语从句中，出现情态动词，表示目的；没有出现情态动词，表示结果。

练习题及其详解

83

1. Even though the direct costs of malpractice disputes amounts to a sum lower than one percent of the \$ 541 billion the nation spent on health care last year, doctors say fear of lawsuits plays a major role in health-care inflation.

- (A) amounts to a sum lower
- (B) amounts to less
- (C) amounted to less
- (D) amounted to lower
- (E) amounted to a lower sum

必需二步

一步：时态判断

明显的时间标志 last year 决定了状语从句必须使用一般过去时。

A B 选项 状语从句为一般现在时，并且单数谓语动词 amounts 与复数主语 costs 主谓不一致。排除 A B

二步：形容词的准确使用

数量的多于和少于分别用 more than 和 less than 表达。

A D E 选项 用 lower than one percent 表示少于 1%，不符合习惯用法。排除 A D E

正确选项 C

2. It is possible that Native Americans originally have migrated to the Western Hemisphere over a bridge of land that once existed between Siberia and Alaska.

- (A) have migrated to the Western Hemisphere over a bridge of land that once existed
- (B) were migrating to the Western Hemisphere over a bridge of land that existed once
- (C) migrated over a bridge of land to the Western Hemisphere that once existed
- (D) migrated to the Western Hemisphere over a bridge of land that once existed
- (E) were migrating to the Western Hemisphere over a bridge of land existing once

读题

It is possible that sb. have migrated to sp over a bridge that once existed.

必杀二步

一步:时态判断

时间标志 originally 决定了它所修饰的动词必须使用一般过去时。 ➤ 排除 A B E

二步:修饰对象的合理性

C选项 定语从句 that once existed between Siberia and Alaska 就近修饰名词 Western Hemisphere, 逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 C

正确选项 D

3. A 1972 agreement between Canada and the United States reduced the amount of phosphates that municipalities had been allowed to dump into the Great Lakes.

- (A) reduced the amount of phosphates that municipalities had been allowed to dump
- (B) reduced the phosphate amount that municipalities had been dumping
- (C) reduces the phosphate amount municipalities have been allowed to dump
- (D) reduced the amount of phosphates that municipalities are allowed to dump
- (E) reduces the amount of phosphates allowed for dumping by municipalities

读题

A 1972 agreement between ... reduced the amount of phosphates that...

必杀二步

一步:时态判断

时间标志 1972 决定了谓语动词 reduce 必须使用一般过去时。 ➤ 排除 C E

D选项 定语从句的一般现在时 are allowed to... 与主句的一般过去时 reduced sth., 时态不协调。 ➤ 排除 D

二步:逻辑搭配的合理性

B C选项 定语从句就近修饰名词 amount, Municipalities had/have been dumping amount to the Great Lakes. 动作 dump 和动作对象 amount, 逻辑搭配不合理。

➤ 排除 B C

正确选项 A

4. Today, because of improvements in agricultural technology, the same amount of acreage produces double the apples that it has in 1910.

- (A) double the apples that it has
- (B) twice as many apples as it did

- (C) as much as twice the apples it has
(D) two times as many apples as there were
(E) a doubling of the apples that it did

必杀三步**一步:时态判断**

A C 选项 时间标志 in 1910 标志着 it has 时态错误, 应使用一般过去时。 ➤ 排除 A C

二步:逻辑意思的合理性

D 选项 there were 表示 1910 年所有的苹果, 今天一块土地上生产的苹果数量两倍于 1910 年全部的苹果数量, 逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 D

三步:永远错误的形式

A 选项 produce double... 永远错。

C 选项 as much as twice the apples(复数名词) 永远错。

E 选项 a doubling of/ produce a doubling of 永远错。 ➤ 排除 A C E

补遗**用词倾向性**

GMAT 考试中, 表示数量增加到两倍, 倾向于使用 twice as many/much as 或 sth. double sth. 这样的表达方法。

正确选项 B

85

5. Native American burial sites dating back 5,000 years indicate that the residents of Maine at that time were part of a widespread culture of Algonquian-speaking people.

- (A) were part of a widespread culture of Algonquian-speaking people
(B) had been part of a widespread culture of people who were Algonquian-speaking
(C) were people who were part of a widespread culture that was Algonquian-speaking
(D) had been people who were part of a widespread culture that was Algonquian-speaking
(E) were a people which had been part of a widespread, Algonquian-speaking culture

读题

...sites... indicate that residents were part of ...

必杀二步**一步:时态判断**

未划线的部分 at that time 指前文提到的 5,000 years ago, 标志着宾语从句应该使用一般过去式。 ➤ 排除 B D

二步:不能改变原句的合理意思

原句意思:居民是文化的一部分。

C 选项 意思改为:居民是人。

E 选项 意思改为:居民是民族。 ➤ 排除 C E

补选

修饰对象的合理性

C D 选项 定语从句 that was Algonquian-speaking 就近修饰 culture, 逻辑意思不合理。

E 选项 形容词短语 Algonquian-speaking 修饰 culture, 逻辑意思不合理。

正确选项 A

6. After the Civil War, contemporaries of Harriet Tubman's maintained that she has all of the qualities of a great leader: coolness in the face of danger, an excellent sense of strategy, and an ability to plan in minute detail.

- (A) Tubman's maintained that she has
- (B) Tubman's maintain that she had
- (C) Tubman's have maintained that she had
- (D) Tubman maintained that she had
- (E) Tubman had maintained that she has

必杀二步

一步: 时态判断

after the Civil War 决定了它所修饰的动词必须使用一般过去时。

B 选项一般现在时, C 选项现在完成时, E 选项过去完成时, 时态都不正确。

排除 B C E

二步: 名词所有格

在标准书面语中不倾向于使用双重所有格形式。

A 选项 双重所有格 contemporaries of Harriet Tubman's 不符合标准书面语的表达。

排除 A

正确选项 D

7. From 1982 to 1987 sales of new small boats increased between five and ten percent annually.

- (A) From 1982 to 1987 sales of new small boats increased between five and ten percent annually.
- (B) Five to ten percent is the annual increase in sales of new small boats in the years 1982 to 1987.
- (C) Sales of new small boats have increased annually five and ten percent in the years 1982 to 1987.
- (D) Annually an increase of five to ten percent has occurred between 1982 and 1987 in the sales of new small boats.
- (E) Occurring from 1982 to 1987 was an annual increase of five and ten percent in the sales of new small boats.

必杀二步

一步: 时态判断

from 1982 to 1987 标志着必须使用一般过去时。

B 选项一般现在时, C 选项现在完成时, D 选项现在完成时, 时态都不正确。

排除 B C D

第二步: 不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

原句表达的重心在于 Sales of sth. increased。

B 选项 意思重心转移: Five to ten percent is the annual increase。

D 选项 随意添加了实义动词 occur, 重心转移到 An increase has occurred。

E 选项 occurring 随意添加, Occurring was an increase 改变原句的重心。

排除 B D E

正确选项 A

8. Since 1970 the number of Blacks elected to state and federal offices in the United States has multiplied nearly four times.

(A) has multiplied nearly four times

(B) has almost quadrupled

(C) has almost multiplied by four

(D) is almost four times as great

(E) is nearly fourfold what it was

此题二步

一步: 时态判断

“since + 时间”标志着用现在完成时。排除 D E

第二步: 简洁性原则

A C 选项 multiplied four times / multiplied by four 表达不简洁, 直接用一词 quadrupled 就可以表达增加到四倍的概念。排除 A C

正确选项 B

9. Since 1986, when the Department of Labor began to allow investment officers' fees to be based on how the funds they manage perform, several corporations began paying their investment advisers a small basic fee, with a contract promising higher fees if the managers perform well.

(A) investment officers' fees to be based on how the funds they manage perform, several corporations began

(B) investment officers' fees to be based on the performance of the funds they manage, several corporations began

(C) that fees of investment officers be based on how the funds they manage perform, several corporations have begun

(D) fees of investment officers to be based on the performance of the funds they manage, several corporations have begun

(E) that investment officers' fees be based on the performance of the funds they manage, several corporations began

读题

Since 1986, when... , 主句.

必杀二步

一步:时态判断

时间标志 since 1986 表明主句必须使用现在完成时。

A B E 选项 主句 several corporations began doing 使用一般过去时, 错。

排除 A B E

二步:虚拟语气

allow sb. to do, allow 表示允许; allow + that 从句, allow 表示承认, that 从句不使用动词原形表示虚拟语气。

C 选项 allow 后的 that 从句使用动词原形 be based on 表示虚拟语气, 错。 排除 C

正确选项 D

10. Founded in 1983, the magazine increased its circulation more than double since then, and its advertising.

- (A) increased its circulation more than double since then,
- (B) has since increased its circulation more than double,
- (C) has since more than doubled its circulation,
- (D) since then more than doubled its circulation,
- (E) more than doubled its circulation since then,

必杀二步

一步:时态判断

明显的时间标志 since then 决定了它所修饰的动词必须使用现在完成时。

A D E 选项 使用一般过去时, 错。 排除 A D E

二步:避免意思重复

A B 选项 double 包含了增加的意思, 所以谓语动词 increase 与 double 意思重复。

排除 A B

正确选项 C

11. As measured by the Commerce Department, corporate profits peaked in the fourth quarter of 1988 and have slipped since then, as many companies have been unable to pass on higher costs.

- (A) and have slipped since then, as many companies have been unable to pass on higher costs
- (B) and have slipped since then, the reason being because many companies have been unable to pass on higher costs
- (C) and slipped since then, many companies being unable to pass on higher costs
- (D) but, many companies unable to pass on higher costs, they have slipped since then
- (E) yet are slipping since then, because many companies were unable to pass on higher

costs

读题

As measured by..., corporate profits peaked in...and have slipped since then, as...

必杀三步

一步:时态判断

in the fourth quarter of 1988 这一过去时间概念决定了它所修饰的动词必须使用一般过去时; since then 决定了它所修饰的动词必须使用现在完成时。所以, 本句使用不同时态的动词并列: peaked and have slipped。

C 选项 since then 决定了 slip 必须使用现在完成时, 而不是一般过去时。

E 选项 现在进行时 are slipping 时态错, 并且原因状语从句的一般过去时 many companies were ... 与解释对象的现在进行时不协调。 ➤ 排除 C E

二步:代词指代

代词的指代对象不能引起争议。

D 选项 复数代词 they 可能指代 corporate profits, 也可能指代 companies, 代词指代引起争议; 而且连词 but 后的逗号位置错, 应放在它的前面。 ➤ 排除 D

三步:简洁性原则

B 选项 用 the reason being because 引导原因状语从句, 表达累赘, 永远错。 ➤ 排除 B

正确选项 A

12. The distinctive hereditary tartans that are alleged to be worn since antiquity by members of the Highland clans were in fact designed by Scottish woolen manufacturers in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries.

- (A) that are alleged to be worn
- (B) alleged to have been worn
- (C) that are worn, it was alleged
- (D) alleged as having been worn
- (E) that are worn, allegedly

读题

The tartans were designed by sb. in...centuries.

主谓语之间的部分都作定语修饰主语 tartans。

必杀二步

一步:时态判断

明显的时间标志 since antiquity 决定了它所修饰的动词 be worn 必须使用现在完成时态。

A C E 选项 be worn 都没有使用现在完成时态。 ➤ 排除 A C E

二步:习惯用法

正确表达: be alleged to do

D 选项 be alleged as doing 搭配错。 ➤ 排除 D

正确选项 B

13. The evolution of the technology of microelectronics over the past decade has been so rapid that it is sometimes called a revolution.

- (A) has been so rapid that it is sometimes
- (B) has been rapid enough sometimes to be
- (C) has been rapid enough it is sometimes
- (D) is so rapid it has sometimes been
- (E) is so rapid that it is sometimes

必杀二步

一步:时态判断

现在完成时的时间标志: within/during/over/in + the past/last/recent + 时间短语。

原句中 over the past decade 决定了谓语动词必须使用现在完成时。 ➤ 排除 D E

二步:习惯用法

enough to, so/such...that..., so/such...as to... 三者都表示结果,区别在于:

enough to, 是一种主观心理标准满足,在标准书面语中很少使用; so/such...that..., 可以用在单一主谓结构中,也可以用在复杂主谓结构中,不用考虑逻辑主语问题; so/such...as to..., 用于单一主谓结构中,逻辑主语等于句子主语,即句子主语可以执行 as to 后动词所表达的动作。

B C 选项 在标准书面语中不倾向于使用 enough; 并且 B 选项 sometimes 的修饰对象混淆不清,可能向前修饰 has been rapid,也可能向后修饰 to be called; C 选项 enough 不能用作连词连接句子 it is called a revolution。 ➤ 排除 B C

正确选项 A

14. Although the Supreme Court ruled as long ago as 1880 that Blacks could not be excluded outright from jury service, nearly a century of case-by-case adjudication has been necessary to develop and enforce the principle that all juries must be drawn from "a fair cross section of the community."

- (A) has been necessary to develop and enforce the principle that all juries must be
- (B) was necessary for developing and enforcing the principle of all juries being
- (C) was to be necessary in developing and enforcing the principle of all juries to be
- (D) is necessary to develop and enforce the principle that all juries must be
- (E) will be necessary for developing and enforcing the principle of all juries being

必杀二步

一步:习惯用法

necessary 的习惯用法: be necessary to do...。

B E 选项 be necessary for doing 永远错。

C 选项 be necessary in doing 永远错。 ➤ 排除 B C E

二步:时态判断

从句中 as long ago as 1880 表示过去某个时间,主句主语中 a century of... 表示持续时间,所以主句用现在完成时比一般现在时(D 选项)、一般过去时(BC 选项)或一般将来时(E 选项)更符合上下文逻辑关系。 ➤ 排除 D, 进一步排除 B C E

补选

整体意思和所属关系的区别

A D 选项 “抽象名词 (the principle) + that 从句” 是具体化同位结构, that 从句对 principle 具体化, 表示原则的具体内容, 强调整体意思。

B C E 选项 the principle of 强调所属关系, 表示谁的原则, 改变了原句的合理意思和重心。

排除 B C E

正确选项 A

15. *Bufo marinus* toads, fierce predators that will eat frogs, lizards, and even small birds, are native to South America but were introduced into Florida during the 1930's in an attempt to control pests in the state's vast sugarcane fields.

- (A) are native to South America but were introduced into Florida during the 1930's in an attempt to control
- (B) are native in South America but were introduced into Florida during the 1930's as attempts to control
- (C) are natives of South America but were introduced into Florida during the 1930's in an attempt at controlling
- (D) had been native to South America but were introduced to Florida during the 1930's as an attempt at controlling
- (E) had been natives of South America but were introduced to Florida during the 1930's as attempts at controlling

91

必杀二步

一步: 习惯用法

土生土长于某地: be native to ...

B 选项 be native in ... 不符合习惯用法。

C E 选项 be native of ... 不符合习惯用法。排除 B C E

二步: 时态判断

D E 选项 had been 为过去完成时, 意味着在把 *Bufo marinus* toads 引进到 Florida 以前, 它们土生土长于 South America, 不符合科学事实。排除 D E

正确选项 A

不同时态的并列

but 前后两个动词时态不一致, are native to South America 一般现在时, 表示永远的事实;

were introduced into Florida 一般过去时, 表示过去某一时间的具体行为。

16. If the new airboat does what it is to be doing—travel at high speeds undeterred by sandbars, crocodile-infested mudflats, or marshy hippo haunts—it could revolutionize transport on the 2,900-mile-long Congo River.

- (A) If the new airboat does what it is to be doing
- (B) If the new airboat does what it is supposed to do

- (C) If it does as the new airboat is supposed to do
 (D) Doing what it is the new airboat is supposed to do
 (E) Doing what the new airboat is to be doing

读题

If the new airboat does + what 宾语从句, it could....

破折号之间是插入语, 举例说明 what 从句的内容。

必杀二步

一步: 时态判断

标准书面语中不倾向使用主观将来时。

A E 选项 is to be doing 表示主观将来时, 标准书面语强调客观性, 不倾向于使用主观将来时, 一般用 be supposed to do 或者一般将来时进行替换。 ➤ 排除 A E

二步: 代词指代

C 选项 as the new airboat is supposed to do 是状语从句, 从逻辑意思上分析, it 不可能指代 the new airboat, 代词没有指代对象。

D 选项 what 宾语从句中, it 逻辑上不能指代 the new airboat, 而且 it is 多余, 必须省略。

➤ 排除 C D

正确选项 B

92

17. A patient accusing a doctor of malpractice will find it difficult to prove damage if there is a lack of some other doctor to testify about proper medical procedures.

- (A) if there is a lack of some other doctor to testify
 (B) unless there will be another doctor to testify
 (C) without another doctor's testimony
 (D) should there be no testimony from some other doctor
 (E) lacking another doctor to testify

必杀三步

一步: 习惯搭配

A D 选项 some other + 单数名词, 永远错, 应该改为 some other doctors。

➤ 排除 A D

二步: 条件从句不用将来时态

B 选项 unless 条件从句使用将来时态 will be, 永远错。 ➤ 排除 B

三步: 逻辑意思的合理性

E 选项 lacking 直接跟在名词 damage 后, 优先作定语修饰 damage, 逻辑意思不合理。

➤ 排除 E

正确选项 C

18. Several senior officials spoke to the press on condition that they not be named in the story.

- (A) that they not be named

- (B) that their names will not be used
- (C) that their names are not used
- (D) of not being named
- (E) they will not be named

秒杀二步

一步:习惯用法

条件从句的一个习惯搭配: on condition that...。 ➤ 排除 D E

二步:时态判断

B 选项 条件从句不能使用将来时态, will not be used 错。

C 选项 条件从句的一般现在时(are not named)与主句的一般过去时(spoke)不协调, 错。

➤ 排除 B C

正确选项 A

条件从句 on condition that... 可以用原形动词表虚拟语气, 也可以根据需要使用一般现在时或一般过去时。

19. If the proposed expenditures for gathering information abroad are reduced even further, international news reports have been and will continue to diminish in number and quality.

- (A) have been and will continue to diminish
- (B) have and will continue to diminish
- (C) will continue to diminish, as they already did,
- (D) will continue to diminish, as they have already,
- (E) will continue to diminish

93

读题

if sth. are reduced, 主句。

秒杀二步

一步:时态判断

条件从句使用一般现在时, 主句必须使用一般现在时或者一般将来时。

A B 选项 主句使用现在完成时和一般将来时并列, 错。 ➤ 排除 A B

二步:避免意思重复

C D 选项 continue 已经表示 diminish 这个动作在过去发生并将持续到将来, 所以比较从句 as they did/ as they have 与 continue 意思重复, 必须省略。 ➤ 排除 C D

正确选项 E

20. A study commissioned by the Department of Agriculture showed that if calves exercise and associated with other calves, they will require less medication and gain weight quicker than do those raised in confinement.

- (A) associated with other calves, they will require less medication and gain weight quicker than do

- (B) associated with other calves, they require less medication and gain weight quicker than
- (C) associate with other calves, they required less medication and will gain weight quicker than do
- (D) associate with other calves, they have required less medication and will gain weight more quickly than do
- (E) associate with other calves, they require less medication and gain weight more quickly than

读题

a study... showed that if sth. do and did, they will do and do
-ed 分词短语 commissioned by... 作定语修饰主语 a study。

必杀一步

一步: 时态协调

1 > 两个动词(exercise 和 associate)并列, 时态应该保持一致, 除非有合理理由, 如时间标志或动词间逻辑关系, 保证时态的不一致可以接受。

A B 选项 exercise 和 associated 时态不一致, 且没有合理的理由。 ➤ 排除 A B

2 > 主从句时态的协调

在 show 的宾语从句中, if 条件句使用一般现在时, 主句必须使用一般现在时或者一般将来时与之协调。

C 选项 宾语从句中主句使用一般过去时(they required...), 错。

D 选项 宾语从句中主句使用现在完成时(they have required...), 错。 ➤ 排除 C D

补遗

形容词和副词的区别

A B C 三个选项中, 形容词 quick 的比较级形式放在 gain weight 后面, 不能作状语修饰 gain, 只有介词短语、状语从句和副词才能修饰动词。

正确选项 E

比较从句中的省略

比较从句中没有添加 do 代替重复的动词, 是因为主句中出现两个并列的谓语动词 require 和 gain, 为了避免引起争议, 省略了 do。

21. A wildlife expert predicts that the reintroduction of the caribou into northern Minnesota would fail if the density of the timber wolf population in that region is more numerous than one wolf for every 39 square miles.

- (A) would fail if the density of the timber wolf population in that region is more numerous than
- (B) would fail provided the density of the timber wolf population in that region is more than
- (C) should fail if the timber wolf density in that region was greater than
- (D) will fail if the density of the timber wolf population in that region is greater than

(E) will fail if the timber wolf density in that region were more numerous than

必杀二步

一步:时态的判断

主句谓语动词 predict 使用一般现在时, predict 后面的宾语从句必须使用一般将来时。

排除 A B C

二步:虚拟语气的判断

A B 选项 在宾语从句中,主句使用虚拟语气 would do,条件从句没有使用虚拟语气与之对应。

E 选项 宾语从句中,if 条件句使用虚拟语气,主句没有使用虚拟语气与之对应。

排除 A B E

补选

形容词的准确使用

密度 density 的大小应该用形容词 great 来表达。

A E 选项 使用 numerous 形容 density,意思不合理。

正确选项 D

sb. predicts that X1 will fail if X2 is... 三个动词 predicts, will fail, is 在时态上协调。

22. The bank holds \$ 3 billion in loans that are seriously delinquent or in such trouble that they do not expect payments when due.

(A) they do not expect payments when

(B) it does not expect payments when it is

(C) it does not expect payments to be made when they are

(D) payments are not to be expected to be paid when

(E) payments are not expected to be paid when they will be

必杀二步

一步:代词指代

A 选项 复数代词 they 不能指代单数名词 the bank,只能指代 \$ 3 billion in loans, \$ 3 billion do not expect payments 逻辑意思不合理。

B 选项 第二个单数代词 it 指代 the bank, bank is due 逻辑意思不合理。排除 A B

二步:时态判断

D 选项 are not to be expected 表示将来时态,原句为一般现在时,没有合理的理由保证这种对原句时态的随意改变可以接受,也没有理由证明将来时态更符合上下文逻辑关系。

E 选项 such trouble that payment are not expected... 中的 that 从句为一般现在时,其状语 when 从句使用一般将来时(when they will be)。而语法上,条件从句和 when 时间状语从句不能使用将来时态。排除 D E

补选

1> 逻辑主语的判断

A 选项 when due 是状语从句的省略形式,放在句尾可能修饰主句,逻辑主语等于主句的

主语,也可能就近修饰一个动词,逻辑主语等于被修饰的动词的逻辑主语。无论修饰动词 hold 还是 expect,逻辑主语都等于 the bank, the bank is due 逻辑意思不合理。

2> 主动优先原则

在主动语态和被动语态都可以接受的情况下,优先使用主动语态。

D E 选项 被动语态 payments are not...expected to be paid,没有表达出动作 expect 的执行者,改变原句主动语态的强调重心。

正确选项 C

23. What was as remarkable as the development of the compact disc has been the use of the new technology to revitalize, in better sound than was ever before possible, some of the classic recorded performances of the pre-LP era.

- (A) What was as remarkable as the development of the compact disc
- (B) The thing that was as remarkable as developing the compact disc
- (C) No less remarkable than the development of the compact disc
- (D) Developing the compact disc has been none the less remarkable than
- (E) Development of the compact disc has been no less remarkable as

必杀二步

一步:时态协调

A B 选项 主语从句中使用一般过去时(was),主句使用现在完成时(has been),主从句时态不协调,且没有合理的理由。 ➤ 排除 A B

二步:习惯用法

D 选项 none the less...than 永远错。

E 选项 no less...as 永远错。 ➤ 排除 D E

补选

简洁性原则

B 选项 the thing that 就等于 what, the thing that 用词不简洁。

比较对象形式要对称

B D 选项 developing the compact disc 是-ing 分词短语, the use of new technology 是名词短语,比较对象形式不对称,无可比性。

正确选项 C

比较结构和全倒装结构

名词短语 the development of sth. 与名词短语 the use of sth. 比较,比较对象形式对称。

比较结构中的习惯搭配: no less...than, 与...一样。

全倒装结构: no less + adj. + than X1 + be + X2(主语) + 主语的修饰语。

24. If Dr. Wade was right, any apparent connection of the eating of highly processed foods and excelling at sports is purely coincidental.

- (A) If Dr. Wade was right, any apparent connection of the eating of
- (B) Should Dr. Wade be right, any apparent connection of eating

- (C) If Dr. Wade is right, any connection that is apparent between eating of
 (D) If Dr. Wade is right, any apparent connection between eating
 (E) Should Dr. Wade have been right, any connection apparent between eating

必杀二步**一步:习惯用法**

A B 选项 connection between X1 and X2 正确, connection of X1 and X2 永远错。

C 选项 eating sth. 正确, eating of sth. 永远错。 ➤ 排除 A B C

二步:主从句时态的协调

A B E 三个选项 主句时态与条件从句的时态不一致,且没有合理的理由保证这种不一致可以接受(如时间短语或逻辑关系)。 ➤ 排除 A B E

补选**1> 形容词的位置**

单个形容词一般放在被修饰对象的前面。

E 选项 any connection apparent, apparent 放在名词 connection 后面,形容词位置错误。

2> 定语从句要尽可能简化

C 选项 connection that is apparent 定语从句不简洁,可以简化为 apparent connection。

正确选项 D

25. In reference to the current hostility toward smoking, smokers frequently expressed anxiety that their prospects for being hired and promoted are being stunted by their habit.

97

- (A) In reference to the current hostility toward smoking, smokers frequently expressed anxiety that
 (B) Referring to the current hostility toward smoking, smokers frequently expressed anxiety about
 (C) When referring to the current hostility toward smoking, smokers frequently express anxiety about
 (D) With reference to the current hostility toward smoking, smokers frequently expressed anxiety about
 (E) Referring to the current hostility toward smoking, smokers frequently express anxiety that

读题

in reference to sth., sb. expressed anxiety that...

必杀二步**一步:时态判断**

A B D 选项 current hostility 以及 anxiety 的具体内容 their prospects are being stunted 都表明,主句谓语动词使用一般过去时不合理。 ➤ 排除 A B D

二步:介词后面不能加句子

B C D 选项 anxiety about + 完整主谓结构, about 是介词,后面只能加上名词或-ing 形式

或名词性从句。 \Rightarrow 排除 B C D

正确选项 E

anxiety + that 从句, that 从句是具体化同位结构, 补充说明 anxiety 的具体内容。

26. Some buildings that were destroyed and heavily damaged in the earthquake last year were constructed in violation of the city's building code.

- (A) Some buildings that were destroyed and heavily damaged in the earthquake last year were
- (B) Some buildings that were destroyed or heavily damaged in the earthquake last year had been
- (C) Some buildings that the earthquake destroyed and heavily damaged last year have been
- (D) Last year the earthquake destroyed or heavily damaged some buildings that have been
- (E) Last year some of the buildings that were destroyed or heavily damaged in the earthquake had been

必杀二步

一步: 主从句时态的协调

主从句时态的协调是由上下文之间的逻辑关系决定的; 主从句时态可以不一致。

建筑物毁坏和建设的逻辑关系是, 先建设然后在地震中毁坏, 两个动作有明显的先后关系。

A 选项 定语从句中建筑物毁坏使用一般过去时, 主句中建筑物建设也使用一般过去时, 没有表达出两个动作的先后关系。

C D 选项 定语从句中建筑物毁坏使用一般过去时, 主句中建筑物建设使用现在完成时, 建设发生在毁坏以后, 逻辑关系不合理。 \Rightarrow 排除 A C D

二步: 修饰语修饰对象的变化

原句 last year 放在定语从句中, 修饰动词 destroyed 和 damaged。

E 选项 last year 位置改变, 放在句首修饰主句动词 had been constructed, 改变原句的意思; 而且, last year 永远不能与完成时态连用。 \Rightarrow 排除 E

补遗

逻辑意思的合理性

A C 选项 动词 destroyed 和 damaged, 用 and 连接表示建筑物既被 destroyed 又被 damaged, 逻辑意思不合理, 应该用选择连词 or 代替 and, 表示或者被 destroyed 或者被 damaged。

正确选项 B

定语从句使用一般过去时, 主句使用过去完成时, 准确地表达了 construct 发生在 destroy 和 damage 之前。

选择连词 or 连接 destroyed 和 damaged, 逻辑意思合理。

27. Reporting that one of its many problems had been the recent extended sales

slump in women's apparel, the seven-store retailer said it would start a three-month liquidation sale in all of its stores.

- (A) its many problems had been the recent
- (B) its many problems has been the recently
- (C) its many problems is the recently
- (D) their many problems is the recent
- (E) their many problems had been the recent

读题

reporting that..., the seven-store retailer said...

-ing 分词短语在句首, 逻辑主语等于主句的主语 the retailer.

必杀二步

一步: 代词指代

D E 选项 复数代词 their 无法指代单数名词 the seven-store retailer. ➤ 排除 D E

二步: 时态判断

B 选项 从动作发生的先后分析, 从句为现在完成时, 主句为一般过去时, 表示问题出现发生在措施的提出之前, 动作间逻辑关系不合理。

C 选项 从句为一般现在时, 主句为一般过去时, 两个动作发生的先后顺序也不合理。

➤ 排除 B C

补遗

形容词和副词的区别

原句形容词 recent 和-ed 分词 extended 共同修饰名词 sales slump。

B C 选项 副词 recently 只能修饰分词 extended, 改变原句的合理意思。

正确选项 A

problems had been 为过去完成时, 主句为一般过去时, 表示问题的出现发生在措施提出之前, the seven-store retailer 在发现问题后提出了减价措施, 逻辑关系合理, 保证了主从句时态不一致可以接受。

26. In an effort to reduce their inventories, Italian vintners have cut prices; their wines have been priced to sell, and they are.

- (A) have been priced to sell, and they are
- (B) are priced to sell, and they have
- (C) are priced to sell, and they do
- (D) are being priced to sell, and have
- (E) had been priced to sell, and they have

必杀一步

一步: 时态的判断

根据分号前后三个动作之间的逻辑关系(到现在为止已减价 have cut prices, 所以现在定价销售 are priced to sell 并且有销路 sell), 分号后的句子谓语动词只能使用一般现在时。

A 选项 现在完成时 have been priced 和现在进行时 are (selling) 不能成立。

- B 选项 现在完成时 have (sold) 不能成立。
 D 选项 现在进行时 are being priced 和现在完成时 have (sold) 不能成立。
 E 选项 过去完成时 had been priced 和现在完成时 have (sold) 不能成立。
 ➤ 排除 A B D E

补选

重复的动词可以用助动词 do, did, does 代替
 C 选项 用 do 代替重复动词 sell。

正确选项 C

29. Although early soap operas were first aired on evening radio in the 1920's, they had moved to the daytime hours of the 1930's when the evening schedule became crowded with comedians and variety shows.

- (A) were first aired on evening radio in the 1920's, they had moved to the daytime hours of the 1930's
 (B) were first aired on evening radio in the 1920's, they were moved to the daytime hours in the 1930's
 (C) were aired first on evening radio in the 1920's, moving to the daytime hours in the 1930's
 (D) were aired first in the evening on 1920's radio, they moved to the daytime hours of the 1930's
 (E) aired on evening radio first in the 1920's, they were moved to the 1930's in the daytime hours

此题二步

一步:语态选择

- A D 选项 主动语态 they had moved to.../ they moved to ... 表示肥皂剧自己主动移动到..., 逻辑意思不合理。
 E 选项 主动语态 soap operas aired on... 表示肥皂剧自己主动播出, 逻辑意思不合理。
 ➤ 排除 A D E

二步:句子结构的完整性

- C 选项 代入原句后句子结构为“although 状语从句, + -ing 分词短语”, 整个句子缺主句。
 ➤ 排除 C

补选

1> 主从句时态的协调

- A 选项 主句使用过去完成时, 状语从句中出现过去时间标志 in the 1920's, 表示主句动作发生在 before the 1920's, 这与主句时间标志 the 1930's 相矛盾。

2> 逻辑意思的合理性

- E 选项 soap operas were moved to the 1930's 肥皂剧被移动到 30 年代, 逻辑意思不合理。
 正确选项 B

30. After crude oil, natural gas is the United States second biggest fuel source and supplied almost exclusively from reserves in North America.

- (A) After crude oil, natural gas is the United States second biggest fuel source and supplied almost exclusively from reserves in North America.
- (B) Natural gas, after crude oil the United States second biggest fuel source, supplied almost exclusively from reserves in North America.
- (C) Being supplied almost exclusively from reserves in North America, natural gas, the United States second biggest fuel source after crude oil.
- (D) Natural gas, the United States' second biggest fuel source after crude oil, is supplied almost exclusively from reserves in North America.
- (E) Natural gas is supplied almost exclusively from reserves in North America, being the United States' second biggest fuel source after crude oil.

秒杀三步

一步:语态判断

A 选项 Natural gas is sth. and supplied from... 的一种理解是 Natural gas is sth. and (is) supplied from..., 第一个 is 是谓语动词, 第二个 is 是助动词, 助动词 is 不可能承接谓语动词 is 进行省略; 另一种理解是, supplied 为动词 supply 的一般过去时, Natural gas supplied from... 主动语态不合理。

B 选项 Natural gas, 名词性同位语, supplied from... 主动语态仍然不合理。

排除 A B

二步:句子结构的完整性

C 选项 Being supplied from..., natural gas, + 名词性同位语: 缺少谓语动词, 句子结构不完整, 并且过去分词的进行时态 being supplied 不合理。排除 C

三步:修饰语的功能

E 选项 being + n. 不能用在句尾作伴随状语; 它也不能作同位语, 因为 being 多余, 必须省略。排除 E

正确选项 D

31. Consumers may not think of household cleaning products to be hazardous substances, but many of them can be harmful to health, especially if they are used improperly.

- (A) Consumers may not think of household cleaning products to be
- (B) Consumers may not think of household cleaning products being
- (C) A consumer may not think of their household cleaning products being
- (D) A consumer may not think of household cleaning products as
- (E) Household cleaning products may not be thought of, by consumers, as

秒杀二步

一步:习惯用法

think of sth. as...

A 选项 think of ...to be ...搭配错。

B C 选项 think of ...being...搭配错。排除 A B C

二步:主动优先原则

当主被动语态都可以接受的情况下,应优先使用主动语态。

E 选项 使用被动语态,强调重心转移到 household cleaning products 上,而原句使用主动语态,强调 consumers,所以被动语态错,应优先使用主动语态。排除 E

补选

代词指代

C 选项 复数代词 their 无法指代单数名词 a consumer,并且整句话中的三个相同数量概念的代词 their/ them/ they 无法指代同一对象。

正确选项 D

单数主语 a consumer 避免了代词 them 和 they 的指代引起争议。

32. The Gorton-Dodd bill requires that a bank disclose to their customers how long they will delay access to funds from deposited checks.

- (A) that a bank disclose to their customers how long they will delay access to funds from deposited checks
- (B) a bank to disclose to their customers how long they will delay access to funds from a deposited check
- (C) that a bank disclose to its customers how long it will delay access to funds from deposited checks
- (D) a bank that it should disclose to its customers how long it will delay access to funds from a deposited check
- (E) that banks disclose to customers how long access to funds from their deposited check is to be delayed

必杀三步

一步:代词指代

A B 选项 复数代词 they 和 their 无法指代单数名词 a bank,所以代词没有指代对象。

➤ 排除 A B

二步:习惯用法

require sb. to do; require + that 从句(必须使用虚拟语气); require of sb. + that 从句(必须使用虚拟语气)

D 选项 require sb. + that 从句,不符合习惯搭配。 ➤ 排除 D

三步:主动优先原则

当主动语态和被动语态都可以接受的时候,优先使用主动语态。

E 选项 access to funds is to be delayed 被动语态无法表示动作的执行者。 ➤ 排除 E

补选

逻辑意思的合理性

B D E 三个选项 复数名词 customers 和 funds 与单数名词 a deposited check 对应,逻辑意

思表示:所有的顾客都把钱存在一个存款户头上,显然不合理。

正确选项 C

33. According to United States Air Force officials, a cannon shooting dead chickens at airplanes has proved helpful to demonstrate what kind of damage can result when jets fly into a flock of large birds.

- (A) shooting dead chickens at airplanes has proved helpful to demonstrate
- (B) shooting dead chickens at airplanes has proved itself helpful as a demonstration of
- (C) shooting dead chickens at airplanes proves itself helpful as demonstrating
- (D) that shoots dead chickens at airplanes proves itself helpful to demonstrate
- (E) that shoots dead chickens at airplanes has proved helpful in demonstrating

必要二步

一步:主动形式表被动含义

动词 prove 常常以主动的形式表被动的含义,如 I prove innocent.(我被别人证明是无辜的);但是,加入反身代词后,表示自己证明自己,如 I prove myself innocent.(我自己证明自己是无辜的)。

B C D 选项 与原句比,添加了 itself,改变了原句合理意思。 排除 B C D

二步:定语从句作定语和-ing 分词短语作定语的区别

-ing 分词短语作定语:强调动作的多次性、重复性和客观性,无明确的时间概念;定语从句作定语:强调动作的一次性,强调具体时间、具体行为。

从逻辑关系上分析,飞机上的机关炮(cannon)的动作(shoot dead chickens)是具体时间的具体行为,而不是多次性的行为(机关炮总是在 shoot dead chickens),所以, E 选项的 that 定语从句比 A 选项的-ing 分词短语更符合上下文的逻辑关系和生活事理。 排除 A

正确选项 E

34. Japan received huge sums of capital from the United States after the Second World War, using it to help build a modern industrial system.

- (A) Japan received huge sums of capital from the United States after the Second World War, using it to help build
- (B) Japan received huge sums of capital from the United States after the Second World War and used it to help in building
- (C) Japan used the huge sums of capital it received from the United States after the Second World War to help build
- (D) Japan's huge sums of capital received from the United States after the Second World War were used to help it in building
- (E) Receiving huge sums of capital from the United States after the Second World War, Japan used it to help build

读题

主句, + -ing 分词短语

必杀一步

一步:代词指代

A B E 选项 -ing 分词短语中的 it 语法上应该指代主句中的单数名词 the United States, 但逻辑意思上应该指代复数名词短语 huge sums of capital, 代词指代在语法和逻辑上产生矛盾, 错。

D 选项 代词 it 语法上指代 the United States, 逻辑上应指代 Japan, 代词指代在语法和逻辑上产生矛盾, 错。 ➤ 排除 A B D E

补选

1> 语态的选择

有些及物动词倾向于不用被动语态, 如 visit, enter, receive 等。

D 选项 received from 过去分词短语做定语修饰 Japan's huge sums of capital 不正确, 因为 receive 倾向于不使用被动语态。

2> 动作间的逻辑关系

-ing 分词短语在句首表示动作与主句的谓语动词同时发生。

E 选项 receive 和 use 同时发生, 但逻辑意思上应该先 receive capital, 然后 use capital, 两个动作存在先后顺序。 ➤ 排除 D E

正确选项 C

代词 it 语法上逻辑上都指代 Japan。

习惯搭配: use sth. to do; help (to) do...。

it received from 是省略了关系代词 that 的定语从句, 修饰 the huge sums of capital。

35. In the late seventh century, in a dispute over whether the Prophet Muhammad's son-in-law, Ali, should carry on as the fourth caliph, Muhammad's successor, Islam split into two branches, the Sunnis and the Shiites.

- (A) over whether the Prophet Muhammad's son-in-law, Ali, should carry on as the fourth caliph, Muhammad's successor
- (B) over if Ali, the Prophet Muhammad's son-in-law, was going to carry on and be the fourth caliph, Muhammad's successor
- (C) over whether Ali, the Prophet Muhammad's son-in-law, was going to carry on and be the fourth caliph, Muhammad's successor
- (D) as to whether the fourth caliph, Muhammad's successor, is to be the Prophet Muhammad's son-in-law, Ali
- (E) concerning if the fourth caliph, Muhammad's successor, was to be the Prophet Muhammad's son-in-law, Ali

必杀二步

一步:标准书面语原则

在标准书面语中, if 只能表示如果, 引导条件状语从句, 不能表示是否。

B E 选项 if 表示是否, 在标准书面语中不能接受, 应该用 whether 替换。 ➤ 排除 B E

二步:情态动词不能随意省略、添加或者替换

B C 选项 用 was going to 代替原句中的情态动词 should, 错。

D 选项 用 is to be 代替 should carry on, 错。

E 选项 用 was to be 代替 should carry on, 错。 排除 B C D E

补选

用词的倾向性

标准书面语倾向于使用 over/ about 表示关于, 较少使用 as to, 不倾向于使用 concerning。

正确选项 A

36. Wisconsin, Illinois, Florida, and Minnesota have begun to enforce statewide bans prohibiting landfills to accept leaves, brush, and grass clippings.

- (A) prohibiting landfills to accept leaves, brush, and grass clippings
- (B) prohibiting that landfills accept leaves, brush, and grass clippings
- (C) prohibiting landfills from accepting leaves, brush, and grass clippings
- (D) that leaves, brush, and grass clippings cannot be accepted in landfills
- (E) that landfills cannot accept leaves, brush, and grass clippings

读题

W, I, F and M have begun to enforce statewide bans... 划线部分作定语修饰 bans

必杀二步

一步: 习惯用法

prohibit sb. from doing

A 选项 prohibit sb. to do 永远错。

B 选项 prohibit + that 从句永远错。 排除 A B

二步: 情态动词不能随意添加、省略或替换

D E 选项 随意添加情态动词否定式 cannot, 用 cannot 代替了实义动词 prohibit, 改变原句的意思。 排除 D E

正确选项 C

37. Few people realize that the chance of accidental injury or death may be as great or greater in the "safety" of their own homes than in a plane or on the road.

- (A) may be as great or greater in the "safety" of their own homes than
- (B) is at least as great or greater in the "safety" of their own homes than
- (C) might be so great or greater in the "safety" of their own home as
- (D) may be at least as great in the "safety" of their own homes as
- (E) can be at least so great in the "safety" of their own home as

必杀一步

一步: 比较结构的习惯搭配

1 > GMAT 考试中经常出现将相等比较 as...as 和 more...than...形式比较合并在一起写的错误或者故意复杂化的表达方法; 正确表达应该是: at least as great as 或者 as great

as or greater than。

A B 选项 as great or greater than, 永远错。

C 选项 so great or greater as, 永远错。 ➤ 排除 A B C

2> so...as 的搭配只用在否定句中, 如 not so great as。

E 选项 so great as, 永远错。 ➤ 排除 E

补选

情态动词不能随意添加、省略或改变

B 选项 随意省略情态动词 may, 错。

E 选项 用情态动词 can 替换了 may, 错。 ➤ 排除 B E

正确选项 D

比较从句中的省略

比较从句中的主谓结构和主句的主谓结构相同, 可以省略, 只保留作状语的介词短语或状语从句。

选项 D 中 as great as 后接介词短语, 省略了主谓语。

38. Despite protests from some waste-disposal companies, state health officials have ordered the levels of bacteria in seawater at popular beaches to be measured and that the results be published.

- (A) the levels of bacteria in seawater at popular beaches to be measured and that the results be
- (B) that seawater at popular beaches should be measured for their levels of bacteria, with the results being
- (C) the measure of levels of bacteria in seawater at popular beaches and the results to be
- (D) seawater measured at popular beaches for levels of bacteria, with their results
- (E) that the levels of bacteria in seawater at popular beaches be measured and the results

读题

despite sth., sb. have ordered sth. to do and that...

必备二步

一步: 平行结构形式要对称

A 选项 and 连接 order sth. to be done 和 order + that 从句, 形式不对称

C 选项 and 连接 order sth. 和 order sth. to be done, 形式不对称 ➤ 排除 A C

二步: 代词指代

B D 选项 复数代词 their 无法指代单数名词 seawater。 ➤ 排除 B D

补选

1> 情态动词不能随意添加

B 选项 随意添加情态动词 should, 海水应该被测量, 逻辑意思不合理。

2> 不能改变原句的合理重心

B D 选项 with the results being published/ with their results published 把原句中主句的内容改为从属性成分,改变句子重心。

3> 逻辑意思的合理性

C 选项 order the measure 命令测量,逻辑意思不合理。

D 选项 order seawater 命令海水,逻辑意思不合理。

正确选项 E

并列句的省略

两个句子或三个句子并列,第一句中有 be 动词或者 become,第二或第三句话中的 be 动词或者 become 必须省略,包括重复的名词、形容词甚至连词都可以省略。

that 宾语从句 1(that the levels of bacteria in seawater at popular beaches be measured) + and + 宾语从句 2(the results published): and 后省略了 that, published 前省略了 be 动词。

39. A President entering the final two years of a second term is likely to be at a severe disadvantage and often unable to carry out a legislative program.

- (A) likely to be at a severe disadvantage and is often unable to
- (B) likely severely disadvantaged and often unable to
- (C) liable to be severely disadvantaged and cannot often
- (D) liable that he or she is at a severe disadvantage and cannot often
- (E) at a severe disadvantage, often likely to be unable that he or she can

必杀二步

一步:能力和可能性的区别

原句 be unable to 强调能力。

C D E 选项 情态动词 cannot/can 强调可能性,改变原句意思和强调重心。

➡ 排除 C D E

二步:习惯用法

be able/unable to do 是 be 动词短语,在这个短语中 be 动词不是助动词,不能省略。

B 选项 unable 前省略了 be 动词,错。

D 选项 be liable + that...不符合习惯搭配;正确用法为:be liable to do; be liable to(介词) sth.; be liable for(介词) sth.。

E 选项 likely to be unable/ to be unable that 永远错。 ➡ 排除 B D E

备选

1> 词的准确使用

原句 be at a disadvantage 表示处于不利地位。

B C 选项 be disadvantaged 可以表示:被损害;处于不利地位。GMAT 考试中尽可能避免使用多义词。

2> 修饰语修饰对象的改变

原句 be likely to be 是一个整体概念,不能肢解。

B 选项 be disadvantaged, likely 作为副词修饰 severely disadvantaged,改变原句的强调重心。

E 选项 likely 的位置改变必然导致修饰对象的改变,从而改变原句的合理意思和重心。

正确选项 A

40. Artificial intelligence emerged during the late 1950's as an academic discipline based on the assumption that computers are able to be programmed to think like people.

- (A) are able to be programmed to think like people
- (B) were able to be programmed to think as people
- (C) can be programmed to think as people can
- (D) could be programmed to think like people
- (E) are capable of being programmed to think like people do

读题

Artificial intelligence emerged during... as...

必杀二步

一步:能力和可能性的区别

be able to/ be capable of doing 表示能力, can / could 表示可能性。

A B 选项 computers are/were able to be programmed“计算机有能力被编程”,逻辑意思不合理。

E 选项 computers are capable of being programmed,逻辑意思也不合理。 ~~排除 A B E~~

第二步:比较从句的省略

B 选项 as + 名词,表示作为...,不能表示比较。

E 选项 标准书面语中, like 作为介词不能加句子, like people do 绝对错。

主句谓语动词短语使用“助动词(如 have, has, had, will)或情态动词(can, could, may, should) + verb”形式时,比较从句往往省略 verb,保留助动词或情态动词。

C 选项 根据以上原则, as people can 后面省略了 be programmed, people can be programmed to think 逻辑意思不合理。 ~~排除 B C E~~

正确选项 D

41. Beyond the immediate cash flow crisis that the museum faces, its survival depends on if it can broaden its membership and leave its cramped quarters for a site where it can store and exhibit its more than 12,000 artifacts.

- (A) if it can broaden its membership and leave
- (B) whether it can broaden its membership and leave
- (C) whether or not it has the capability to broaden its membership and can leave
- (D) its ability for broadening its membership and leaving
- (E) the ability for it to broaden its membership and leave

必杀二步

一步:标准书面语原则

标准书面语中不接受口语用法:在标准书面语中 if 只能表示如果,引导条件状语从句,

不能表示是否(if 表是否属口语用法)。表示是否必须使用 whether。

A 选项 if 表示是否,不符合标准书面语的用法。

C 选项 标准书面语中 whether or not 表达不简洁,or not 多余,必须省略。 ➤ 排除 A C

第二步:能力和可能性的区别

原句情态动词 can 强调可能性。

C D E 选项 capability/ability 强调能力,改变原句合理意思。 ➤ 排除 C D E

补选

习惯搭配

正确用法:ability/inability to do; ability/inability of sb. to do。

D 选项 ability for doing 永远错。

E 选项 ability for sb. to do 永远错。

正确选项 B

42. Roy Wilkins was among the last of a generation of civil rights activists who led the nation through decades of change so profound many young Americans are not able to imagine, even less to remember, what segregation was like.

(A) so profound many young Americans are not able to imagine, even less to remember

(B) so profound that many young Americans cannot imagine, much less remember

(C) so profound many young Americans cannot imagine nor even less remember

(D) of such profundity many young Americans cannot imagine, even less can they remember

(E) of such profundity that many young Americans are not able to imagine, much less to remember

必杀二步

一步:结果状语从句

so + adj./adv./v. + that

A C 选项 so profound 形容词短语后没有 that 与之搭配。 ➤ 排除 A C

第二步:用词倾向性

英语表达中,能够使用形容词、副词形式就不能使用 of + 抽象名词短语形式。

D E 选项 of such profundity 永远错,因为可以直接用形容词 profound 表达。

➤ 排除 D E

补选

can 和 be able to 的区别

can do... 强调可能性,be able to do... 强调能力。

从逻辑上看,合理的句意为:变化如此的大以至于年轻的美国人不可能想像到(cannot imagine),而不是变化如此的大以至于年轻的美国人没有能力想像到(are not able to imagine)。 ➤ 排除 A E

正确选项 B

even less 和 much less 的用法

even less 和 much less 都表示“更不用说”，常用于否定结构之后，起强调作用，前后对应的词的形式必须保持一致，如 cannot do 1, much less do 2。

43. One of Ronald Reagan's first acts as President was to rescind President Carter's directive that any chemical banned on medical grounds in the United States be prohibited from sale to other countries.

- (A) that any chemical banned on medical grounds in the United States be prohibited from sale to other countries
- (B) that any chemical be prohibited from sale to other countries that was banned on medical grounds in the United States
- (C) prohibiting the sale to other countries of any chemical banned on medical grounds in the United States
- (D) prohibiting that any chemical banned on medical grounds in the United States is sold to other countries
- (E) that any chemical banned in the United States on medical grounds is prohibited from being sold to other countries.

此题二步

一步：虚拟语气

directive 作为名词，表示禁令，其后的 that 从句是同位语从句，解释说明 directive，that 从句不能使用虚拟语气。

direct 作为动词，表示命令，其后的宾语从句必须使用动词原形表示虚拟语气。

A B 选项 同位语从句中 be prohibited 使用动词原形，表示虚拟语气，错。 ➡ 排除 A B

二步：习惯用法

prohibit sth. ; prohibit from doing... (主动语态); be prohibited from doing...

D 选项 prohibit + that 从句，永远错。

E 选项 be prohibited from + being done (被动语态)，永远错。 ➡ 排除 D E

正确选项 C

the sale of sth. to somewhere, sth. 太长，所以放到了 somewhere 的后面，变成 the sale to somewhere of sth. .

44. Legislation in the Canadian province of Ontario requires of both public and private employers that pay be the same for jobs historically held by women as for jobs requiring comparable skill that are usually held by men.

- (A) that pay be the same for jobs historically held by women as for jobs requiring comparable skill that are
- (B) that pay for jobs historically held by women should be the same as for a job requiring comparable skills
- (C) to pay the same in jobs historically held by women as in jobs of comparable skill that are
- (D) to pay the same regardless of whether a job was historically held by women or is

one demanding comparable skills

(E) to pay as much for jobs historically held by women as for a job demanding comparable skills

读题

Legislation requires of sb. that pay be the same for... as for...

秒杀二步

一步:习惯用法

require + that 从句(使用动词原形表示虚拟语气); require of sb. + that 从句(使用动词原形);

require sb. to do; sth. be required of sb.

C D E 选项 require of sb. to do 不符合习惯搭配。排除 C D E

二步:虚拟语气

B 选项 require 的宾语从句中没有使用动词原形表示虚拟语气,错。排除 B

补遗

修饰语优先就近修饰

B D E 选项 -ed 分词短语 usually held by men 就近修饰名词 comparable skills,逻辑意思不合理。

正确选项 A

修饰语修饰对象的单一性

定语从句 that are usually held by men 中,复数谓语动词 are 保证了定语从句跳跃修饰复数名词 jobs 而不是就近修饰单数名词 comparable skill。定语从句通过主谓一致保证了修饰对象的明确和单一。

111

45. Constance Horner, chief of the United States government's personnel agency, has recommended that the use of any dangerous or illegal drug in the five years prior to application for a job be grounds for not hiring an applicant.

- (A) the use of any dangerous or illegal drug in the five years prior to application for a job be grounds for not hiring an applicant
- (B) any dangerous or illegal drug, if used in the five years prior to applying for a job, should be grounds not to hire the applicant
- (C) an applicant's use of any dangerous or illegal drug in the five years prior to application for a job be grounds not to hire them
- (D) an applicant's use of any dangerous or illegal drug in the five years prior to applying for a job are grounds that they not be hired
- (E) for five years prior to applying for a job, an applicant's use of any dangerous or illegal drug be grounds for not hiring them

秒杀二步

一步:虚拟语气

recommend 表示建议,其后的宾语从句必须使用动词原形表示虚拟语气。

B 选项 **should be grounds** 不符合虚拟语气的要求。

D 选项 **are grounds** 不符合虚拟语气的要求。 ➤ 排除 B D

第二步:代词指代

C E 选项 代词 **them** 不能指代单数名词 **an applicant**。 ➤ 排除 C E

补选

习惯用法

B C 选项 **be grounds to do**; D 选项 **be grounds + that** 从句, 都不符合习惯用法; 正确用法为: **sth. be grounds for doing...**

正确选项 A

46. The new regulations mandate that a company allows their retiring employees who would otherwise lose group health care coverage to continue the same insurance at their own expense for a specified period.

- (A) that a company allows their retiring employees who would otherwise lose group health care coverage to continue
- (B) companies to allow their retiring employees who would otherwise lose group health care coverage that they can continue
- (C) that a company allow its retiring employees who would otherwise lose group health care coverage to continue
- (D) companies allowing a retiring employee whose group health care coverage would otherwise be lost the continuation of
- (E) companies to allow a retiring employee whose group health care coverage would otherwise be lost the continuation of

读题

The regulations mandate that a company allow their employees to continue...

必杀二步

一步:虚拟语气

mandate 表示命令, 宾语从句必须使用原形动词表示虚拟语气。

A 选项 **allows** 没有使用动词原形。 ➤ 排除 A

第二步:习惯用法

mandate sb. to do; **mandate + that** 从句(使用动词原形表示虚拟语气); **allow sb. to do**

B 选项 **allow sb. + that** 从句, 不符合习惯搭配。

D 选项 **mandate sb. doing** 错。

D E 选项 **the continuation of** 表达累赘; **allow sb. + 动作性名词**, 不符合习惯搭配。

➤ 排除 B D E

补选

代词指代

A 选项 代词 **their** 无法指代单数名词 **a company**。

正确选项 C

47. Affording strategic proximity to the Strait of Gibraltar, Morocco was also of interest to the French throughout the first half of the twentieth century because they assumed that if they did not hold it, their grip on Algeria was always insecure.

- (A) if they did not hold it, their grip in Algeria was always insecure
- (B) without it their grip on Algeria would never be secure
- (C) their grip on Algeria was not ever secure if they did not hold it
- (D) without that, they could never be secure about their grip on Algeria
- (E) never would their grip on Algeria be secure if they did not hold it

读题

Affording... Morocco was of interest to the French(法国人对 Morocco 感兴趣) because they assumed that...

必杀三步

一步:虚拟语气的形式

A C 选项 assume 的宾语从句中,if 引导虚拟条件句,主句谓语动词应该用 would be 表示虚拟语气。 ➤ 排除 A C

二步:标准书面语原则

标准书面语中,指示代词 this, that, these 不能单独用在介词后,也不能单独充当主语。

D 选项 without that, 错。 ➤ 排除 D

三步:表达的有效性

否定性词或短语位于句首时,引起部分倒装,如:never; no longer; rarely; hardly; few; little; not until。

E 选项 划线部分的主句使用倒装语序,表示强烈语气,改变原句的一般语气,并且 if 引导的虚拟条件句没有 without sth. 表达更简洁。 ➤ 排除 E

正确选项 B

48. A recording system was so secretly installed and operated in the Kennedy Oval Office that even Theodore C. Sorensen, the White House counsel, did not know it existed.

- (A) A recording system was so secretly installed and operated in the Kennedy Oval Office that
- (B) So secret was a recording system installation and operation in the Kennedy Oval Office
- (C) It was so secret that a recording system was installed and operated in the Kennedy Oval Office
- (D) A recording system that was so secretly installed and operated in the Kennedy Oval Office
- (E) Installed and operated so secretly in the Kennedy Oval Office was a recording system that

必杀二步

一步:习惯用法

so...that...作状语修饰 adj./adv./v., 表示结果。

B 选项 缺少 that 与 so 搭配, 即使补出 that, B 选项强调 installation 和 operation 而不是 a recording system, 改变原句重心; 同时主语的改变导致句末的代词 it 没有指代对象。

C 选项 it 是形式主语, 指代 that 从句, 从而使未划线部分 even Theodore C. Sorensen... 前缺少 that 与 so secret 构成搭配, 并且 C 选项改变主语, 改变原句强调重心。

D 选项 未划线部分 even Theodore C. Sorensen... 前缺少 that 与 so secretly 构成搭配, 错; 并且出现下述结构: A recording system...sb. did not know..., 其中 A recording system 与 sb. 不能构成任何逻辑意思合理的语法结构。 ➤ 排除 B C D

二步:语气和句子重心的保持

E 选项 倒装语序表示强烈语气, 改变原句的一般语气和句子重心。 ➤ 排除 E

正确选项 A

49. The Forbidden City in Beijing, from which the emperors ruled by heavenly mandate, was a site which a commoner or foreigner could not enter without any permission, on pain of death.

- (A) which a commoner or foreigner could not enter without any permission
- (B) which a commoner or foreigner could enter without any permission only
- (C) which no commoner or foreigner could enter without permission
- (D) which, without permission, neither commoner or foreigner could only enter
- (E) which, to enter without permission, neither commoner or foreigner could do

读题

The Forbidden City was a site which...

定语从句 from which... 跳过介词短语 in Beijing, 修饰介词短语所修饰的名词 The Forbidden City, 而不是就近修饰 Beijing; on pain of death 表示“违者处以死刑”。

必杀一步

一步:习惯用法

A B 选项 without any permission 中 any 多余, 应省去。 ➤ 排除 A B

D E 选项 neither...or... 不符合习惯搭配; 正确搭配: neither...nor...。 ➤ 排除 D E

补选

only 不能随意添加或省略

only 表示强烈语气, B D 选项随意添加 only, 改变原句的语气和意思。

正确选项 C

当关系代词 which/ that 在定语从句中充当及物动词宾语时, which/ that 可以省略。

50. While Jackie Robinson was a Brooklyn Dodger, his courage in the face of physical threats and verbal attacks was not unlike that of Rosa Parks, who refused to

move to the back of a bus in Montgomery, Alabama.

- (A) not unlike that of Rosa Parks, who refused
- (B) not unlike Rosa Parks, who refused
- (C) like Rosa Parks and her refusal
- (D) like that of Rosa Parks for refusing
- (E) as that of Rosa Parks, who refused

必杀二步

一步:比较对象之间要有可比性

B选项 courage 和人不是同一类概念,不能进行比较。

C选项 courage 和人以及动作性名词 refusal 概念不同,不能进行比较。

E选项 as + 名词, as 表示“作为…”,不表示比较。 排除 B C E

二步:语气的保持

原句 not unlike 双重否定表示强烈语气。

D选项 虽然 not unlike 在意思上等于 like,但 like 不表示强烈语气。 排除 D

正确选项 A

比较结构中 that 指代重复的单数名词 courage,使比较对象对等。

第五章

GMAT

分词和不定式

第一节 分词

一、分词短语的形式与作用

(一) -ing 分词

1. -ing 分词有以下几种形式:

		及物动词		不及物动词
		主动	被动	主动
现在	doing		being done	vi. + ing
完成	having done		having been done	vi. + ed

2. -ing 分词的句法功能

- 1) 作主语: doing...is/was/did/does...
- 2) 作补语: find / keep / have / make + 名词短语 + -ing 分词
- 3) 作宾语: -ing 分词(短语)既可以作动词宾语,也可以作介词宾语。
- 4) 作定语: -ing 分词作定语时,它所修饰的词一般是分词所表示的行为或状态的主体,从逻辑上看,似乎是一种主语和谓语的关系。
- 5) 作状语: -ing 分词短语作状语时一般放在句首或句尾。

(二) -ed 分词

1. -ed 分词只有一种形式。除少数不规则动词外,相当数量的动词过去分词都是由后缀-ed 构成的。
2. -ed 分词的句法功能
 - 1) 作补语: find / keep / have / make + 名词短语 + -ed 分词
 - 2) 作定语: -ed 分词作定语时,被修饰的词是分词所表示的行为的承受者,从逻辑上来看,修饰语与被修饰语之间似乎是一种行为与客体之间的关系。
 - 3) 作状语: 作状语用的-ed 分词结构均位于主谓结构之外,一般用于正式文体,尤其是书面语中。

117

二、分词短语逻辑主语的判断

1. 分词短语在句首起状语作用,逻辑主语等于句子主语。
2. -ing 分词短语在句尾:
 - 1) 表伴随动作、状态、功能,与句子谓语动作同时发生,逻辑主语等于句子主语。
 - 2) 表伴随结果,整个句子是原因,导致分词动作产生,无逻辑主语。可以在分词前加 thus, thereby, in effect 等,也可以不加。
3. -ed 分词短语在句尾,一般优先就近作定语,修饰名词。
4. 介词或介词短语 + -ing 分词:

in addition to / in / by / without / besides + doing..., 句子

 - 1) 在句首,逻辑主语等于句子主语。
 - 2) 在句尾,可能是句子主语,也可能不是句子主语。

三、分词短语的并列

-ing 分词短语和-ed 分词短语可以并列,作定语修饰名词。

四、分词的否定形式

not doing.../ without doing.../ not -ed.../ never -ed...

五、-ing 分词的完成时态

-ing 分词的完成时态不能充当名词的定语,必须转换为定语从句,即 n. + having done.../having been done 必须改为 n. + that...

六、定语从句作定语与分词短语作定语的区别

1. 定语从句强调具体的时间,具体的行为,以及动作的一次性;分词短语强调笼统的、不确定的时间,抽象的、客观的、重复性的、多次性的行为。

2. 分词短语比定语从句更简洁:都可接受时,分词短语比定语从句优先使用。如有可能,定语从句要尽可能简化为分词短语。

3. 有情态动词的定语从句不能转换为分词短语。

4. 如果定语从句转换为分词短语后产生歧义,则不能转换。例如:

Unlike human beings, wasting away when going without food..., hibernating bears exist... 由于修饰对象有两种可能(作定语或作状语),所以 wasting 应改为 who waste; going 应改为 they go。

七、后面加-ing 分词作宾语的动词或动词短语

1. acknowledge; avoid; admit; enjoy; escape; suggest; assure; advocate; forbid; permit; favor; recommend; resist; risk; involve; deny; include
2. give up; credit to; aim at; contribute to; in contrast to; be suppose to; object to; be opposed to; amount to; be exposed / committed / limited / devoted to; lead to; be educated to; be/become accustomed/used to
3. aid sb. in doing; prevent / keep / prohibit / save sb. from doing; accuse sb. of doing
4. be expert at; be good at; criticize...for; praise...for; be capable of; be busy; have difficulty (in); have trouble (in)
5. GMAT 中常用 propose doing, 较少用 propose to do。

第二节 不定式

一、不定式的构成与句法功能

1. 动词不定式是动词的一种非谓语形式,由 to 加原形动词构成,没有人称和数的变化。
2. 不定式有时态和语态的变化

	主动语态	被动语态
一般式	to do	to be done
完成式	to have done	to have been done
进行式	to be doing	—
完成进行式	to have been doing	—

3. 不定式在句中可以作主语、表语、宾语、定语、状语和补语。

1) 不定式作主语

不定式短语作主语时,特别是当不定式短语很长时,往往引入形式主语 it,而把不定式短语放在谓语的后面。常用句型有:

It is + 形容词 + 不定式短语

It takes / needs / requires... + 不定式短语

It is + 名词 + 不定式短语

2) 不定式作表语,即 be + 不定式短语。

在这种结构中,动词不定式用来揭示主语所包含的具体内容。常用的主语有下列名词:aim, task, duty, goal, work, job, purpose, method, problem, effect(作用), activity(活动,作用), mistake

通常译为:“…就是…”,“…在于…”。

3) 不定式作定语

A. 下面的名词要求用动词不定式作定语:

way, ability, power, tendency, capacity, reason, chance, time, method, attempt, opportunity, thing, work, property

B. 不定式的被动语态作定语

含有“将要”、“有必要”的意思。翻译时可在不定式前加“要”、“待”等词。

C. 介词 + which + 不定式短语作定语

动词不定式如带有介词,作定语时仍保留其介词,常与关系代词 which 连用。这种结构仍然是不定式短语,不能视为 which 引导的定语从句。

4. 不定式的否定形式

1) not + 不定式: not 置于带 to 或不带 to 的不定式前,属于一般否定。

2) never + 不定式: never 置于带 to 或不带 to 的不定式前,则强调否定意义。

三、不定式作宾语

以下动词后面加不定式(短语)作宾语,不定式的动作往往与谓语动词的动作同时发生: afford; agree; appear / seem; arrange; choose; claim; come(逐渐); elect; endeavor; expect; fail; promise; refuse; seek; select; threaten; venture; offer; prefer

四、不定式(短语)作宾语补语

动词(advise, allow, cause, compel, enable, invite, inspire, convince, expect, lead, require, use, order) + 名词短语 + 不定式

五、疑问代词 + 不定式

whether/how/when/what/why to do...

六、省略 to 的不定式

动词(see, watch, notice, spot, hear, observe, perceive, overhear, feel, smell, let, make)
+ n./pron. + do...

make do (with/without) 凑合着做...; make believe (= pretend)

help (to) do...; rather than do...; all sb. do/did is/was do...; might (just) as well do...

七、及物动词 + it + 宾语补语 + 不定式

find / deem / make it + adj. + to do...

八、动作的目的用不定式表达

用 do sth. to do sth., 而不用 do sth. for doing sth.。

九、too...to...结构

to 后主动语态和被动语态都可以使用: too adj. to do; too adj. for sb. to do; too adj. to be done by sb.。

十、不定式作定语

名词前有 last next 序数词或者形容词最高级作定语时, 名词后的定语必须用不定式, 如: the first scientist to do some research on AIDS。

※ 练习题及其详解 ※

1. Delighted by the reported earnings for the first quarter of the fiscal year, it was decided by the company manager to give her staff a raise.

- (A) it was decided by the company manager to give her staff a raise
- (B) the decision of the company manager was to give her staff a raise
- (C) the company manager decided to give her staff a raise
- (D) the staff was given a raise by the company manager
- (E) a raise was given to the staff by the company manager

第二步

一步: 逻辑主语的合理性

-ed 分词短语在句首, 其逻辑主语等于句子的主语, 即逻辑主语必须能够执行分词短语所表达的动作。

只有 C 选项 the company manager 和 D 选项 the staff 可以执行 delighted by..., 其余选项的句子主语和分词短语不能构成合理的逻辑搭配。 ➤ 排除 A B E

二步: 主动优先原则

在主动语态和被动语态都能够接受的情况下, 优先使用主动语态。

C 选项 使用主动语态。

D 选项 使用被动语态, 并且省略了原句中的实义动词 decide, 改变原句意思。 ➤ 排除 D

正确选项 C

28. Reared apart from each other, a recent United States study showed striking similarities in identical twins, including many idiosyncrasies of behavior.

- (A) Reared apart from each other, a recent United States study showed striking similarities in identical twins, including many idiosyncrasies of behavior.
- (B) Reared apart from each other, striking similarities between identical twins that include many idiosyncrasies of behavior were shown in a recent United States study.
- (C) A recent United States study showed striking similarities in identical twins reared apart from each other that include many idiosyncrasies of behavior.
- (D) According to a recent United States study, identical twins reared apart from each other showed striking similarities, including many idiosyncrasies of behavior.
- (E) According to a recent United States study, identical twins showed striking similarities reared apart from each other, including many idiosyncrasies of behavior.

读题

-ed 分词短语, + 主句, including...: -ed 分词短语在句首作状语

第二步

一步:逻辑主语

过去分词短语在句首, 逻辑主语等于句子主语。reared apart (分开抚养) 的逻辑主语应该是 twins (双胞胎)。

A 选项 主语是 study, 逻辑上不能与 reared apart 搭配。

B 选项 主语是 similarities, 逻辑上不能与 reared apart 搭配。✂ 排除 A B

第二步:修饰语修饰对象的合理性

C 选项 that 定语从句应就近修饰 each other, each other 作 include 的主语, 但是语法上 each other 一般作宾语, 不作主语。

E 选项 reared apart 作定语就近修饰 similarities, 但“相似性被分开抚养”, 逻辑意思不合理。✂ 排除 C E

正确选项 D

reared apart 就近修饰 twins, including 就近修饰 similarities, 修饰关系明确, 逻辑意思合理。

29. Prompted by new evidence that the health risk posed by radon gas is far more serious than was previously thought, property owners are being advised by authorities to test all dwellings below the third floor for radon gas and to make repairs as needed.

- (A) property owners are being advised by authorities to
- (B) property owners are advised by authorities that they should
- (C) authorities are advising property owners to
- (D) authorities are advising property owners they
- (E) authorities' advice to property owners is they should

读题

Prompted by sth. . . . , owners are being advised by authorities to do and to do.

必杀二步

一步:逻辑主语

E 选项 advice 不能充当 prompted by 的逻辑主语。排除 E

二步:习惯用法

advise sb. to do sth.; advise that...

A 选项 sb. be advised by sb. to do... 永远错。

B 选项 sb. be advised by sb. that... 永远错。

D 选项 sb. advise sb. + 句子永远错。排除 A B D

正确选项 C

4. The record of the past is always incomplete, and the historian who writes about it inevitably reflects the preoccupations of their own time.

(A) the historian who writes about it inevitably reflects

(B) the historian writing about it will inevitably reflect

(C) a historian writing about it inevitably reflects

(D) writing about it, it is inevitable for historians to reflect

(E) historians in writing about it inevitably reflect

必杀二步

一步:代词指代

A B C 选项 未划线部分的复数代词 their 无法指代单数名词 historian, 代词没有指代对象。

排除 A B C

二步:逻辑主语

D 选项 writing about it 的逻辑主语等于主句主语 it, it 作为形式主语指代 to reflect..., 所以-ing 分词的逻辑主语不合理。排除 D

正确选项 E

5. Comparing the Quechans with other Native Americans of the Southwest, the Quechans were singularly uninterested in the accumulation of material wealth or in the crafting of elaborate pottery and basketry.

(A) Comparing the Quechans with other Native Americans of the Southwest, the Quechans

(B) When you compare the Quechans to other Native Americans of the Southwest, they

(C) When other Native Americans of the Southwest are compared to the Quechans, they

(D) Comparison to other Native Americans of the Southwest shows that the Quechans

(E) Compared with other Native Americans of the Southwest, the Quechans

必杀二步

一步:逻辑主语

A 选项 -ing 分词在句首,逻辑主语等于主句主语,The Quechans compared the Quechans with other Native Americans of Southwest, Q 部落主动把自己与其他土著美国人进行比较,逻辑主语不合理。 ➤ 排除 A

第二步:习惯用法

compare to 和 compare with 的区别:

compare X1 to X2——把 X1 比成 X2, X1 和 X2 是不同类事物,即不同类事物寻找相似性,相似性用 compare to 强调; compare X1 with X2——X1 与 X2 相比较, X1 与 X2 是同一类事物,即同类事物寻找差异性,差异性用 compare with 强调。

Quechans 和 other Native Americans of the Southwest 是同一类事物,应该使用 compare...with 表示相互比较,强调差异性。

B C D 选项 错误地使用了 compare...to...结构。 ➤ 排除 B C D

补选

1> 标准书面语原则

when you... (如 B 选项) / if you... 都是口语用法,在标准书面语中很少使用。

2> 不能改变原句的合理意思

C 选项 随意添加原句中没有的 when 状语从句,必然改变原句的合理意思。

正确选项 E

6. Citing evidence that the carbon dioxide content of the atmosphere has increased more than seven percent in the last 30 years, many scientists have expressed a fear of destroying forests and continued use of fossil fuels will cause an irreversible shift in Earth's climatic pattern.

123

- (A) many scientists have expressed a fear of destroying forests and continued use of
- (B) many scientists have expressed a fear that destruction of forests and continued use of
- (C) many scientists have expressed a fear that destruction of forests and continually using
- (D) a fear that many scientists have expressed is that destroying forests and continually using
- (E) a fear that many scientists have expressed is that destruction of forests and continual using of

读题

Citing evidence that..., many scientists have expressed a fear of ...and use of sth. will...

必杀二步

一步:分词短语的逻辑主语

A 选项 句子 1 的主语 many scientists 可以充当 citing evidence 的逻辑主语,但是句子 2 的主语 continued use of sth. 无法充当 citing evidence 的逻辑主语。

D E 选项 a fear 不能作为 citing evidence 的逻辑主语。 ➤ 排除 A D E

第二步:平行结构形式要对称

C 选项 a fear 的同位语从句中 destruction of sth. 与 using sth. 形式不对称,不能构成平行

结构。排除 C

正确选项 B

把原句两个并列的主句 sb. have expressed a fear of... 与 use of sth. will cause... 合并为一句,保证了 citing evidence 逻辑主语的合理性。destruction of forests 与 use of fossil fuels, 都是动作性名词短语,形式对称,概念对等。

7. Spanning more than fifty years, Friedrich Müller began his career in an unpromising apprenticeship as a Sanskrit scholar and culminated in virtually every honor that European governments and learned societies could bestow.

- (A) Müller began his career in an unpromising apprenticeship as
- (B) Müller's career began in an unpromising apprenticeship as
- (C) Müller's career began with the unpromising apprenticeship of being
- (D) Müller had begun his career with the unpromising apprenticeship of being
- (E) the career of Müller has begun with an unpromising apprenticeship of

读题

Spanning more than fifty years, Friedrich Müller began... and culminated...

必杀二步

一步:逻辑主语的合理性

124 AD 选项 句首-ing 分词短语的逻辑主语为主句主语 Friedrich Müller, Friedrich Müller spanned more than fifty years, 人跨越了 50 多年,逻辑意思不合理。

排除 AD

二步:习惯用法

apprenticeship as

CDE 选项 apprenticeship of being/ apprenticeship of 都不符合 apprenticeship 的习惯搭配。排除 CDE

补选

时态判断

D 选项把原句一般过去时改为过去完成时, E 选项把一般过去时改为现在完成时;没有明显的时间标志和上下文的逻辑线索表明,这种对原句时态的改变是合理的。

正确选项 B

Miller's career 作为 spanning... 的逻辑主语, Miller's career spanned more than fifty years, 意思合理。

8. In theory, international civil servants at the United Nations are prohibited from continuing to draw salaries from their own governments; in practice, however, some governments merely substitute living allowances for their employees' paychecks, assigned by them to the United Nations.

- (A) for their employees' paychecks, assigned by them
- (B) for the paychecks of their employees who have been assigned

- (C) for the paychecks of their employees, having been assigned
 (D) in place of their employees' paychecks, for those of them assigned
 (E) in place of the paychecks of their employees to have been assigned by them

读题

In theory (理论上), 句子 1; in practice (实际上), however, 句子 2.

句子 2 中 substitute X1 for X2 表示用 X1 代替 X2

秒杀二步

一步: 习惯用法

substitute sth. for sth.

D E 选项 substitute sth. in place of sth. 不符合习惯搭配。 ➡ 排除 D E

二步: -ed / -ing 分词短语在句尾的作用

主句, + -ed 分词短语: -ed 分词短语优先作定语, 就近修饰名词。

主句, + -ing 分词短语: -ing 分词短语优先充当状语, 表示伴随结果或伴随动作。

A 选项 assigned 就近修饰名词 paychecks, paychecks are assigned to the United Nations 逻辑意思不合理。

C 选项 having been assigned 的功能有三种可能性:

第一, 作为伴随结果状语, 却与主句没有因果关系。

第二, 作为伴随动作状语, 主句主语 some governments 却不能充当分词短语的逻辑主语。

第三, 就近作定语, 但现在分词的完成时态不能作定语修饰名词。

所以, having been assigned 与其修饰对象间的修饰关系不能成立。 ➡ 排除 A C

正确选项 B

现在分词的完成时态不能作名词的定语, 必须转换为定语从句: who have been assigned 作为定语从句修饰 employees。

9. Clark and Florence Wallace, a husband-and-wife medical team, worked steadily and efficiently through the night, but sipping their coffee the next morning, she noticed that he seemed disoriented.

- (A) sipping their coffee the next morning, she noticed that he seemed disoriented
 (B) sipping their coffee the next morning, he seemed to be disoriented, she noticed
 (C) as they sipped their coffee the next morning, she noticed that he seemed disoriented
 (D) as they were sipping their coffee the next morning, he seemed, she noticed, disoriented
 (E) he seemed disoriented, she noticed, sipping their coffee the next morning

读题

句子 1, but 句子 2. 句子 1 未划线, 可以跳过不读。

秒杀二步

一步: 逻辑主语

A B 选项 句子 2 中, -ing 分词短语 sipping their coffee 在句首, 逻辑主语等于句子主语, “她/他喝了他们的咖啡(一个人喝了两个人的咖啡)”, 逻辑意思不合理。

E 选项 句子 2 中, sipping... 在句尾, 充当伴随动作状语, 主句中只有一个动词 seemed, sipping their coffee 的逻辑主语等于 seemed 的主语 he, he sipped their coffee, 逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 A B E

第二步: 不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

B D 选项 句子 2 中的主句 he seemed to be disoriented 是原句宾语从句的内容, 而原句主句的内容 she noticed 在 B D 选项中变为插入语, 主从关系颠倒, 改变原句的强调重心。 ➤ 排除 B D

正确选项 C

10. Using a Doppler ultrasound device, fetal heartbeats can be detected by the twelfth week of pregnancy.

- (A) Using a Doppler ultrasound device, fetal heartbeats can be detected by the twelfth week of pregnancy.
- (B) Fetal heartbeats can be detected by the twelfth week of pregnancy, using a Doppler ultrasound device.
- (C) Detecting fetal heartbeats by the twelfth week of pregnancy, a physician can use a Doppler ultrasound device.
- (D) By the twelfth week of pregnancy, fetal heartbeats can be detected using a Doppler ultrasound device by a physician.
- (E) Using a Doppler ultrasound device, a physician can detect fetal heartbeats by the twelfth week of pregnancy.

必杀二步

一步: 逻辑主语

-ing 分词短语在句首: 逻辑主语等于主句的主语。

-ing 分词短语在句尾: 作伴随结果状语或者伴随动作状语; 作伴随结果状语时没有逻辑主语, 作伴随动作状语时逻辑主语等于主句的主语。

A 选项 fetal heartbeats(主句主语)use a Doppler ultrasound device, 逻辑意思不合理。

B D 选项 从逻辑意思上理解, using a Doppler ultrasound device 不可能作为伴随结果状语; 当其作为伴随动作状语时, 逻辑主语等于主句主语, fetal heartbeats use a Doppler ultrasound device, 逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 A B D

第二步: 不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

C 选项 把原句伴随状语的内容变为主句的内容, 主句谓语变成句首状语, 改变原句的重心。 ➤ 排除 C

正确选项 E

11. By installing special electric pumps, farmers' houses could be heated by the warmth from cows' milk, according to one agricultural engineer.

- (A) farmers' houses could be heated by the warmth from cows' milk, according to one

agricultural engineer

- (B) the warmth from cows' milk could be used by farmers to heat their houses, according to one agricultural engineer
- (C) one agricultural engineer reports that farmers could use the warmth from cows' milk to heat their houses
- (D) farmers, according to one agricultural engineer, could use the warmth from cows' milk to heat their houses
- (E) one agricultural engineer reports that farmers' houses could be heated by the warmth from cows' milk

读题

介词 + -ing 分词短语, + 主句, + according to...

必杀二步

一步:逻辑主语

介词 + 分词短语在句首,分词短语的逻辑主语等于主句的主语。

A 选项 主句主语 farmers' houses 不能成为 installing 的逻辑主语,因为房子不能执行安装抽水机这一动作。

B 选项 主句主语 the warmth 不能成为 installing 的逻辑主语。排除 A B

二步:不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

C E 选项 实义动词 report 随意添加,改变原句意思;并且原句主句中的内容变成了 that 宾语从句的内容,主次关系颠倒,改变原句的重心。排除 C E

正确选项 D

12. In addition to having more protein—than wheat does, the protein in rice is higher quality than that in wheat, with more of the amino acids essential to the human diet.

- (A) the protein in rice is higher quality than that in
- (B) rice has protein of higher quality than that in
- (C) the protein in rice is higher in quality than it is in
- (D) rice protein is higher in quality than it is in
- (E) rice has a protein higher in quality than

必杀二步

一步:逻辑主语

介词或介词短语 + 现在分词短语(如 by / in / without / in addition to doing...) 在句首,逻辑主语等于主句的主语。

A C 选项 主句主语 the protein 不能充当现在分词短语 having more protein 的逻辑主语。

D 选项 主语 rice protein 不能充当现在分词短语 having more protein 的逻辑主语。

排除 A C D

二步:比较对象的单一性

E 选项 比较对象引起争议:语法上 wheat 可以和 protein 比较,也可以和 rice 进行比较。

当和 protein 比较时,逻辑意思“稻米含有的蛋白质比稻米含有的麦子质量更高”不合理。改变比较对象,保证意思单一性的方法有两个:一是在 wheat 前加上 does,使 wheat 和 rice 比较不会引起争议,does 代替重复的动词 has;二是在 wheat 前加上 that in,that 代替重复的名词 protein,比较对象变成稻米含有的 protein 和麦子含有的 protein,逻辑意思合理。排除 E

正确选项 B

13. Defense attorneys have occasionally argued that their clients' misconduct stemmed from a reaction to something ingested, but in attributing criminal or delinquent behavior to some food allergy, the perpetrators are in effect told that they are not responsible for their actions.

- (A) in attributing criminal or delinquent behavior to some food allergy
- (B) if criminal or delinquent behavior is attributed to an allergy to some food
- (C) in attributing behavior that is criminal or delinquent to an allergy to some food
- (D) if some food allergy is attributed as the cause of criminal or delinquent behavior
- (E) in attributing a food allergy as the cause of criminal or delinquent behavior

读题

句子 1, but 句子 2.

第二步

一步:逻辑主语

在句子 2 中,介词 + 分词短语(in attributing...)在句首,分词短语的逻辑主语应等于主句的主语。

A C E 选项 主句主语 the perpetrators 不能充当 attributing 的逻辑主语,因为罪犯不能自己主动把犯罪行为归因于食物过敏。排除 A C E

二步:习惯用法

正确用法:sb. attribute X1(结果) to X2(原因) 或 X1(结果) is attributed to X2(原因)

D 选项 X1(原因) is attributed as the cause of X2(结果),搭配错误。

E 选项 attribute X1(原因) as the cause of X2(结果),搭配错误。排除 D E

补选

定语从句要尽可能简化

C 选项中, that is + adj. 修饰 behavior,定语不简洁,改为 adj. + behavior.

正确选项 B

用 if 条件从句代替介词 + 分词短语,避免了逻辑主语错误。

14. Alaska regularly deposits some of its profits from the sale of oil into a special fund, with the intention to sustain the state's economy after the exhaustion of its oil reserves.

- (A) fund, with the intention to sustain the state's economy after the exhaustion of its oil reserves.

- (B) fund, the intention of which is to sustain the state's economy after they have exhausted their oil reserves.
- (C) fund intended to sustain the state's economy after oil reserves are exhausted.
- (D) fund intended to sustain the state's economy after exhausting its oil reserves.
- (E) fund that they intend to sustain the state's economy after oil reserves are exhausted.

读题

Alaska deposits its profits into a fund, with the intention to...

必杀三步

一步:状语的合理性

A 选项 with the intention to sustain ... 搭配错, 应改为 with the intention of sustaining ..., 用作状语, sustaining 的逻辑主语等于句子主语 Alaska, 代入后逻辑意思 Alaska sustains the state's economy 不合理; 从上下文看, 应是 the special fund sustains the state's economy。排除 A

二步:代词指代

B E 选项 代词 they/their 语法上只能指代句子中惟一的复数名词 profits, 但逻辑意思上不合理, 所以代词 they/their 没有指代对象。排除 B E

三步:逻辑主语的判断

介词 + -ing 分词在句首, 逻辑主语等于主句的主语; 在句尾, 逻辑主语可能等于主句的主语, 也可能等于所修饰的动词的逻辑主语。

D 选项 after exhausting sth. 在句尾作状语就近修饰动词 sustain, 逻辑主语等于 sustain 的逻辑主语。Intended to sustain 作定语修饰 fund, 所以 sustain 的逻辑主语是 fund, the fund exhausts its oil reserves 逻辑意思不合理。排除 D

正确选项 C

15. In assessing the problems faced by rural migrant workers, the question of whether they are better off materially than the urban working poor is irrelevant.

- (A) In assessing the problems faced by rural migrant workers, the question of whether they are better off materially than the urban working poor is irrelevant.
- (B) The question of whether the rural migrant worker is better off materially than the urban working poor is irrelevant in assessing the problems that they face.
- (C) A question that is irrelevant in assessing the problems that rural migrant workers face is whether they are better off materially than the urban working poor.
- (D) In an assessment of the problems faced by rural migrant workers, the question of whether they are better off materially than the urban working poor is irrelevant.
- (E) The question of whether the rural migrant worker is better off materially than the urban working poor is irrelevant in an assessment of the problems that they face.

读题

介词 + -ing 分词短语, + 主句

必杀三步**一步:分词短语的逻辑主语**

介词 + 分词短语在句首,分词短语的逻辑主语等于主句的主语。

assessing the problems 的逻辑主语应该是人。

A 选项 主句主语 the question 不能充当分词短语 assessing the problems 的逻辑主语。

➡ 排除 A

二步:不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

C 选项 A question is whether... 强调问题的内容,而原句的基本含义是:the question is irrelevant(问题是不重要的)。所以,C 选项改变了原句的合理重心。 ➡ 排除 C

三步:代词指代

B E 选项 代词 they 没有指代对象,错。 ➡ 排除 B E

补遗**1> 回避逻辑主语问题**

介词 + 分词短语在句首必须判定逻辑主语,但在句尾就不用判断逻辑主语,如 B 选项,将分词短语改为名词短语也可以回避逻辑主语问题,如 D 选项改为 in an assessment of。

2> 分词短语作定语与定语从句作定语的区别

B E 选项中用 that they face 修饰 problems; D 选项用 faced by 修饰 problems。同等情况下-ed 分词作定语比定语从句更简洁,优先使用 faced by。

正确选项 D

16. In his research paper, Dr. Frosh, medical director of the Payne Whitney Clinic, distinguishes mood swings, which may be violent without their being grounded in mental disease, from genuine manic-depressive psychosis.

- (A) mood swings, which may be violent without their being grounded in mental disease, from genuine manic-depressive psychosis
- (B) mood swings, perhaps violent without being grounded in mental disease, and genuine manic-depressive psychosis
- (C) between mood swings, which may be violent without being grounded in mental disease, and genuine manic-depressive psychosis
- (D) between mood swings, perhaps violent without being grounded in mental disease, from genuine manic-depressive psychosis
- (E) genuine manic-depressive psychosis and mood swings, which may be violent without being grounded in mental disease

必杀二步**一步:习惯用法**

distinguish X1 from X2; distinguish between X1 and X2

B 选项 distinguish X1 and X2, 永远错。

D 选项 distinguish between X1 from X2, 永远错。

E 选项 distinguish X1 and X2, 永远错。 ➡ 排除 B D E

二步:-ing 分词的否定形式

-ing 分词前加 without 表示强烈否定: without doing...

A 选项 介词 + one's + doing... (without one's doing...), 永远错。 ✖ 排除 A

正确选项 C

17. Despite no proof that the consumption of any particular foods reverse hardening of the arteries, studies indicate that refraining from eating certain foods could help reverse blockage of coronary arteries, the blood vessels that feed the heart.

- (A) Despite no proof that the consumption of any particular foods reverse hardening of the arteries, studies indicate that refraining from eating certain foods could
- (B) Despite no foods having been proved to reverse hardening of the arteries when consumed, studies indicate that refraining from eating certain foods can
- (C) Although the consumption of no particular foods have been proved to reverse hardening of the arteries, studies indicate that to refrain from eating certain foods could
- (D) Although not proved that the consumption of any foods reverse hardening of the arteries, studies indicate that refraining from eating certain foods can
- (E) Although it has not been proved that the consumption of any particular food will reverse hardening of the arteries, studies indicate that refraining from eating certain foods can

读题

Despite no proof that... (具体化同位结构), studies indicate that doing sth. could help do...

必杀二步

一步:主谓一致

A 选项 proof 的同位语从句中,单数主语 consumption 与谓语动词 reverse 主谓不一致。

C 选项 although 状语从句中,单数主语 consumption 与复数谓语动词 have been proved 主谓不一致。

D 选项 consumption 与 reverse 主谓不一致。 ✖ 排除 A C D

二步:-ing 分词的完成时态

现在分词的完成时态不能作定语修饰名词。

B 选项 现在分词的完成时态 having been proved 作定语修饰 foods, 绝对错。 ✖ 排除 B

正确选项 E

it has been proved that..., it 作为形式主语指代后面的 that 从句, that 从句充当主语。

18. Once the economic and social usefulness of the motor car was demonstrated and with its superiority to the horse being proved, much of the early hostility to it in rural regions disappeared.

- (A) and with its superiority to the horse being
- (B) and its superiority over the horse had been
- (C) and its superiority to the horse

- (D) its superiority over the horse
(E) with its superiority to the horse having been

读题

once the usefulness was demonstrated and with sth. being proved, early hostility disappeared.

必杀二步

一步: 平行结构形式要对称

- A 选项 and 连接 once 从句和 with 介词短语, 两者形式不对称, 不能构成平行结构。
C 选项 and 连接 once 从句和名词短语 its superiority, 两者形式不对称。
D 选项 缺少连接词, 使名词短语 its superiority 垂悬, 功能不明确。 ➤ 排除 A C D

二步: -ing 分词的完成时态

-ing 分词的完成时态不能作定语修饰名词。

- E 选项 -ing 分词的完成时态 having been 放在名词 horse 后面, 作定语修饰 horse, 错。

➤ 排除 E

正确选项 B

19. As business grows more complex, students majoring in specialized areas like those of finance and marketing have been becoming increasingly successful in the job market.

- (A) majoring in specialized areas like those of finance and marketing have been becoming increasingly
(B) who major in such specialized areas as finance and marketing are becoming more and more
(C) who majored in specialized areas such as those of finance and marketing are being increasingly
(D) who major in specialized areas like those of finance and marketing have been becoming more and more
(E) having majored in such specialized areas as finance and marketing are being increasingly

读题

As..., students have been becoming increasingly successful.

必杀二步

一步: 举例的表达方式

介词 like + 名词, 表示比较, 不能表示举例。

表示举例的表达方法: for instance/for example/ whether it is X1 or X2 or X3/ such as.

- A D 选项 用 like those of 表示举例, 错。

C 选项 such as + 代词, 错; 正确用法: such as + n./ doing。 ➤ 排除 A C D

二步: -ing 分词的完成时态

-ing 分词的完成时态不能作定语修饰名词。

E 选项 having majored 作定语修饰 students, 错。 ➤ 排除 E

补选

1> 时态判断

as 从句使用一般现在时(意为“随着商业日趋复杂”),主句内容表达了这种趋势下所产生的结果。

A D 选项 主句为现在完成时,表示主句动作发生在 as 从句以前,逻辑关系不合理。

2> 实义动词不能随意省略 添加或改变

C E 选项 省略了原句的谓语动词 become,实义动词 become 强调变化与发展的过程,C E 选项中的 be 动词强调事物所处的状态。

正确选项 B

20. Cajuns speak a dialect brought to southern Louisiana by the four thousand Acadians who migrated there in 1755; their language is basically seventeenth-century French to which has been added English, Spanish, and Italian words.

- (A) to which has been added English, Spanish, and Italian words
- (B) added to which is English, Spanish, and Italian words
- (C) to which English, Spanish, and Italian words have been added
- (D) with English, Spanish, and Italian words having been added to it
- (E) and, in addition, English, Spanish, and Italian words are added

读题

133

分号前的句子没有划线,可以跳过不读。划线部分修饰名词短语 seventeenth-century French。

此题三步

一步:定语从句

A B 选项 which 作定语从句的关系代词,充当介词 to 的宾语,整个定语从句缺少主语。

➤ 排除 A B

二步:-ing 的完成时态不能作定语

D 选项 having been added to it 作定语修饰 words 绝对错。 ➤ 排除 D

三步:不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

E 选项 原句中划线部分作定语修饰 seventeenth-century French, E 选项把修饰关系改为并列关系,改变原句的重心;并且 are added 结构不完整,缺少 to + 宾语,意思含糊不清;add 的习惯表达为:sth. be added to sth. / sb. add sth. to sth.。

➤ 排除 E

正确选项 C

which 指代 seventeenth-century French,作 to 的宾语;English, Spanish, and Italian words have been added to seventeenth-century French.

21. As many as 300 of the 720 paintings attributed to Rembrandt may actually be the works of his students or other admirers.

- (A) the 720 paintings attributed to Rembrandt may
- (B) the 720 paintings attributed to be Rembrandt's night
- (C) the 720 paintings that were attributed to be by Rembrandt may
- (D) the 720 Rembrandt paintings that were once attributed to him night
- (E) Rembrandt's paintings, although 720 were once attributed to him, may

必杀三步

一步: 词的位置

词的位置决定词的作用, 决定词的形式。

B C 选项 attributed to be/do... 永远错, 因为 to 是介词, 后面必须跟名词, 不能跟动词。

排除 B C

第二步: 分词短语作定语与定语从句作定语的区别

同等情况下, -ed 分词短语作定语比定语从句 that/which/who be -ed 作定语更简洁。

C D 选项 that 定语从句修饰 paintings 不简洁。排除 C D

第三步: 不能改变原句的合理意思

E 选项 随意添加转折连词 although, 转折关系强加, 改变原句的合理意思。排除 E

正确选项 A

22. The Wallerstein study indicates that even after a decade young men and women still experience some of the effects of a divorce occurring when a child.

- (A) occurring when a child
- (B) occurring when children
- (C) that occurred when a child
- (D) that occurred when they were children
- (E) that has occurred as each was a child

必杀二步

一步: 状语从句的省略形式

状语从句的省略形式: 表示转折、时间、条件的连词 + 形容词短语 / 分词短语

错误形式: 表示转折、时间、条件的连词 + 介词短语 / 名词短语

A B C 选项 when + 名词(a child / children), 错 排除 A B C

第二步: 时态判断

E 选项 定语从句使用现在完成时(has occurred)表示到说话为止离婚刚出现, 逻辑意思不合理。排除 E

补遗

定语从句作定语和-ing 分词短语作定语的区别

-ing 分词短语作定语: 强调动作的多次性、重复性和客观性, 无明确的时间概念; 定语从句作定语: 强调动作的一次性, 强调具体时间、具体行为。

A B 选项 分词短语 occurring 作定语强调离婚的多次性、重复性和客观性, 逻辑意思不合理, 错。

D 选项 定语从句 that occurred 作定语, 强调离婚是具体时间 (when they were children)

的具体行为, 逻辑意思合理。

正确选项 D

23. A recent study of ancient clay deposits has provided new evidence supporting the theory of global forest fires ignited by a meteorite impact that contributed to the extinction of the dinosaurs and many other creatures some 65 million years ago.

- (A) supporting the theory of global forest fires ignited by a meteorite impact that
- (B) supporting the theory that global forest fires ignited by a meteorite impact
- (C) that supports the theory of global forest fires that were ignited by a meteorite impact and that
- (D) in support of the theory that global forest fires were ignited by a meteorite impact and that
- (E) of support for the theory of a meteorite impact that ignited global forest fires and

第二步

一步: 定语从句修饰对象的合理性

原句主语... study of ancient clay deposits 表明, the extinction of the dinosaurs and many other creatures 与 global forest fires 有更直接的因果关系, 所以定语从句 that contributed to... 修饰 global forest fires 更合理。

- A 选项 定语从句 that contributed to... 就近修饰 a meteorite impact, 错。
- D 选项 定语从句 that contributed to... 只能修饰 the theory, the theory contributed to the extinction of the dinosaurs and many other creatures 逻辑意思不合理; 此外, and 前的 that 从句为同位语从句, and 后的 that 从句为定语从句, 功能不同, 不能并列。
- E 选项 定语从句 that ignited global forest fires and contributed to... 就近修饰 a meteorite impact, 其中, a meteorite impact contributed to the extinction of the dinosaurs and many other creatures 逻辑意思不合理; sth. of support for sth. 不符合习惯搭配, 永远错。排除 A D E

第二步: -ing 分词短语作定语和定语从句作定语的区别

-ing 分词短语作定语强调动作的多次性、重复性和客观性, 无明确时间概念; 定语从句作定语强调动作的一次性、具体时间的具体行为。

- C 选项 evidence 对 theory 的 support 行为具有多次性、重复性和客观性, 不能使用定语从句 that supports the theory 强调 support 行为的一次性。排除 C

正确选项 B

24. Egyptians are credited as having pioneered embalming methods as long ago as 2650 B. C.

- (A) as having
- (B) with having
- (C) to have
- (D) as the ones who

(E) for being the ones who

必杀一步

一步: 习惯用法

be credit with/to: with 和 to 都是介词。

A D 选项 be credit as 永远错。

C 选项 be credit to have, to 是介词, 后面不能加动词。

E 选项 be credit for 永远错。一步到位, 排除 A C D E

正确选项 B

25. Pablo Picasso, the late Spanish painter, credited African art with having had a strong influence on his work.

(A) with having had

(B) for its having

(C) to have had

(D) for having

(E) in that it had

必杀一步

一步: 习惯用法

sth. be credit with/to(介词); sb. credit sth. with/ to(介词) sth.

B D E 选项 credit for/in 永远错。

C 选项 介词 to 后面不能加动词。一步到位, 排除 B C D E

正确选项 A

26. Rather than continue to produce most of the items necessary for subsistence, a growing number of farm families during the first decades of the nineteenth century began to specialize in the production of grain or cotton and to use the cash proceeds from selling their crops for buying necessities.

(A) selling their crops for buying

(B) the sales of their crops for buying

(C) their selling of crops so as to buy

(D) their selling crops for buying of

(E) the sale of their crops to buy

读题

Rather than continue to..., a growing number of sb. began to specialize in... and to use ...

必杀二步

一步: -ing 形式和动作性名词的区别

A C D 选项 selling 强调动作。

B E 选项 动作性名词 the sale of sth. 强调结果。



根据上下文逻辑关系, 现金收入(the cash proceeds)应来自农产品的销售结果, the sale of their crops)。✂️排除 A C D

第二步: 动作目的的表达

动作的目的用 to do 表示。

A B D 选项 用 for doing 表示动作的目的, 错。✂️排除 A B D

正确选项 E

27. Many investors base their choice between bonds and stocks on comparing bond yields to the dividends available on common stocks.

- (A) between bonds and stocks on comparing bond yields to
- (B) among bonds and stocks on comparisons of bond yields to
- (C) between bonds and stocks on comparisons of bond yields with
- (D) among bonds and stocks on comparing bond yields and
- (E) between bonds and stocks on comparing bond yields with

此题二步

一步: 比较结构

compare to 与 compare with 的区别: compare X1 to X2, 把 X1 比成 X2, X1 和 X2 是不同种类的事物, 强调相似性; compare X1 with X2, 把 X1 和 X2 进行比较, X1 和 X2 是同类事物, 强调差异性。

A B 选项 把 bond yields 比成 dividends on stocks 逻辑意思不合理。

D 选项 compare...and...搭配错误。✂️排除 A B D

第二步: 动作性名词和-ing 形式的区别

动作性名词强调结果、状态; -ing 形式强调动作、行为。

根据逻辑意思: 投资者应以比较的结果来做出选择, 所以 C 选项 comparison 比 E 选项 comparing 更好。✂️排除 E

补选

习惯用法

两者之间选择, 用 choice between...and...表达。

B D 选项 among...and...永远错。✂️排除 B D

正确选项 C

28. Organized in 1966 by the Fish and Wildlife Service, the Breeding Bird Survey uses annual roadside counts along established routes for monitoring of population changes of as many as, or of more than 250 bird species, including 180 songbirds.

- (A) for monitoring of population changes of as many as, or of
- (B) to monitor population changes of as many, or
- (C) to monitor changes in the populations of
- (D) that monitors population changes of
- (E) that monitors changes in populations of as many as, or

必需二步**一步:动作的目的表达**

动作的目的用不定式 to do 表示: use...to do....

A 选项 for monitoring 表示目的, 错。

D E 选项 定语从句 that monitors...不能表示目的。 排除 A D E

二步:同级比较

B 选项 缺少 as 与 as many 构成习惯搭配, 表示同级比较。 排除 B

正确选项 C

29. The Coast Guard is conducting tests to see whether pigeons can be trained to help find survivors of wrecks at sea.

- (A) to see whether pigeons can be trained to help find
- (B) to see whether pigeons can be trained as help to find
- (C) to see if pigeons can be trained for helping to find
- (D) that see if pigeons are able to be trained in helping to find
- (E) that see whether pigeons are able to be trained for help in finding

必需二步**一步:动作目的的表达**

conduct tests 的目的是 to see whether..., pigeons can be trained 的目的是 to help find sb.。 排除 B D E

二步:标准书面语原则

口语中 if 可以表示是否, 标准书面语中 if 只能表示如果, 引导条件状语从句。

C 选项 if 表示是否, 在标准书面语中不能接受, 应该用 whether 替换。 排除 C

正确选项 A

30. Domestic automobile manufacturers have invested millions of dollars into research to develop cars more gasoline-efficient even than presently on the road.

- (A) into research to develop cars more gasoline-efficient even than presently on the road
- (B) into research for developing even more gasoline-efficient cars on the road than at present
- (C) for research for cars to be developed that are more gasoline-efficient even than presently the road
- (D) in research to develop cars even more gasoline-efficient than those at present on the road
- (E) in research for developing cars that are even more gasoline-efficient than presently on the road

必需二步**一步:动作目的的表达**

动作的目的用 to do 表示。

B E 选项 用 for developing 表示动作目的,错。

C 选项 用 for research 表示动作目的,错。 ➤ 排除 B C E

第二步:比较对象之间要有可比性

A 选项 名词 cars 与介词短语 on the road 没有可比性。 ➤ 排除 A

补选

习惯搭配

A B 选项 invest some money into sth. 不符合习惯搭配,正确用法:invest some money in sth.。

正确选项 D

比较从句中用 those 代替作为比较对象的重复复数名词 cars,使比较对象对等。

31. Researchers have questioned the use of costly and experimental diagnostic tests to identify food allergies, such as milk, that supposedly disrupt normal behavior.

(A) to identify food allergies, such as

(B) to identify food allergies, like

(C) to identify food allergies, such as to

(D) for identifying food allergies, like that of

(E) for identifying food allergies, such as for

读题

sb. have questioned the use of sth. to identify food allergies, 插入语, that 定语从句, that supposedly disrupt normal behavior 跳过插入语,修饰 food allergies。

必杀二步

一步:动作目的的表达

动作的目的用 to do 表示。

D E 选项 for doing 表示动作的目的,错。 ➤ 排除 D E

第二步:举例的表达方式

A 选项 such as 虽然表示举例,但 milk food 不属于 allergies 的一种,逻辑上不合理。

B 选项 like 只能表示比较,不能表示举例。 ➤ 排除 A B

正确选项 C

名词的省略

such as 后面加名词短语或名词短语的省略形式或-ing 形式,如:such as an allergy to milk,省略了 an allergy,留下介词短语 to milk。

32. Under a provision of the Constitution that was never applied, Congress has been required to call a convention for considering possible amendments to the document when formally asked to do it by the legislatures of two-thirds of the states.

(A) was never applied, Congress has been required to call a convention for considering possible amendments to the document when formally asked to do it

- (B) was never applied, there has been a requirement that Congress call a convention for consideration of possible amendments to the document when asked to do it formally
- (C) was never applied, whereby Congress is required to call a convention for considering possible amendments to the document when asked to do it formally
- (D) has never been applied, whereby Congress is required to call a convention to consider possible amendments to the document when formally asked to do so
- (E) has never been applied, Congress is required to call a convention to consider possible amendments to the document when formally asked to do so

必杀二步

一步:动作目的的表达

动作目的用 to do 表示。

A C 选项 call a convention for considering, 用 for doing 表示目的, 错。

B 选项 call a convention for consideration, 用 for + 抽象名词表示目的, 错。

排除 A B C

二步:句子结构的完整性

C D 选项 whereby 引导定语从句, 整个句子结构变为: under 介词短语, + whereby 定语从句, 缺少主句。排除 C D

补遗

1> 绝对错误形式

do + 代词(it/this/that/these/those 等)在标准书面语中永远错。正确形式为: do so。

A B C 选项 do it 永远错。

B 选项 “there be + a/an + 动作性名词”永远错, 一般改为 it is + -ed + that...。

2> 修饰语位置的改变

A D E 选项 formally 放在 asked to do 的前面, 就近修饰 asked, 逻辑意思合理。

B C 选项 formally 放在 asked to do 的后面, 可能就近修饰 to do, 逻辑意思不合理。

正确选项 E

状语从句的省略

when formally asked to do so 是状语从句的省略形式, 逻辑主语等于主句的主语。

33. The recent surge in the number of airplane flights has clogged the nation's air-traffic control system, to lead to 55 percent more delays at airports, and prompts fears among some officials that safety is being compromised.

- (A) to lead to 55 percent more delays at airports, and prompts
- (B) leading to 55 percent more delay at airports and prompting
- (C) to lead to a 55 percent increase in delay at airports and prompt
- (D) to lead to an increase of 55 percent in delays at airports, and prompted
- (E) leading to a 55-percent increase in delays at airports and prompting

续题

The surge has clogged the system, to lead to..., and prompts...

秒杀二步

一步:目的关系的合理性

A C D 选项 to lead 表示动作目的,“飞机数量的增加导致空中交通管制系统的阻塞,目的是为了增加延误和引起恐慌”,逻辑意思不合理;并且 A 选项 to lead and prompts, D 选项 to lead and prompted 形式不对称,不能构成不定式并列。✂️排除 A C D

二步:表达的有效性

B 选项 55 percent more delay 逻辑意思含糊不清,应使用表达更有效的方式 a 55-percent increase in delays。✂️排除 B

正确选项 E

伴随结果状语

-ing 分词短语 leading to... and prompting... 在句尾作伴随结果状语。

84. It is an oversimplified view of cattle raising to say that all one has to do with cattle is leave them alone while they feed themselves, corral them, and to drive them to market when the time is ripe.

- (A) all one has to do with cattle is leave them alone while they feed themselves, corral them, and to
- (B) all one has to do with cattle is to leave them alone to feed themselves, to corral them, and
- (C) all one has to do with cattle is leave them alone while they feed themselves and then corral them and
- (D) the only thing that has to be done with cattle is leave them alone while they feed themselves, corral them, and
- (E) the only thing that has to be done with cattle is to leave them alone while they feed themselves, to corral them, and

秒杀二步

一步:习惯性省略

all sb. have to do is do...and do...; all 后的定语从句省略关系代词 that, be 动词后的不定式省略 to。

A B 选项 都不符合上述省略原则。✂️排除 A B

二步:简洁性原则

D E 选项 the only thing that 表达不简洁,是永远错误结构,必须用 all 替换。

✂️排除 D E

正确选项 C

leave and corral and drive, 三个动作之间都加 and, 强调三个动作的连续性。

85. A recent study has found that within the past few years, many doctors had

elected early retirement rather than face the threats of lawsuits and the rising costs of malpractice insurance.

- (A) had elected early retirement rather than face
- (B) had elected early retirement instead of facing
- (C) have elected retiring early instead of facing
- (D) have elected to retire early rather than facing
- (E) have elected to retire early rather than face

必杀二步

一步: 时态判断

现在完成时的时间标志之一: within/during/over/in + the past/last/recent + 时间短语。

within the past few years 决定了宾语从句必须使用现在完成时。 ➡ 排除 A B

二步: 不定式的习惯用法

1 > 表示“选择”的动词的宾语用不定式: elect/choose + to do.

2 > rather than 放在句中或句尾, 一般用 rather than + do (省略 to 的不定式); 放在句首, 可以用 rather than + do (省略 to 的不定式) 或者 rather than + doing.

C 选项 elect retiring 不符合习惯搭配。

D 选项 rather than facing 不符合习惯搭配。 ➡ 排除 C D

补选

用词倾向性

在标准书面语中倾向使用 rather than, 而较少使用 instead of.

正确选项 E

因为 rather than 后面连接的是省略 to 的不定式, 所以 to retire 和 face 仍然算形式上的对称。

36. The concept of the grand jury dates from the twelfth -century, when Henry II of England ordered panels of common citizens should prepare lists of who were their communities' suspected criminals.

- (A) should prepare lists of who were their communities' suspected criminals
- (B) would do the preparation of lists of their communities' suspected criminals
- (C) preparing lists of suspected criminals in their communities
- (D) the preparing of a list of suspected criminals in their communities
- (E) to prepare lists of suspected criminals in their communities

读题

主句, when 从句。

必杀一步

一步: 习惯用法

order sb. to do sth.

A 选项 order sb. should do, 不符合习惯搭配。

B 选项 order sb. would do, 不符合习惯搭配。

C 选项 order sb. doing sth., 不符合习惯搭配。

D 选项 order sb. sth., 不符合习惯搭配。一步到位, 排除 A B C D

正确选项 E

37. Joan of Arc, a young Frenchwoman who claimed to be divinely inspired, turned the tide of English victories in her country by liberating the city of Orleans and she persuaded Charles VII of France to claim his throne.

- (A) she persuaded Charles VII of France to claim his throne
- (B) persuaded Charles VII of France in claiming his throne
- (C) persuading that the throne be claimed by Charles VII of France
- (D) persuaded Charles VII of France to claim his throne
- (E) persuading that Charles VII of France should claim the throne

读题

Joan of Arc, 同位语, turned ... by ... and she persuaded sb. to claim ...

此题第二步

一步: 习惯用法

persuade sb. to do

B 选项 persuade sb. in doing, 永远错。

C E 选项 persuade + that 从句, 永远错。排除 B C E

二步: 并列句的省略

两个句子并列, 主语相同, 句子 2 中重复的主语必须省略。

A 选项 Joan of Arc turned ... and she persuaded ..., 句子 2 中的主语 she 没有省略, 错。

排除 A

正确选项 D

38. The only way for growers to salvage frozen citrus is to process them quickly into juice concentrate before they rot when warmer weather returns.

- (A) to process them quickly into juice concentrate before they rot when warmer weather returns
- (B) if they are quickly processed into juice concentrate before warmer weather returns to rot them
- (C) for them to be processed quickly into juice concentrate before the fruit rots when warmer weather returns
- (D) if the fruit is quickly processed into juice concentrate before they rot when warmer weather returns
- (E) to have it quickly processed into juice concentrate before warmer weather returns and rots the fruit

读题

The only way for sb. to do is to do.

必杀二步

一步:代词指代

A 选项 代词 them 语法上指代前面的复数名词 growers, 逻辑上应指代单数物质名词 citrus, 代词指代在语法上和逻辑上产生矛盾。 ➤ 排除 A

二步:不定式的习惯用法

the way to do 作主语, is 后面只能加不定式 to do, the way for sb. to do is to do 是习惯用法。 ➤ 排除 B C D

正确选项 E

代词指代不清的修改方法

have it done, it 指代物质名词 citrus, 语法、逻辑上都合理。句子结尾用一个概括性名词 the fruit 代替具体名词 citrus, 避免代词指代不清。

39. The Commerce Department announced that the economy grew during the second quarter at a 7.5 percent annual rate, while inflation eased when it might have been expected for it to rise.

- (A) it might have been expected for it to rise
- (B) it might have been expected to rise
- (C) it might have been expected that it should rise
- (D) its rise might have been expected
- (E) there might have been an expectation it would rise

读题

sb. announced that 从句, while inflation eased (while 从句) + when 从句。

必杀三步

一步:习惯用法

A 选项 sth. be expected for sth. to do, 不符合习惯搭配。

C 选项 sth. be expected + that 从句, 不符合习惯搭配。

正确用法: sth. be expected to do; it is expected that..., it 作形式主语指代 that 从句。

➤ 排除 A C

二步:不能改变原句的合理重心

原句 when 从句的主语 it 指代 inflation, when 从句强调 inflation。

D 选项 用 its rise 代替 it, when 从句强调 rise, 改变原句的重心。 ➤ 排除 D

三步:永远错误的形式

E 选项 there be + a/an + 动作性名词, 永远错, 一般改为 it is + -ed that...。

➤ 排除 E

正确选项 B

40. A firm that specializes in the analysis of handwriting claims from a one-page writ-

ing sample that it can assess more than three hundred personality traits, including enthusiasm, imagination, and ambition.

- (A) from a one-page writing sample that it can assess
- (B) from a one-page writing sample it has the ability of assessing
- (C) the ability, from a one-page writing sample, of assessing
- (D) to be able, from a one-page writing sample, to assess
- (E) being able to assess, from a one-page writing sample

必杀二步

一步:习惯搭配

ability 的习惯搭配:ability to do, ability of sb. to do

claim 的习惯搭配:claim to do, claim + that 从句

B 选项 claim 后缺少 that 引导宾语从句。

C 选项 the ability of doing, 不符合习惯搭配。

E 选项 claim being/doing 永远错。 ➤ 排除 B C E

二步:修饰对象的合理性

A B 选项 from a one-page writing sample 的位置决定了介词短语修饰 claims, claim 的依据是 a one-page writing sample, 逻辑意思不合理。从逻辑上看, a one-page writing sample (样本) 应是 assess(评估)的依据。 ➤ 排除 A B

补选

能力和可能性的区别

A 选项 can assess... 表示公司可能分析出 300 多种性格。

D E 选项 be able to assess... 表示公司有能力分析出 300 多种性格。

从逻辑上看, 专门从事笔迹分析的公司应有能力而不是可能分析出 300 多种性格, 所以优先选择表能力的短语 be able to assess。

正确选项 D

from a one-page writing sample 修饰 be able to assess, 修饰关系合理。

41. Federal incentives now encourage investing capital in commercial office buildings despite vacancy rates in existing structures that are exceptionally high and no demand for new construction.

- (A) investing capital in commercial office buildings despite vacancy rates in existing structures that are exceptionally high and
- (B) capital investment in commercial office buildings, even though vacancy rates in existing structures are exceptionally high and there is
- (C) capital to be invested in commercial office buildings even though there are exceptionally high vacancy rates in existing structures with
- (D) investing capital in commercial office buildings even though the vacancy rates are exceptionally high in existing structures with
- (E) capital investment in commercial office buildings despite vacancy rates in existing structures that are exceptionally high, and although there is

此条二步**一步:习惯用法**

正确用法:encourage sb. to do; encourage sth.。

A D 选项 encourage doing 永远错。

C 选项 encourage to be done(被动语态)永远错。 ➤ 排除 A C D

二步:平行结构形式要对称

E 选项 and 连接介词短语 despite sth. 和状语从句 although there is..., 形式不对称。

➤ 排除 E

补遗**1> 修饰对象的合理性**

A E 选项 定语从句 that are exceptionally high 语法上就近修饰 structures, 但逻辑上跳跃修饰 vacancy rates, 修饰对象有争议。

2> 不能改变原句的合理重心

C D 选项 with 介词短语使原来的并列关系变成从属关系, 改变原句的重心。

正确选项 B

第六章

GMAT

平行结构

两个或两个以上互相连接而又属于同一层次并有相同句法功能的语言结构叫做平行结构。

两个以上的成分构成平行结构，通常只在最后一个并列项之前用并列连词，其他成分之间用逗号连接。但有时也有全用连词的情况，这时是为了修辞的需要，也还有同时用逗号又用连词的情况，以加强语气。

GMAT 考试中，平行结构的分析和使用必须遵循四大原则：形式对称、概念对等、功能相同、意思单一。

一、形式对称原则

1. 平行结构的标志：

- 1) 连接词：and, or, but, yet
- 2) 短语：rather than; not only...but also...; from...to...; either...or...; neither...nor...; between...and...; both...and...; not...but rather...; not...but...; ...as well as...

2. 形式绝对对称和功能性相对对称

平行结构的并列项通常是同一类型的语言结构(形式绝对对称)，但不同类型的语言结构只要属于同一层次并具有相同的句法功能，也可成为并列项(功能性相对对称)。例如：

The student answered the question promptly and without mistakes. (功能性相对对称)

3. 重要的平行结构

- 1) 介词短语与介词短语并列
- 2) 名词(短语)与名词(短语)并列，尤其是动作性名词(短语)的并列
- 3) 动词(短语)与动词(短语)并列
- 4) 分词短语与分词短语并列
- 5) 现在分词可以和过去分词并列，作定语
- 6) 形容词与形容词并列
- 7) 名词短语可以和 what 从句并列
- 8) 副词短语可以和介词短语并列，作状语
- 9) than 从句可以和介词短语并列
- 10) 不定式与不等式并列，除第一个不定式的 to 不能省略外，其他并列的不定式的 to 可以省略
- 11) for doing A, not B
- 12) be likely to do... and be unable to do... (be 不能省略)
- 13) 不同时态的动词或动词短语并列
- 14) 宾语从句并列，连词 that 不能省略：verb. + that..., that..., and that...
- 15) 定语从句并列：n. + in which..., in which..., and in which

二、概念对等原则

1. 具体名词和抽象名词概念不对等
2. 名称名词和动作性名词概念不对等
3. 整体概念和部分概念不对等
4. 泛指和特指概念不对等

三、功能相同原则

1. 不同类型的从句不能够并列,因为从句的功能不相同。如:宾语从句和同位语从句不能并列,定语从句和宾语从句不能并列。

2. 不同功能的定语从句不能并列,因为关系词在定语从句中充当不同的成分。如:n. + where...and in which...不能并列,n. + where...and who...不能并列,但是 n. + who...and whose...可以并列。

四、意思单一原则

在平行结构中,并列项之间的连接词的连接对象不能引起争议。当连接词的连接对象引起争议时,有两种修改方法:

1. 根据习惯搭配添加相应的介词:如 call for A and for B; suspect sb. of doing A and of doing B。

2. 改变并列项的位置:如 the growing demand for housing, traffic congestion, and longer commuting trips 改为 traffic congestion, longer commuting trips, and the growing demand for housing。

练习题及其详解

1. Doctors generally agree that such factors as cigarette smoking, eating rich foods high in fats, and alcohol consumption not only do damage by themselves but also aggravate genetic predispositions toward certain diseases.

- (A) not only do damage by themselves but also aggravate
- (B) do damage by themselves but also are aggravating to
- (C) are damaging by themselves but also are aggravating
- (D) not only do damage by themselves, they are also aggravating to
- (E) are doing damage by themselves, and they are also aggravating

读题

sb. agree that such factors as...not only do damage ...but also aggravate...

此题一步

一步:习惯用法

B C D E 选项 都不符合 not only...but also...这一固定搭配。 ➤ 一步到位,排除 B C D E

正确选项 A

2. Many policy experts say that shifting a portion of health-benefit costs back to the workers helps to control the employer's costs, but also helps to limit medical spending by making patients more careful consumers.

- (A) helps to control the employer's costs, but also helps
- (B) helps the control of the employer's costs, and also
- (C) not only helps to control the employer's costs, but also helps
- (D) helps to control not only the employer's costs, but

(E) not only helps to control the employer's costs, and also helps

读题

sb. say that shifting sth. helps, but also helps

必杀一步

一步:习惯搭配

not only...but also... 一步到位,排除 A B D E

正确选项 C

3. In the 1950's astronomers were divided between those who believed the universe began in a cosmic explosion (the "big bang") with those who favored the model of an eternal and infinite steady-state universe.

- (A) universe began in a cosmic explosion (the "big bang") with
- (B) universe began with a cosmic explosion (the "big bang") and
- (C) universe had a beginning a cosmic explosion (the "big bang") or
- (D) universe's beginning was a cosmic explosion (the "big bang") or
- (E) universe's beginning was a cosmic explosion (the "big bang") against

读题

Astronomers were divided between those who...with those who...

必杀一步

一步:平行结构

习惯搭配: between...and...

A 选项 between...with...永远错。

C D 选项 between...or...永远错。

E 选项 between...against...永远错。 一步到位,排除 A C D E

正确选项 B

4. From the time of its defeat by the Germans in 1940 until its liberation in 1944, France was a bitter and divided country; a kind of civil war raged in the Vichy government between those who wanted to collaborate with the Nazis with those who opposed them.

- (A) between those who wanted to collaborate with the Nazis with those who opposed
- (B) between those who wanted to collaborate with the Nazis and those who opposed
- (C) between those wanting to collaborate with the Nazis with those opposing
- (D) among those who wanted to collaborate with the Nazis and those who opposed
- (E) among those wanting to collaborate with the Nazis with those opposing

读题

From the time of ..., France was a...country; a kind of civil war raged between those with those.

必杀一步

一步:习惯搭配

between...and...

A C 选项 between those with those 不符合习惯搭配。

D E 选项 among 用于三者或三者以上之间,两者之间用 between...and...。

一步到位,排除 A C D E

正确选项 B

5. The key to control over the Eurasian steppes lay in the nomad's ability to use the horse both as a means of transport but also as an effective military tool.

(A) but also as

(B) or as

(C) and as

(D) or

(E) and also

读题

The key to control over...lay in the ability to use...both as...but also as...

必杀一步

一步:平行结构

both...and...前后形式必须对称: use the horse both as...and as...。

一步到位,排除 A B D E

正确选项 C

151 

6. The computer software being designed for a project studying Native American access to higher education will not only meet the needs of that study, but also has the versatility and power of facilitating similar research endeavors.

(A) but also has the versatility and power of facilitating

(B) but also have the versatility and power to facilitate

(C) but it also has the versatility and power to facilitate

(D) and also have the versatility and power of facilitating

(E) and it also has such versatility and power that it can facilitate

读题

The computer software will not only meet..., but also has...

必杀一步

一步:习惯用法

not only...but also...前后形式必须对称。

A 选项 not only do, but also does 动词形式不对称。

C D E 选项 不符合 not only...but also...的习惯搭配。一步到位,排除 A C D E

补选

习惯搭配

the power to do; the power of + n.

A D 选项 the power of doing 搭配错。

正确选项 B

7. Biologists believe that they have found one of the substances that tell individual genes both when to become active and when to remain quiescent in the earliest phases of an embryo's development.

- (A) tell individual genes both when to become active and when to remain
- (B) tell individual genes both at which time they should become active or should remain
- (C) tells individual genes both when to become active or remain
- (D) tells individual genes both when to become active or when to remain
- (E) will tell an individual gene both about when it should become active and remain

必杀一步

一步：平行结构

both...and...前后形式要对称。

B C D 选项 both...or...搭配错。

E 选项 both + 介词短语 + and + 动词,形式不对称;此外,将来时态 will tell 没有理由成立。 ➤ 一步到位,排除 B C D E

补选

定语从句的修饰对象

one of + 复数名词 + that 从句,that 从句修饰复数名词; the only one of / the one of + 复数名词 + that 从句,that 从句修饰单数名词 the only one/ the one。

C D 选项 定语从句修饰复数名词 the substances, 主谓不一致。 ➤ 排除 C D

正确选项 A

8. It is a special feature of cell aggregation in the developing nervous system that in most regions of the brain the cells not only adhere to one another and also adopt some preferential orientation.

- (A) to one another and also adopt
- (B) one to the other, and also they adopt
- (C) one to the other, but also adopting
- (D) to one another but also adopt
- (E) to each other, also adopting

读题

It is a feature + that 从句; it 作形式主语,指代 that 从句。

必杀二步

一步：习惯用法

not only...but also... ➤ 排除 A B E

二步：平行结构形式要对称

C 选项 not only adhere...but also adopting, adhere 和 adopting 形式不对称。✂ 排除 C

正确选项 D

9. The psychologist William James believed that facial expressions not only provide a visible sign of an emotion, actually contributing to the feeling itself.

- (A) emotion, actually contributing to the feeling itself
- (B) emotion but also actually contributing to the feeling itself
- (C) emotion but also actually contribute to the feeling itself
- (D) emotion; they also actually contribute to the feeling of it
- (E) emotion; the feeling itself is also actually contributed to by them

读题

sb. believed that sth. not only provide, but also contribute.

必杀一步

一步:习惯用法

not only...but also...前后必须使用对称形式。

A D E 选项 都没有使用 not only...but also...的习惯搭配。

B 选项 not only do but also doing, 平行结构前后形式不对称。

✂ 一步到位, 排除 A B D E

正确选项 C

153

10. The winds that howl across the Great Plains not only blow away valuable topsoil, thereby reducing the potential crop yield of a tract of land, and also damage or destroy young plants.

- (A) and also damage or destroy
- (B) as well as damaging or destroying
- (C) but they also cause damage or destroy
- (D) but also damage or destroy
- (E) but also causing damage or destroying

必杀二步

一步:习惯用法

A B C 选项 都没有使用 not only...but also...这一习惯搭配。✂ 排除 A B C

二步:平行结构形式要对称

未划线部分 not only 后使用复数动词 blow away, 为保持平行结构的形式对称, but also 后也必须使用复数动词。

E 选项 blow away...和 causing...形式不对称。✂ 排除 E

正确选项 D

11. Slips of the tongue do not necessarily reveal concealed beliefs or intentions but rather are the result from the competition between various processing mechanisms in

the brain.

- (A) but rather are the result from (B) and instead are the result from
(C) being rather the result of (D) and rather result from
(E) but rather result from

读题

sth. do not reveal...but rather...

必杀一步

一步: 平行结构

习惯搭配 not...but rather..., not...but... 前后形式要对称, 概念要对等。

be 动词和实义动词形式上不能对称。 ➡ 排除 A B C D

正确选项 E

not reveal but rather result from, 实义动词 reveal 与实义动词 result from 对称。

12. The root systems of most flowering perennials either become too crowded, which results in loss in vigor, and spread too far outward, producing a bare center.

- (A) which results in loss in vigor, and spread
(B) resulting in loss in vigor, or spreading
(C) with the result of loss of vigor, or spreading
(D) resulting in loss of vigor, or spread
(E) with a resulting loss of vigor, and spread

必杀二步

一步: 习惯用法

A E 选项 either...and... 搭配错, 应使用 either...or...。 ➡ 排除 A E

二步: 平行结构形式要对称

B C 选项 either do or doing, 动词形式不对称。 ➡ 排除 B C

补选

非限制定语从句

在标准书面语中, 非限制定语从句的关系代词 which 不能指整个句子, 正确的表达是: 句子, -ing...; 句子 + n. 结尾, which... (which 引导的从句修饰 n.)。

A 选项 关系代词 which 没有指代对象。

正确选项 D

-ing 分词短语 resulting in 作动词 become 的伴随结构状语。

13. Among the objects found in the excavated temple were small terra-cotta effigies left by supplicants who were either asking the goddess Bona Dea's aid in healing physical and mental ills or thanking her for such help.

- (A) in healing physical and mental ills or thanking her for such help
(B) in healing physical and mental ills and to thank her for helping
(C) in healing physical and mental ills, and thanking her for helping

(D) to heal physical and mental ills or to thank her for such help

(E) to heal physical and mental ills or thanking her for such help

读题

介词短语在句首的全倒装结构: Among the objects were small effigies.
left by... 修饰主语 effigies.

必杀二步

一步: 平行结构

either... or... 前后形式要对称。

B C 选项 either... and... 搭配错。

D 选项 either doing or to do 前后形式不对称。 ➤ 排除 B C D

二步: 习惯用法

aid 作为名词, aid in doing sth. / aid to doing sth. (to 作为介词); aid 作为及物动词, aid sb.;

aid 作为不及物动词, aid in doing sth.。

E 选项 aid 作为名词, aid to heal ills 搭配错。 ➤ 排除 E

正确选项 A

14. It is not likely that the competitive imbalance that now exists between the United States with all major industrial nations will be redressed during the foreseeable future.

(A) with all major industrial nations will be redressed during

(B) with all other major industrial nations will be redressed within

(C) with all other major industrial nations will be redressed during

(D) and all major industrial nations will be redressed during

(E) and all other major industrial nations will be redressed within

读题

It is not likely that the competitive imbalance that... will be redressed

必杀二步

一步: 习惯搭配

A B C 选项 between... with... 不符合习惯搭配, 正确的搭配为 between... and...。

➤ 排除 A B C

二步: 比较结构

D 选项 the United States 从属于 all major industrial nations, 必须用 other 把它自身排除在从属范围之外才能表达两者间的对比关系。D 选项缺 other, 对比关系不合理。

➤ 排除 D

正确选项 E

15. Under the Safe Drinking Water Act, the Environmental Protection Agency is required either to approve individual state plans for controlling the discharge of wastes into underground water or that they enforce their own plan for states without ade-

quate regulations.

- (A) that they enforce their (B) for enforcing their
(C) they should enforce their (D) it should enforce its
(E) to enforce its

必杀一步

一步: 平行结构

either...or...标志着用平行结构, 前后必须使用对称的形式。

A 选项 either to do or + that 从句, 错。

B 选项 either to do or for doing, 错。

C D 选项 either to do or + 句子, 错。一步到位, 排除 A B C D。

正确选项 E

16. A migraine typically afflicts one side of the head, lasts for hours or days, and may recur as infrequently as once every other month or often, as daily.

- (A) as infrequently as once every other month or often, as
(B) as infrequently as once every other month or as often as
(C) infrequently, as often as once every other month, or often, like
(D) infrequently, like once every other month, or often, like
(E) infrequently, like once every other month, or as often as

读题

A migraine(偏头疼)afflicts..., lasts for..., and may recur...

verb 可以和情态动词 + verb 并列。

必杀一步

一步: 平行结构形式要对称

A C D E 选项 or 前后没有使用 as infrequently as 与 as often as 够成形式对称。

一步到位, 排除 A C D E

正确选项 B

17. The most common reasons for an employee's unwillingness to accept a transfer are that mortgage rates are high, housing in the new location costs more, and the difficulty of selling the old home.

- (A) that mortgage rates are high, housing in the new location costs more, and the difficulty of selling the old home
(B) that mortgage rates are high, housing in the new location costs more, and that it is difficult to sell the old home
(C) high mortgage rates, the greater cost of housing in the new location, and that the old home is difficult to sell
(D) high mortgage rates, the greater cost of housing in the new location, and it is difficult to sell the old home

- (E) high mortgage rates, the greater cost of housing in the new location, and the difficulty of selling the old home

必杀一步

一步: 平行结构形式要对称

- A 选项 表语从句中, 句子 1, 句子 2, and 名词短语, 形式不对称。
B 选项 表语从句中, 句子 1, 句子 2, and that 从句, 形式不对称。
C 选项 谓语动词 are 后面是两个名词短语和表语从句并列, 形式不对称。
D 选项 谓语后是两个名词短语和完整句子并列, 形式不对称。排除 A B C D

正确选项 E

三个名词短语并列: high... rates, the greater cost..., and the difficulty...

18. The voluminous personal papers of Thomas Alva Edison reveal that his inventions typically sprang to life not in a flash of inspiration but evolved slowly from previous works.

- (A) sprang to life not in a flash of inspiration but evolved slowly
(B) sprang to life not in a flash of inspiration but were slowly evolved
(C) did not spring to life in a flash of inspiration but evolved slowly
(D) did not spring to life in a flash of inspiration but had slowly evolved
(E) did not spring to life in a flash of inspiration but they were slowly evolved

必杀一步

157

一步: 平行结构形式要对称

平行结构标志为 not...but...。not 后短语与 but 后短语形式必须对称。

- A B 选项 not + 介词短语 + but + 动词, 形式不对称。
D 选项 did not do but had done, 时态不协调。
E 选项 not + 动词 + but + 句子, 单个动词和完整的主谓结构形式不对称。

一步到位, 排除 A B D E

正确选项 C

did not do but did, 平行结构形式对称。

19. Monitoring heart patients' exercise, as well as athletes exercising, is now done by small transmitters broadcasting physiological measurements to nearby recording machines.

- (A) Monitoring heart patients' exercise, as well as athletes exercising, is now done by small transmitters broadcasting physiological measurements to nearby recording machines.
(B) Monitoring the exercise of heart patients, as well as athletes exercising, is now done by small transmitters broadcasting physiological measurements to nearby recording machines.
(C) Small transmitters broadcasting physiological measurements to nearby recording machines are now used to monitor the exercise of both heart patients and athletes.

(D) Broadcasting physiological measurements to nearby recording machines, small transmitters are now used to monitor heart patients' exercise, as well as athletes exercising.

(E) Both athletes exercising and heart patients' exercise are now monitored by small transmitters broadcasting physiological measurements to nearby recording machines.

必杀一步

一步: 平行结构

as well as 和 both ...and... 前后形式要对称, 概念要对等。

AB D 选项 as well as 前后 exercise 与 exercising 形式不对称。

E 选项 both...and 前后 exercising 与 exercise 形式不对称。

一步到位, 排除 A B D E

补遗

1> 永远错误的形式

A B 选项 doing sth. is done by sb. 永远错, doing 和 done 意思上重复。排除 A B

2> 不能改变原句的合理重心

原句 broadcasting 放在名词后作定语修饰 transmitters。

D 选项 broadcasting 放在句首作状语, 改变原句合理重心。排除 D

正确选项 C

20. The prime lending rate is a key rate in the economy: not only are the interest rates on most loans to small and medium-sized businesses tied to the prime, but also on a growing number of consumer loans, including home equity loans.

(A) not only are the interest rates on most loans to small and medium-sized businesses tied to the prime, but also on

(B) tied to the prime are the interest rates not only on most loans to small and medium-sized businesses, but also on

(C) the interest rates not only on most loans to small and medium-sized businesses are tied to the prime, but also

(D) not only the interest rates on most loans to small and medium-sized businesses are tied to the prime, but also on

(E) the interest rates are tied to the prime, not only on most loans to small and medium-sized businesses, but also

必杀一步

一步: 平行结构形式要对称

not only...but also... 标志着用平行结构, 前后必须使用对称形式。

A 选项 not only are..., but also on..., 形式不对称。

C E 选项 not only on..., but also..., 形式不对称。

D 选项 not only the interest rates..., but also on..., 形式不对称。

一步到位,排除 A C D E

正确选项 B

冒号后是完整主谓结构,分词短语 tied to...在句首,句子使用全倒装结构。The interest rates not only on ...but also on...是主语。

全倒装结构常用于避免因主语太长而造成的句子头重脚轻,常用的形式有:-ed 形式/-ing形式/adj./介词短语 + be + 主语部分。

21. A fire in an enclosed space burns with the aid of reflected radiation that preheats the fuel, making ignition much easier and flames spreading more quickly.

- (A) flames spreading (B) flame spreads
(C) flames are caused to spread (D) causing flames to spread
(E) causing spreading of the flames

读题

A fire(主语) + burns(谓语) + with 介词短语, + making and doing.
-ing 分词在句尾表示伴随动作或伴随结果。

此题二步

一步:平行结构形式要对称

A 选项 名词 flames 和 and 前的-ing 分词短语不对称。

B C 选项 主谓结构和 and 前的-ing 分词短语不对称。 ➤ 排除 A B C

二步:习惯用法

E 选项 cause doing 永远错,习惯搭配为: cause sb. to do...。 ➤ 排除 E

正确选项 D

22. It is well known in the supermarket industry that how items are placed on shelves and the frequency of inventory turnovers can be crucial to profits.

- (A) the frequency of inventory turnovers can be
(B) the frequency of inventory turnovers is often
(C) the frequency with which the inventory turns over is often
(D) how frequently is the inventory turned over are often
(E) how frequently the inventory turns over can be

读题

it is well known that X1 and X2 can be crucial to profits.

此题二步

一步:平行结构形式要对称

A B C 选项 X1 是 how 从句, X2 是名词短语, X1 和 X2 形式不对称。 ➤ 排除 A B C

二步:陈述语序

how 主语从句必须使用陈述语序。

D 选项 how 从句使用了疑问语序,错。 ➤ 排除 D

正确选项 E

23. Some biographers have not only disputed the common notion that Edgar Allan Poe drank to excess but also questioned whether he drank at all.

- (A) have not only disputed the common notion that Edgar Allan Poe drank to excess but also questioned whether he drank
- (B) not only have disputed the common notion that Edgar Allan Poe drank to excess but also over whether he drank
- (C) have disputed not only the common notion that Edgar Allan Poe drank to excess but also whether he may not have drunk
- (D) not only have disputed the common notion that Edgar Allan Poe drank to excess but also questioned whether or not he had drunk
- (E) have disputed the common notion not only that Edgar Allan Poe drank to excess but also questioned whether he may not have drunk

读题

sb. have not only disputed... but also questioned...

必杀二步

一步: 平行结构形式要对称

not only... but also... 平行结构, 前后形式必须对称。

B 选项 not only + 动词, but also + 介词, 形式不对称。

C 选项 not only + 名词, but also + 从句, 形式不对称。

E 选项 not only + that 从句, but also + 动词, 形式不对称。 ➤ 排除 B C E

二步: 简洁性原则

C E 选项 whether he may not have done 表达累赘, 应直接用 whether + 肯定句。

D 选项 whether or not 故意复杂化, or not 必须省略。 ➤ 排除 C E D

正确选项 A

24. Although it was once funded entirely by the government, the Victoria and Albert Museum was one of the first of Britain's national museums seeking support from corporations and private donors and to increase income by increasing attendance.

- (A) one of the first of Britain's national museums seeking support from
- (B) one of Britain's first national museums seeking support of
- (C) among Britain's first national museums to seek support of
- (D) among the first of Britain's national museums to seek support from
- (E) among Britain's first national museums that have sought the support of

读题

Although..., sth. was one of the first museums seeking... and to increase...

必杀二步

一步: 平行结构形式要对称

A B 选项 seeking sth. 与 to increase sth. 形式不对称, 不能并列共同修饰 national museums。

E 选项 定语从句 that have sought sth. 与 to increase sth. 形式不对称。✂ 排除 A B E

第二步:习惯用法

seek support from sb.

B 选项 seeking support of 搭配错。

C 选项 seek support of 搭配错。

E 选项 have sought the support of 搭配错。✂ 排除 B C E

正确选项 D

名词前有序数词或者形容词最高级作定语,名词后的修饰语必须使用 to do 的形式:
the first museums to seek support and to increase income.

25. From the earliest days of the tribe, kinship determined the way in which the Ojibwa society organized its labor, provided access to its resources, and defined rights and obligations involved in the distribution and consumption of those resources.

- (A) and defined rights and obligations involved in the distribution and consumption of those resources
- (B) defining rights and obligations involved in their distribution and consumption
- (C) and defined rights and obligations as they were involved in its distribution and consumption
- (D) whose rights and obligations were defined in their distribution and consumption
- (E) the distribution and consumption of them defined by rights and obligations

第二步

一步:平行结构形式要对称

B 选项 -ing 形式与未划线部分的动词 organized 和 provided 无法并列。

D 选项 whose 定语从句与动词 organized 和 provided 无法并列。

E 选项 名词短语 the distribution and consumption 与动词 organized 和 provided 无法并列。

✂ 排除 B D E

第二步:定语与状语不能混淆

C 选项 as they were involved in... 作状语,而在原句中 involved in... 作定语。此外,define 的习惯搭配应为 define... as + 名词/名词短语,不能加 as 从句。

✂ 排除 C

正确选项 A

organized, provided 和 defined 三个动词并列,形式对称。

分词短语 involved in... 作定语,表达简洁。

26. Temporary-employment agencies benefit not only from the increasing demand for clerical workers but also the higher profits made when highly paid professionals are placed, requests for whom have increased in the recent wave of corporate takeovers.

- (A) the higher profits made when highly paid professionals are placed, requests for whom

- (B) the higher profits that are made in the placement of highly paid professionals, requests for whom
- (C) from the requests for highly paid professionals, who make higher profits for the agencies when placed and whose requests
- (D) from highly paid professionals, whose placement makes higher profits for the agencies and whose requests
- (E) from the higher profits made in placing highly paid professionals, requests for whom

读题

...agencies benefit not only from...but also the higher profits...

线索二步**一步:平行结构**

not only...but also...前后形式必须对称。

A B 选项 but also 后面缺少介词 from 与 not only from 构成形式上的对称。

✂ 排除 A B

二步:逻辑意思的合理性

C D 选项 两个定语从句并列,共同修饰名词 professionals, whose requests have increased 表示专业人员的自身需求在增加,而不是对专业人员的需求在增加,逻辑意思不合理。✂ 排除 C D

正确选项 E

requests for whom 是“名词 + 介词 + 关系代词”型非限定性定语从句。

27. Among the reasons for the decline of New England agriculture in the last three decades were the high cost of land, the pressure of housing and commercial development, and basing a marketing and distribution system on importing produce from Florida and California.

- (A) basing a marketing and distribution system on importing produce from Florida and California
- (B) basing a marketing and distribution system on the imported produce of Florida and California
- (C) basing a system of marketing and distribution on the import of produce from Florida and California
- (D) a marketing and distribution system based on importing produce from Florida and California
- (E) a marketing and distribution system importing produce from Florida and California as its base

读题

Among the reasons for...were X1, X2 and X3

全倒装结构:介词短语/分词短语/形容词短语 + be 动词 + 主语; be 动词的单复数由

其后的主语决定。

必杀二步

一步:平行结构形式要对称

句中 X1、X2 为名词短语, X3 也必须是名词短语。

A B C 选项 X3 为-ing 形式, 与 X1、X2 形式不对称。 ➤ 排除 A B C

二步:修饰关系的合理性

E 选项 importing 现在分词作定语修饰 system, 主动关系逻辑不合理, 而且改变原句合理意思(以...为基础的系统)。 ➤ 排除 E

补选

习惯搭配

E 选项 do sth. as one's base 永远错。

正确选项 D

a marketing and distribution system 与未划线部分的 the high cost, the pressure 构成平行结构; based on 过去分词作定语修饰 system, 定语从句简化, 逻辑意思合理。

28. The economic forces which may affect the new public offering of stock include sudden downturns in the market, hedging and other investor strategies for preventing losses, loosening the interest rates in Washington, and fearing that the company may still be undercapitalized.

- (A) loosening the interest rates in Washington, and fearing that the company may still be undercapitalized
- (B) loosening the interest rates in Washington, and a fear of the company still being undercapitalized
- (C) a loosening of the interest rates in Washington, and fearing that the company may still be undercapitalized
- (D) a loosening of the interest rates in Washington, and a fear of the still undercapitalized company
- (E) a loosening of the interest rates in Washington, and a fear that the company may still be undercapitalized

读题

The economic forces which... include sudden downturns, hedging and..., loosening..., and fearing that...

必杀二步

一步:平行结构形式要对称

A B 选项 loosening... 与 sudden downturns 等并列项形式不对称。

C 选项 fearing... 与 sudden downturns 等并列项形式不对称。 ➤ 排除 A B C

二步:整体概念与所属关系的区分

D 选项 原句 fearing that... 强调 that 从句所表达的整体内容, 但 a fear of... 强调所属关系, 即 the still undercapitalized company 的担心, 改变原句强调重心。 ➤ 排除 D

正确选项 E

29. Once the economic and social usefulness of the motor car was demonstrated and with its superiority to the horse being proved, much of the early hostility to it in rural regions disappeared.

- (A) and with its superiority to the horse being
- (B) and its superiority over the horse had been
- (C) and its superiority to the horse
- (D) its superiority over the horse
- (E) with its superiority to the horse having been

读题

once the usefulness was demonstrated and with sth. being proved, early hostility disappeared.

必杀二步

一步: 平行结构形式要对称

A 选项 and 连接 once 从句和 with 介词短语, 两者形式不对称, 不能构成平行结构。

C 选项 and 连接 once 从句和名词短语 its superiority, 两者形式不对称。

D 选项 缺少连接词, 使名词短语 its superiority 垂悬, 功能不明确。 ➤ 排除 A C D

二步: -ing 分词的完成时态

-ing 分词的完成时态不能作定语修饰名词。

E 选项 -ing 分词的完成时态 having been 放在名词 horse 后, 作定语修饰 horse, 错。

➤ 排除 E

正确选项 B

30. A collection of 38 poems by Phillis Wheatley, a slave, was published in the 1770's, the first book by a Black woman and it was only the second published by an American woman.

- (A) it was only the second published by an American woman
- (B) it was only the second that an American woman published
- (C) the second one only published by an American woman
- (D) the second one only that an American woman published
- (E) only the second published by an American woman

读题

A collection of sth. by sb. (主语), + sb. 的同位语, + was published (谓语), + 主语同位语。

主语核心词是 a collection of 短语, 此短语决定主语按单数名词处理; a slave 是 Phillis Wheatley 的同位语, 句尾的名词短语也是主语同位语。

必杀二步

一步: 平行结构形式要对称

A B 选项 and 连接名词短语(the first book by sb.)和句子(it was...),形式不对称。

➤ 排除 A B

第二步:修饰语的位置不能随意改变

C D 选项 原句 only 作形容词修饰 the second, C 选项中 only 变为副词修饰 published, D 选项中 only 修饰 that 从句。改变 only 的位置,从而改变 only 的修饰对象,改变原句的合理意思。 ➤ 排除 C D

补选

省略原则

C D 选项 the second 后面不能加名词(book)或代词(one),因为 the second 是承接前面的相同名词(the first book)的省略。

正确选项 E

31. At the time of the Mexican agrarian revolution, the most radical faction, that of Zapata and his followers, proposed a return to communal ownership of land, to what had been a pre-Columbian form of ownership respected by the Spaniards.

- (A) land, to what had been a pre-Columbian form of ownership respected by the Spaniards
- (B) land, a form of ownership of the pre-Columbians and respected by the Spaniards
- (C) land, respected by the Spaniards and a pre-Columbian form of ownership
- (D) land in which a pre-Columbian form of ownership was respected by the Spaniards
- (E) land that had been a pre-Columbian form of ownership respected by the Spaniard

必杀二步

一步:平行结构形式要对称

B C 选项 and 连接名词短语(a form of ...)和分词短语(respected by...),形式不对称。

➤ 排除 B C

第二步:修饰语就近修饰

D 选项 in which 定语从句语法上就近修饰名词 land, 表示“在土地上...”,逻辑意思不合理。

E 选项 that 定语从句语法上就近修饰 land, 但逻辑上 land had been a form of ownership 意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 D E

正确选项 A

同位结构

to what...是同位结构的省略,相当于 a return to what..., 这种结构仅限于 n. + 介词的情况,当名词与前面解释说明的名词或者名词短语的核心词相同时,可以省略名词,只留下介词短语构成同位结构。这是一种比较特殊的同位结构,本质上是名词性同位结构,在 GMAT 考试中出现次数较少。

32. The National Transportation Safety Board has recommended the use of fail-safe mechanisms on airliner cargo door latches assuring the doors are properly closed before takeoff and to prevent them from popping open in flight.

- (A) assuring the doors are properly closed

- (B) for the assurance of proper closing
- (C) assuring proper closure
- (D) to assure closing the doors properly
- (E) to assure that the doors are properly closed

必杀二步

一步: 平行结构形式要对称

未划线部分的连词 and 和不定式短语 to prevent 表明, and 前必须出现不定式与 to prevent 构成平行结构。而且习惯搭配 the use of sth. to do... 也要求用不定式。

A C 选项 assuring 与 to prevent 形式不对称。

B 选项 介词短语 for the assurance 也不能与 to prevent 构成平行结构。 ➤ 排除 A B C

二步: 整体概念与部分概念的区别

原句 the doors are properly closed 强调门的状态是被关上的(整体概念)。

D 选项 closing the doors 强调动作(部分概念), 改变原句的强调重心。 ➤ 排除 D

补选

实义词不能随意省略、添加或改变

任何实义词(名词、动词、形容词、副词)在省略、添加或改变时都必须有合理的语法或逻辑理由。

B C 选项 省略原句的名词 doors, 引起逻辑意思含混, 无法明确关闭的对象; 同时使得后文的代词 them 没有指代对象。所以 doors 省略不当。

正确选项 E

33. Studies show that young people with higher-than-average blood pressure and their families have a history of high blood pressure are more likely than others to develop a severe form of the condition.

- (A) and their families have a history of high blood pressure
- (B) whose families have a history of high blood pressure
- (C) and a history of high blood pressure runs in the family
- (D) whose families have a history high blood pressure running in them
- (E) with a history of high blood pressure running in their family

读题

Studies show that young people and their families have... are more likely...

必杀二步

一步: 平行结构形式要对称

A C 选项 划线部分是完整句子, 句子和名词短语 young people 形式不对称, 不能够并列。

➤ 排除 A C

二步: 修饰关系的合理性

D 选项 history 不能作定语修饰 high blood pressure。

E 选项 running in their family(世代相传的)如果修饰 high blood pressure, 那么逻辑意思“世代相传的高血压的历史”不合理; 它如果修饰 a history, 那么逻辑意思“世代相

传的高血压史”也不合理。另外, with a history of... 短语就近修饰 higher-than-average blood pressure 也不合理。✎ 排除 D E

正确选项 B

名词 + 介词短语 + 定语从句 (young people with... whose families have...), 定语从句可以跳过介词短语, 修饰介词短语所修饰的名词。

34. Despite protests from some waste-disposal companies, state health officials have ordered the levels of bacteria in seawater at popular beaches to be measured and that the results be published.

- (A) the levels of bacteria in seawater at popular beaches to be measured and that the results be
- (B) that seawater at popular beaches should be measured for their levels of bacteria, with the results being
- (C) the measure of levels of bacteria in seawater at popular beaches and the results to be
- (D) seawater measured at popular beaches for levels of bacteria, with their results
- (E) that the levels of bacteria in seawater at popular beaches be measured and the results

读题

despite sth., sb. have ordered sth. to do and that...

此题二步

一步: 平行结构形式要对称

A 选项 and 连接 order sth. to be done 和 order + that 从句, 形式不对称。

C 选项 and 连接 order sth. 和 order sth. to be done, 形式不对称。✎ 排除 A C

二步: 代词指代

B D 选项 复数代词 their 无法指代单数名词 seawater。✎ 排除 B D

补选

1> 情态动词不能随意添加

B 选项 随意添加情态动词 should, 海水应该被测量, 逻辑意思不合理。

2> 不能改变原句的合理重心

B D 选项 with the results being published/ with their results published 把原句中主句的内容改为从属性成分, 改变句子重心。

3> 逻辑意思的合理性

C 选项 order the measure 命令测量, 逻辑意思不合理。

D 选项 order seawater 命令海水, 逻辑意思不合理。

正确选项 E

并列句的省略

两个句子或三个句子并列, 第一句中有 be 动词或者 become, 第二或第三句话中的 be 动词或者 become 必须省略, 包括重复的名词、形容词甚至连词都可以省略。但连接各并列

分句的 and 不能省略。

that 宾语从句 1(that the levels of bacteria in seawater at popular beaches be measured) + and + 宾语从句 2(the results published): and 后省略了 that, published 前省略了 be 动词。

35. More and more in recent years, cities are stressing the arts as a means to greater economic development and investing millions of dollars in cultural activities, despite strained municipal budgets and fading federal support.

- (A) to greater economic development and investing
- (B) to greater development economically and investing
- (C) of greater economic development and invest
- (D) of greater development economically and invest
- (E) for greater economic development and the investment of

读题

Cities are stressing...and investing...

必杀二步

一步:动词的并列

C D 选项 are stressing 与 invest 时态不一致,没有线索表明这种不一致更合理。

E 选项 动词 are stressing 与名词短语 the investment of...不能并列。 ➤ 排除 C D E

二步:形容词和副词的区别

原句 economic 作形容词修饰名词 development。

B D 选项 把 economic 改为副词 economically 修饰谓语动词,修饰对象的改变导致原句意思改变。 ➤ 排除 B D

正确选项 A

并列结构的省略

Cities are stressing...and investing...中, investing 前省略了助动词 are。

36. The Baldrick Manufacturing Company has for several years followed a policy aimed at decreasing operating costs and improving the efficiency of its distribution system.

- (A) aimed at decreasing operating costs and improving
- (B) aimed at the decreasing of operating costs and to improve
- (C) aiming at the decreasing of operating costs and improving
- (D) the aim of which is the decreasing of operating costs and improving
- (E) with the aim to decrease operating costs and to improve

必杀二步

一步:平行结构形式要对称

B 选项 动作性名词 the decreasing of sth. 与不定式 to improve 形式不对称。

C D 选项 动作性名词 the decreasing of sth. 与-ing 分词 improving 形式不对称。

➤ 排除 B C D

第二步:习惯搭配

E 选项 with the aim to do 不符合习惯搭配,可以用 with the aim of doing 替换,但 with the aim of doing 表达也不简洁,通常用 aimed at doing 直接表达。另外,with the aim of 一般作状语,而 aimed at 只能作定语。☞ 排除 E

正确选项 A

-ed 分词短语作定语修饰 policy; decreasing sth. 和 improving sth. 形式对称。

37. Geologists believe that the warning signs for a major earthquake may include sudden fluctuations in local seismic activity, tilting and other deformations of the Earth's crust, changing the measured strain across a fault zone, and varying the electrical properties of underground rocks.

- (A) changing the measured strain across a fault zone, and varying
- (B) changing measurements of the strain across a fault zone, and varying
- (C) changing the strain as measured across a fault zone, and variations of
- (D) changes in the measured strain across a fault zone, and variations in
- (E) changes in measurements of the strain across a fault zone, and variations among

读题

sb. believe that sth. may include fluctuations in..., tilting and other deformations of..., changing..., and varying...

必杀二步

一步:动作性名词的并列

未划线部分是动作性名词并列 fluctuations in..., tilting(是动作性名词而不是-ing 分词形式) and other deformations, 所以划线部分也必须是动作性名词形式, 否则平行结构形式不对称。

change(v.) 的名词形式为 change(n.), vary(v.) 的名词形式为 variation。

A B C 选项 使用-ing 形式导致平行结构形式不对称。☞ 排除 A B C

第二步:不能改变原句的合理意思

原句 change 的宾语的核心词是 strain, 强调张力的变化。

E 选项 changes in... 结构中的 in 介词短语的核心词是 measurements, 意思重心转移到“测量的变化”, 改变原句合理意思“张力的变化”。☞ 排除 E

补遗

习惯搭配

E 选项 variations among sth. 不符合习惯搭配, 正确用法: variations in sth.。

正确选项 D

38. As envisioned by researchers, commercial farming of lobsters will enable fisheries to sell the shellfish year-round, taking advantage of off-season demand, standardize its sizes and colors, and to predict sales volume in advance.

- (A) taking advantage of off-season demand, standardize

- (B) taking advantage of off-season demand, to standardize
- (C) taking advantage of off-season demand, standardizing
- (D) take advantage of off-season demand, standardize
- (E) take advantage of off-season demand, to standardize

读题

As envisioned by..., sth. will enable fisheries to sell..., taking..., standardize..., and to predict...

必杀一步

一步:动词的并列

- A 选项 to sell 与 to predict 并列, taking... 作为 to sell 的伴随状语, 但 standardize... 语法功能不明确。
- C 选项 taking... 和 standardizing... 并列, 缺少连接词。
- D 选项 to sell 与 to predict 并列, take... 和 standardize... 语法功能不明确; 如果 to predict 省略了 to 就可以理解为不定式并列, to sell..., take... standardize... and predict。
- E 选项 to sell, to standardize 和 to predict 并列, 但 take... 语法功能不明确。

一步到位, 排除 A C D E

正确选项 B

sth. will enable fisheries to sell..., taking..., to standardize..., and to predict...: to sell..., to standardize... 和 to predict... 并列, taking... 作 to sell 的伴随状语。

39. Federal authorities involved in the investigation have found the local witnesses are difficult to locate, reticent, and are suspicious of strangers.

- (A) the local witnesses are difficult to locate, reticent, and are
- (B) local witnesses to be difficult to locate, reticent, and are
- (C) that local witnesses are difficult to locate, reticent, and
- (D) local witnesses are difficult to locate and reticent, and they are
- (E) that local witnesses are difficult to locate and reticent, and they are

必杀一步

一步:形容词的并列

local witnesses are difficult... reticent... and suspicious...: 三个形容词 difficult, reticent and suspicious 并列。

- A B 选项 第三个形容词 suspicious 前面添加 be 动词 are, 破坏了平行结构。
- D E 选项 第三个形容词前添加主谓结构, 构成句子, 破坏了形容词平行结构。

一步到位, 排除 A B D E

补选

宾语从句的连词 that 不能省略

A D 选项 缺少连词 that。

正确选项 C

40. School desegregation has worked well in Buffalo, New York, in part because parents and teachers were given major roles in designing the city's magnet schools, because extra federal funds were allocated to make each school unique, and because the federal judge enforced desegregation orders.

- (A) because extra federal funds were allocated to make each school unique
- (B) because of the allocation of extra federal funds that make each school unique
- (C) because each school is made unique by allocating it extra federal funds
- (D) extra federal funds were allocated in order to make each school unique
- (E) extra federal funds were allocated for making each school unique

读题

sth. has worked well, in part because 句子 1, because 句子 2, and because 句子 3.

必杀二步

一步: 状语从句的并列

B 选项 because 句子 1, because of + 名词短语, and because 句子 3: 形式不对称。

D E 选项 三个原因状语从句并列, 句子 2 前缺少 because。 ➤ 排除 B D E

二步: 不能改变原句的合理重心

原句 because 句子 2 强调 extra federal funds were allocated。

C 选项 because 句子 2 强调 each school is made..., 改变原句的强调重心。 ➤ 排除 C

正确选项 A

171

41. Judge Bonham denied a motion to allow members of the jury to go home at the end of each day instead of to confine them to a hotel.

- (A) to allow members of the jury to go home at the end of each day instead of to confine them to
- (B) that would have allowed members of the jury to go home at the end of each day instead of confined to
- (C) under which members of the jury are allowed to go home at the end of each day instead of confining them in
- (D) that would allow members of the jury to go home at the end of each day rather than confinement in
- (E) to allow members of the jury to go home at the end of each day rather than be confined to

读题

Judge denied a motion to allow sb. to go home instead of to confine them.

必杀一步

一步: 不定式并列

不定式并列: to do X1 and to do X2 或者 to do X1 and do X2。

B 选项 allowed sb. to do X1 instead of did X2, instead of 连接的 to do X1 和 did X2 形式

不对称。

C 选项 rather than 前后 to go home 与 confining 形式不对称。

D 选项 rather than 前后 to go home 与 confinement in 形式不对称。 ➤ 排除 B C D

A 选项 to allow sb. to go home instead of to confine them, 不定式 to go home 和 to confine them 并列, a motion to allow members of the jury to go home 逻辑意思合理, 但是, a motion to allow members of the jury to confine themselves to a hotel 逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 A

补选

用词倾向性

GMAT 考试中, 如果 instead of 和 rather than 同时出现, 正确选项常常使用 rather than, 而较少使用 instead of, 因为在书面语中大量使用 rather than, 口语中常用 instead of。

正确选项 E

to allow sb. to do X1 rather than (to) be done, rather than 后加上省略 to 的动词不定式。

a motion to allow members of the jury to be confined to a hotel 包含习惯搭配: allow sb. to be done。

42. The Iroquois were primarily planters, but supplementing their cultivation of maize, squash, and beans with fishing and hunting.

(A) but supplementing

(B) and had supplemented

(C) and even though they supplemented

(D) although they supplemented

(E) but with supplementing

必杀二步

一步: 并列关系的合理性

A 选项 句子, but doing sth.: 完整主谓结构不能和 doing 并列。

C 选项 主句, and 从句: 主从句不能够并列。

E 选项 句子, but + 介词短语: 句子和介词短语不能并列。 ➤ 排除 A C E

第二步: 时态判断

B 选项 sb. were planters, and had supplemented... 没有明显时间标志以及上下文逻辑关系表明 supplement 的动作发生在 were planters 以前, 所以一般过去时与过去完成时的并列不合理。 ➤ 排除 B

正确选项 D

43. Researchers at Cornell University have demonstrated that homing pigeons can sense changes in the earth's magnetic field, see light waves that people cannot see, detect low-frequency sounds from miles away, sense changes in air pressure, and can identify familiar odors.

(A) sense changes in air pressure, and can identify familiar odors

(B) can sense changes in air pressure, and can identify familiar odors

(C) sense changes in air pressure, and identify familiar odors

(D) air pressure changes can be sensed, and familiar odors identified

(E) air pressure changes are sensed, and familiar odors identified

读题

Researchers... have demonstrated that sth. can sense X1, see X2, detect X3, sense X4, and can identify X5.

必杀一步

一步: 平行结构形式要对称

A 选项 identify X5 前多了 can, 错。

B 选项 sense X4 和 identify X5 前分别多了 can, 错。

D 选项 air pressure changes can be sensed 是句子, familiar odors identified 是由-ed 分词修饰的名词短语, 都无法与没有划线部分的动宾短语并列。

E 选项 air pressure changes are sensed 是句子, familiar odors identified 是名词短语, 都无法与没有划线部分的动宾短语并列。 ➡ 一步到位, 排除 A B D E

正确选项 C

44. New theories propose that catastrophic impacts of asteroids and comets may have caused reversals in the Earth's magnetic field, the onset of ice ages, splitting apart continents 80 million years ago, and great volcanic eruptions.

(A) splitting apart continents (B) the splitting apart of continents

(C) split apart continents (D) continents split apart

(E) continents that were split apart

读题

new theories propose that sth. may have caused reversals in..., the onset of..., splitting apart..., and volcanic eruptions.

something 作主语, propose 后的宾语从句不使用动词原形表示虚拟语气。

必杀一步

一步: 平行结构

未划线部分 caused 的宾语 reversals, onset 和 eruptions 都是动作性名词, 根据平行结构形式对称、概念对等的要求, 划线部分也必须是动作性名词。

A 选项 -ing 形式 splitting apart 强调动作, 它不能与动作性名词(强调结果、状态)并列。

C 选项 动词 split 不能与 reversals, onset, 和 eruptions 构成平行结构。

D E 选项 虽然 continents 是名词, 但 continents 是名称名词, 与动作性名词不属于同一类概念, 不能构成平行结构。 ➡ 一步到位, 排除 A C D E

正确选项 B

动作性名词

当一个动词没有动作性名词形式时, 通常用 the + -ing 形式来代替: the splitting apart of 代替动词 split apart 的名词形式, 与 reversals, onset, 和 eruptions 形式对称, 概念对等。

45. Recently discovered fossil remains strongly suggest that the Australian egg-laying mammals of today are a branch of the main stem of mammalian evolution rather

than developing independently from a common ancestor of mammals more than 220 million years ago.

- (A) rather than developing independently from
- (B) rather than a type that developed independently from
- (C) rather than a type whose development was independent of
- (D) instead of developing independently from
- (E) instead of a development that was independent of

必杀二步

一步: 平行结构形式要对称, 概念要对等

mammals are X1 rather than /instead of X2, X1 和 X2 必须形式对称, 概念对等。

A D 选项 名词短语 a branch of... 和 -ing 形式 developing 形式上不对称。

E 选项 a branch of... 和 a development 概念上不对等。 ➤ 排除 A D E

二步: 简洁性原则

在标准书面语中, 能用动词直接表达的意思, 就不能使用“be 动词 + 动词的形容词”或“be 动词 + a/an + 动词性名词”这样复杂的表达方式。

C 选项 whose development was independent of 表达不简洁。 ➤ 排除 C

补选

用词倾向性

在标准书面语中倾向使用 rather than 而不倾向使用 instead of。

正确选项 B

46. Seismologists studying the earthquake that struck northern California in October 1989 are still investigating some of its mysteries: the unexpected power of the seismic waves, the upward thrust that threw one man straight into the air, and the strange electromagnetic signals detected hours before the temblor.

- (A) the upward thrust that threw one man straight into the air, and the strange electromagnetic signals detected hours before the temblor
- (B) the upward thrust that threw one man straight into the air, and strange electromagnetic signals were detected hours before the temblor
- (C) the upward thrust threw one man straight into the air, and hours before the temblor strange electromagnetic signals were detected
- (D) one man was thrown straight into the air by the upward thrust, and hours before the temblor strange electromagnetic signals were detected
- (E) one man who was thrown straight into the air by the upward thrust, and strange electromagnetic signals that were detected hours before the temblor

读题

Seismologists are investigating sth.: X1, X2 and X3

必杀二步

一步: 平行结构形式要对称

B 选项 X1 和 X2 是名词短语, X3 是句子, 三者形式不对称。

C 选项 X1 和 X3 是名词短语, X2 是句子, 三者形式不对称。

D 选项 X1 和 X3 是名词短语, X2 是句子, 三者形式不对称。 ➤ 排除 B C D

第二步: 平行结构概念要对等

E 选项 虽然 X1、X2 和 X3 都是名词短语, 但是 X2 one man 和 X1 power、X3 signals, 不是同一类概念, 三者不能构成平行结构。 ➤ 排除 E

正确选项 A

47. The decision by one of the nation's largest banks to admit to \$ 3 billion in potential losses on foreign loans could mean less lending by commercial banks to developing countries and increasing the pressure on multigovernment lenders to supply the funds.

(A) increasing the pressure (B) the increasing pressure

(C) increased pressure (D) the pressure increased

(E) the pressure increasing

必杀二步

一步: 平行结构形式要对称

划线部分必须与 less lending 构成平行结构, less lending 是形容词 + 名词结构。

A 选项 划线部分 V.-ing + 名词, 与 less lending 形式不对称。

D E 选项 划线部分名词 + 分词修饰语, 与 less lending 形式不对称, 并且单个修饰语应该放在名词之前。 ➤ 排除 A D E

第二步: 过去分词和现在分词作定语的区别

根据上下文的逻辑关系, 原句表达银行的决定所产生的结果, 所以表明压力已增加, 用过去分词 increased 修饰 pressure 更符合原句的意思。

B 选项 用 increasing 修饰 pressure 表示正在增加的压力, 强调正在进行, 不符合原句的逻辑意思和强调重心。并且 increasing 前的定冠词 the 也修饰 pressure, 表示 pressure 在前文中已经提到过, 不符合未划线部分的逻辑表达。 ➤ 排除 B

正确选项 C

increased pressure 表示增加的动作已经完成, 强调增加完成以后的状态。

48. One view of the economy contends that a large drop in oil prices should eventually lead to lowering interest rates, as well as lowering fears about inflation, a rally in stocks and bonds, and a weakening of the dollar.

(A) lowering interest rates, as well as lowering fears about inflation,

(B) a lowering of interest rates and of fears about inflation,

(C) a lowering of interest rates, along with fears about inflation,

(D) interest rates being lowered, along with fears about inflation,

(E) interest rates and fears about inflation being lowered, with

必杀二步

一步: 平行结构形式要对称, 概念要对等

未划线部分的并列项 a rally in... 和 a weakening of... 都是动作性名词短语。

A 选项 doing sth. 和动作性名词短语 a rally in..., a weakening of... 形式不对称。

D E 选项 interest rates/ interest rates and fears 与 a rally in..., a weakening of... 概念不对等。 ➤ 排除 A D E

第二步:不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

C 选项 介词短语 along with fears about inflation 作状语修饰 lead to a lowering of interest rates, "...导致利率下降,同时伴随着对通货膨胀的恐惧"改变了原句"...导致利率下降和对通货膨胀的恐惧降低"的合理意思。

D 选项 along with fears about... 省去了原句“恐惧降低”这一合理含义。 ➤ 排除 C

正确选项 B

a lowering of interest rates and (a lowering) of fears about inflation 中重复的名词短语省略。动词 lower 和 weaken 都没有名词形式,就用 a + -ing 形式充当它们的名词形式。

49. In recent years cattle breeders have increasingly used crossbreeding, in part that their steers should acquire certain characteristics and partly because crossbreeding is said to provide hybrid vigor.

(A) in part that their steers should acquire certain characteristics

(B) in part for the acquisition of certain characteristics in their steers

(C) partly because of their steers acquiring certain characteristics

(D) partly because certain characteristics should be acquired by their steers

(E) partly to acquire certain characteristics in their steers

读题

Sb. increasingly used sth., in part that... and partly because...

必杀二步

一步:平行结构形式要对称

A B 选项 in part ... 和 partly ... 形式不对称。 ➤ 排除 A B

第二步:逻辑意思的合理性

A D 选项 “他们的牛应该获得某些特征”,情态动词 should 使逻辑意思不合理。

C 选项 because of their steers acquiring certain characteristics 的核心词是 their steers, 因为他们的……样的牛所以使用杂交,因果关系不合理。 ➤ 排除 A C D

骨殖

主从关系

主句和从句之间的逻辑合理性必须通过恰当的语法连接手段来保证。

A 选项 in part that 不能在语法上连接从句(划线部分)和主句。

正确选项 E

50. All-terrain vehicles have allowed vacationers to reach many previously inaccessible areas, but they have also been blamed for causing hundreds of deaths, injury to thousands, and seriously damaging the nation's recreational areas.

(A) deaths, injury to thousands, and seriously damaging

- (B) deaths and injuring thousands, and serious damage to
- (C) deaths, thousands who are injured, as well as seriously damaging
- (D) deaths and thousands of injuries, as well as doing serious damage to
- (E) deaths, thousands are injured, and they do serious damage to

读题

..., but they have been blamed for causing..., injury to..., and damaging...

必杀一步

一步:平行结构形式要对称

- A 选项 causing sth., damaging sth. 与名词短语 injury to thousands 形式不对称,如果名词 injury to thousands 是与 hundreds of deaths 并列,两者之间必须有连接词。
- B 选项 causing sth., injuring sth. 与名词短语 damage to sth. 形式不对称,同时名词短语 damage to sth. 也不可能和 thousands 并列,作 injuring 的宾语。
- C 选项 causing sth., damaging sth. 与名词 thousands 形式不对称,thousands 也不可能和 hundreds of deaths 并列作 causing 的宾语。
- E 选项 thousands are injured, and they do serious damage to sth. 只能和主句 they have been blamed for causing... 并列,并列关系不合理。 ➤ 一步到位,排除 A B C E

正确选项 D

hundreds of deaths 和 thousands of injuries 并列作 causing 的宾语; doing serious damage 与 causing deaths and injuries 并列

177

51. The commission acknowledged that no amount of money or staff members can ensure the safety of people who live in the vicinity of a nuclear plant, but it approved the installation because it believed that all reasonable precautions had been taken.

- (A) no amount of money or staff members
- (B) neither vast amounts of money nor staff members
- (C) neither vast amounts of money nor numbers of staff members
- (D) neither vast amounts of money nor a large staff
- (E) no matter how large the staff or how vast the amount of money

读题

句子 1, + but 句子 2.

必杀二步

一步:平行结构概念要对等

- A 选项 no amount of... 意为“即使再大(或再多)的...也不”,其后的平行结构 money or staff members 概念不对等。
- B C 选项 vast amounts of money 强调整体概念,staff members 强调个体概念,即每一个成员,neither...nor... 平行结构概念不对等。 ➤ 排除 A B C

二步:从句结构的完整性

- E 选项 从句“no matter how + adj. + 名词短语”缺谓语动词,结构不完整,错。
➤ 排除 E

补选

简洁性原则

E 选项 no matter how 表达不简洁, 可以用 however 替换。

正确选项 D

整体概念 vast amounts of money 对应整体概念 a large staff, 平行结构概念对等。

52. Studies of the human "sleep-wake cycle" have practical relevance for matters ranging from duty assignments in nuclear submarines and air-traffic control towers to the staff of shifts in 24-hour factories.

- (A) to the staff of (B) to those who staff
(C) to the staffing of (D) and staffing
(E) and the staff of

读题

Studies have practical relevance for matters ranging from...to...

必杀二步

一步: 习惯搭配

D E 选项 from...and...永远错, 习惯搭配为: from...to...。✂ 排除 D E

二步: 平行结构概念要对等

A 选项 from...to...连接的是动作性名词 duty assignments(任务分配)和总称名词 the staff(员工), 概念不对等。

B 选项 动作性名词 duty assignments 和代词 those 概念也不对等, 不能构成平行结构。

✂ 排除 A B

正确选项 C

the staffing 是动词 staff 的动作性名词形式, 表示人员配备; duty assignment(任务分配)和 the staffing(人员配备), 形式对称, 概念对等; 当一个动词没有名词形式时, 通常在其-ing 形式前加定冠词 the, 构成其动作性名词。

53. In developing new facilities for the incineration of solid wastes, we must avoid the danger of shifting environmental problems from landfills polluting the water to polluting the air with incinerators.

- (A) landfills polluting the water to polluting the air with incinerators
(B) landfills polluting the water to the air being polluted with incinerators
(C) the pollution of water by landfills to the pollution of air by incinerators
(D) pollution of the water by landfills to incinerators that pollute the air
(E) water that is polluted by landfills to incinerators that pollute the air

必杀一步

一步: 平行结构

from...to...标志着用平行结构, 前后必须形式对称、概念对等。

A 选项 from landfills(核心词) to polluting sth., 名词和-ing 形式前后形式不对称。

B 选项 landfills 和 air 虽然都是名词,但垃圾掩埋和空气概念不对等。

D 选项 pollution(污染)和 incinerators(焚化装置)概念不对等。

E 选项 water(水)和 incinerators(焚化装置)概念不对等。一步到位,排除 A B D E

正确选项 C

the pollution of water 和 the pollution of air 形式对称、概念对等。

54. Water and resource management problems will be at the head of the legislature's list of concerns for the coming session.

- (A) Water and resource management problems
- (B) Problems of managing water and resources
- (C) Problems in the management of water and other resources
- (D) Problems of water and other resource management
- (E) Resource management problems, including water

必杀三步

一步:平行结构

平行结构的并列项不能存在包含关系。

A B 选项 resource 包含 water,两者存在包含关系,不能够并列。排除 A B

二步:要避免连接对象产生争议

D 选项 and 可以连接 water 和 other resource 共同修饰 management,也可能连接 problems of water 和 other resource management,连词的连接对象产生争议。

排除 D

三步:修饰关系的合理性

E 选项 including water 就近修饰名词 problems,但 problems 不能够包含 water,分词短语的修饰关系不合理。排除 E

正确选项 C

55. Minnesota is the only one of the contiguous forty-eight states that still has a sizable wolf population, and where this predator remains the archenemy of cattle and sheep.

- (A) that still has a sizable wolf population, and where
- (B) that still has a sizable wolf population, where
- (C) that still has a sizable population of wolves, and where
- (D) where the population of wolves is still sizable
- (E) where there is still a sizable population of wolves and where

读题

Minnesota is the only one of the states that..., and where...

that 定语从句和 where 定语从句共同修饰名词 the only one (state).

必杀二步

一步:定语从句的并列

只有功能相同的定语从句才能并列,如: that... and that..., in which... and in which..., where... and where...; who 引导的定语从句可以与 whose 引导的定语从句并列,因为两者都是主语性定语从句。

A B C 选项 that 引导主语性定语从句, where 引导状语性定语从句,两者功能不相同,不能并列。排除 A B C

第二步:不能改变原句的合理重心

D 选项 把原句中 where 从句的内容改为主句,从句变为主句,改变原句的重心。

排除 D

补通

修饰语的修饰对象要单一

A B 选项 形容词 sizable 可以修饰 wolf,也可以修饰 population,修饰对象有争议。

正确选项 E

the only one of + 复数名词 + 定语从句,定语从句修饰 the only one: where... and where... 两个状语性定语从句并列共同修饰 the only one (state)。

there is 表示自然存在,原句动词 has 表示主动拥有,there is 比 has 更符合生活事理。

56. Manifestations of Islamic political militancy in the first period of religious reformism were the rise of the Wahhabis in Arabia, the Sanusi in Cyrenaica, the Fulani in Nigeria, the Mahdi in the Sudan, and the victory of the Usuli "mujtahids" in Shiite Iran and Iraq.

- (A) Manifestations of Islamic political militancy in the first period of religious reformism were the rise of the Wahhabis in Arabia, the Sanusi in Cyrenaica, the Fulani in Nigeria, the Mahdi in the Sudan, and
- (B) Manifestations of Islamic political militancy in the first period of religious reformism were shown in the rise of the Wahhabis in Arabia, the Sanusi in Cyrenaica, the Fulani in Nigeria, the Mahdi in the Sudan, and also
- (C) In the first period of religious reformism, manifestations of Islamic political militancy were the rise of the Wahhabis in Arabia, of the Sanusi in Cyrenaica, the Fulani in Nigeria, the Mahdi in the Sudan, and
- (D) In the first period of religious reformism, manifestations of Islamic political militancy were shown in the rise of the Wahhabis in Arabia, the Sanusi in Cyrenaica, the Fulani in Nigeria, the Mahdi in the Sudan, and
- (E) In the first period of religious reformism, Islamic political militancy was manifested in the rise of the Wahhabis in Arabia, the Sanusi in Cyrenaica, the Fulani in Nigeria, and the Mahdi in the Sudan, and in

读题

Manifestations were the rise of WA, SC, FN, MS and the victory of...

必杀一步

一步:平行结构的连接词

平行结构在最后一个并列项前必须加上连接词。

- A B C D 选项 WA, SC, FN 和 MS 属同类事物, 应并列, 但最后一个并列项 MS 前缺少 and 连接, 导致 the victory of 不能与其逻辑上的并列对象 the rise of 并列, 而错误地与 WA, SC, FN 和 MS 并列。另外, C 选项中, the rise of WA, of SC, FN, MS 的 SC 前的 of 破坏了平行结构的形式对称, of 必须省略。
 排除 A B C D

补选

修饰语修饰对象的单一性

- A B 选项 介词短语 in the first period of religious reformism 放在主语和谓语之间, 引起争议, 可能作定语修饰主语, 也可能作状语修饰谓语; 可以通过位置改变来保证其修饰对象单一, 如 CDE 选项中, 该介词短语在句首只能作状语。

正确选项 E

sth. was manifested in the rise of... and in the victory of... 两个介词短语并列。

57. Recently implemented "shift-work equations" based on studies of the human sleep cycle have reduced sickness, sleeping on the job, fatigue among shift workers, and have raised production efficiency in various industries.

- (A) fatigue among shift workers, and have raised
 (B) fatigue among shift workers, and raised
 (C) and fatigue among shift workers while raising
 (D) lowered fatigue among shift workers, and raised
 (E) and fatigue among shift workers was lowered while raising

181

读题

shift-work equations have reduced X1, X2, X3, and have raised production efficiency.

必需一步

一步: 平行结构的连接词

在平行结构的最后一个并列项前必须使用连接词连接。

- A B 选项 名词 X1, X2, X3 并列, 最后一个名词 X3 (fatigue) 前缺少连接词 and。
 D 选项 have reduced, lowered and raised 动词并列, 省略了相同的助动词 have, 只保留了第一个助动词, 表达正确, 但是 reduce 的两个并列宾语 sickness 和 sleeping 之间缺少连接词 and。
 E 选项 and 连接两个完整的主谓结构, 但是 reduce 的两个宾语 sickness 和 sleeping 之间缺少连接词 and。 一步到位, 排除 A B D E

补选

状语从句的省略形式

状语从句的省略形式: 表示转折、时间、条件的连词 + 形容词短语 / 分词短语

错误形式: 表示转折、时间、条件的连词 + 介词短语 / 名词短语

- E 选项 while raising 是状语从句的省略形式, 逻辑主语等于所修饰的动词 be lowered 的主语 fatigue, fatigue raised the production efficiency 逻辑意思不合理。

正确选项 C

名词 sickness, sleeping 和 fatigue 并列, 在最后一个并列项 fatigue 前加上连接词 and。

while raising 修饰动词 have reduced, 逻辑主语等于 have reduced 的主语 shift-work equations, 逻辑主语合理。

58. Originally developed for detecting air pollutants, a technique called proton-induced x-ray emission, which can quickly analyze the chemical elements in almost any substance without destroying it, is finding uses in medicine, archaeology, and criminology.

- (A) Originally developed for detecting air pollutants, a technique called proton-induced x-ray emission, which can quickly analyze the chemical elements in almost any substance without destroying it,
- (B) Originally developed for detecting air pollutants, having the ability to analyze the chemical elements in almost any substance without destroying it, a technique called proton induced x-ray emission,
- (C) A technique originally developed for detecting air pollutants, called proton-induced x-ray emission, which can quickly analyze the chemical elements in almost any substance without destroying it,
- (D) A technique originally developed for detecting air pollutants, called proton-induced x-ray emission, which has the ability to analyze the chemical elements in almost any substance quickly and without destroying it,
- (E) A technique that was originally developed for detecting air pollutants and has the ability to analyze the chemical elements in almost any substance quickly and without destroying the substance, called proton-induced x-ray emission,

读题

Developed for..., a technique is finding uses in...

必需二步

一步: 平行结构

B 选项 developed for... 和 having the ability 并列, 放在句首作状语, 但两者之间缺少连接词连接。

C D 选项 developed for..., called... 和 which 定语从句三者并列, 放在 a technique 后面, 共同修饰 a technique。分词短语和定语从句形式不对称, 不能构成平行结构, 并且 which 定语从句前缺少连接词。 ➡ 排除 B C D

二步: 修饰语要尽可能贴近其修饰对象

E 选项 因为 called for... 与 a technique 相隔太远, 所以只能就近修饰 substance, 导致修饰关系不合理。 ➡ 排除 E

补遗

1> 能力和可能性的区别

原句 can quickly analyze... 表示可能性。

B D E 选项 have/has the ability to... 表示具有某种能力, 改变原句的合理意思。

2> 名词的修饰语

名词的修饰语要尽可能有层次地分布在名词前或名词后, 并且保持逻辑关系清晰。

C D 选项 a technique 的修饰语 developed for..., called... 以及 which 定语从句, 堆在一起放在名词后面, 形成一种非常累赘的表达。

正确选项 A

-ed 分词短语 developed for... 放在句首, 逻辑主语等于 technique。called 修饰 technique。

名词 + called 的结构, 修饰关系紧密, 可以看作一个整体, 所以 which 定语从句能够跳过 called... 修饰名词 technique。

59. Charlotte Parkins Gilman, a late nineteenth-century feminist, called for urban apartment houses including child-care facilities and clustered suburban houses including communal eating and social facilities.

- (A) including child-care facilities and clustered suburban houses including communal eating and social facilities
- (B) that included child-care facilities, and for clustered suburban houses to include communal eating and social facilities
- (C) with child-care facilities included and for clustered suburban houses to include communal eating and social facilities
- (D) that included child-care facilities and for clustered suburban houses with communal eating and social facilities
- (E) to include child-care facilities and for clustered suburban houses with communal eating and social facilities included

读题

主语, + 主语同位语, + call for...

解题步骤

一步: 平行结构的意思单一性

当平行结构的连词 and 连接对象引起争议时, 修改方法有两个: 1> 改变连接对象的位置; 2> 在连接对象前重复相应的介词。

A 选项 连词 and 语法上应就近连接 child-care facilities 和 clustered suburban houses, 但逻辑上 and 应该跳跃连接 clustered suburban houses 和 urban apartment houses, 连接对象引起争议。排除 A

二步: 习惯用法

B C 选项 call for + sth. (clustered suburban houses) to do (include) 永远错, 正确用法: call for + 名词/名词短语。

E 选项 call for urban apartment houses to include, 错。排除 B C E

补选

意思重复

C E 选项 sth. with sth. included, with 和 included 意思上重复。 ➤ 排除 C E

正确选项 D

call for X1 that included... and for X2 with...

在 X2 前加上介词 for 使 and 的连接对象明确清楚; that 定语从句修饰 X1, with 介词短语修饰 X2, 用不同的词 include 和 with 表达同一含义, 避免用词重复, 比原句两次使用 including 更好。

60. The lawyer for the defense charged that she suspected the police of having illegally taped her confidential conversations with her client and then used the information obtained to find evidence supporting their murder charges.

- (A) used the information obtained to find evidence supporting
- (B) used such information as they obtained to find evidence supporting
- (C) used the information they had obtained to find evidence that would support
- (D) of using the information they had obtained to find evidence that would support
- (E) of using such information as they obtained to find evidence that would be supportive of

读题

The lawyer charged that she suspected the police of having done X1 and done /did X2.

此题二步

一步: 平行结构的意思单一性

当平行结构的连词 and 连接对象引起争议时, 修改方法有两个: 1 > 改变连接对象的位置; 2 > 在连接对象前重复相应的介词。

A B C 选项 如果 used 是过去分词, and 连接 taped 和 used, 构成 having done and done 的并列结构; 如果 used 是过去式, and 连接 suspected 和 used, 构成 she did X1 and did X2 的并列结构。所以, and 连接对象引起争议, 错。 ➤ 排除 A B C

二步: 用词简洁性

E 选项 be supportive of 故意复杂化, 笨拙, 可以用动词 support 直接表达。 ➤ 排除 E

正确选项 D

在连接对象前重复相应的介词, 避免引起争议: suspect sb. of doing... and of doing...。

61. Scientists have recently discovered what could be the largest and oldest living organism on Earth, a giant fungus that is an interwoven filigree of mushrooms and rootlike tentacles spawned by a single fertilized spore some 10,000 years ago and extending for more than 30 acres in the soil of a Michigan forest.

- (A) extending (B) extends
- (C) extended (D) it extended
- (E) is extending

读题

Scientists have discovered what..., a giant fungus that is an interwoven filigree of...

spawned by and extending for...

必杀一步

一步:并列关系的合理性

从语法和逻辑关系上看,原句-ed 分词短语 spawned by... 和-ing 分词短语 extending for... 并列,形式对称,并且两个动作在概念上具有时间先后关系,功能上作定语修饰名词 filigree。

B 选项 谓语动词 extends 不能和非谓语动词 spawned 并列,只能和定语从句谓语动词 is 并列(a giant fungus that is...and extends...),a giant fungus that extends for... 逻辑搭配不合理,而且 extend 的动作执行者改变,所以 and 并列连接对象不合理。

C 选项 extended 作为-ed 分词形式和 spawned 并列修饰 filigree, filigree is extended for...,-ed 分词的被动含义不合理;如果 extended 作为谓语动词和 is 并列,a giant fungus extended for... 逻辑搭配及一般过去时都不合理,所以无论 extended 作为分词还是动词的一般过去时都不能保证并列关系的合理性。

D 选项 完整句子 it extended 只能和主句 Scientists have discovered... 并列,并列关系不合理。

E 选项 is extending 与定语从句的谓语动词 is... 并列(a giant fungus that is...and is extending...), a giant fungus that is extending for... 逻辑意思,extend 的动作执行者及现在进行时都不合理,所以上述并列关系不能成立。

➡一步到位,排除 B C D E

正确选项 A

185

62. In a plan to stop the erosion of East Coast beaches, the Army Corps of Engineers proposed building parallel to shore a breakwater of rocks that would rise six feet above the waterline and act as a buffer, so that it absorbs the energy of crashing waves and protecting the beaches.

(A) act as a buffer, so that it absorbs

(B) act like a buffer so as to absorb

(C) act as a buffer, absorbing

(D) acting as a buffer, absorbing

(E) acting like a buffer, absorb

换题

In a plan to..., sb. proposed building a breakwater of rocks that would rise... and act as..., so 败 that it absorbs...and protecting...

名词的修饰语应尽可能有层次地分布在名词前或名词后,并且保持逻辑关系清晰。常用模式为:限定词+前置修饰语+中心词+后置修饰语。如本题中,a breakwater of rocks 后有定语从句修饰,所以形容词短语 parallel to shore 放在了所修饰名词前,避免了引起争议。

必杀一步

一步:平行结构形式要对称

A B E 选项 protecting 无法和动词 absorb 并列,只能和 building 并列,proposed building a

breakwater of rocks...and protecting the beaches...,逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 A B E

D 选项 acting 无法和 rise 并列,共同作定语从句的谓语动词,只能和 building 并列,而逻辑意思 proposed acting as a buffer 不合理。 ➤ 排除 D

正确选项 C

In a plan to..., sb. proposed building a breakwater of rocks that would rise...and act as..., absorbing...and protecting...

第七章

比较结构

比较是指一个人、事、物与另一个人、事、物或几个人、事、物之间就行为、性质、特征、外形、数量等的相互对比。

一、比较结构的基本原则

比较对象之间要有可比性，即概念必须对等。例如：Unlike/ Like A, B do... 和 In contrast to A, B do... 中，A 与 B 应是同一类概念。

二、比较结构中的用词原则

1. 替代原则：比较从句中与比较对象重复的名词尽可能用 that 或 those 代替。具体地说，在前面已出现的不可数名词或单数名词，用 that 代替；在前面已出现的复数名词，用 those 代替。
2. 对称原则：比较的对应部分在形式上应尽可能保持对称。
3. 语序原则：比较从句使用倒装结构和陈述语序皆可。
4. 种属原则：当一个事物(属)与它所属的类(种)比较时，必须用 any other 把它自身排除在从属范围之外。

三、as 或 than 引导的比较从句中的省略原则

1. 比较从句谓语与主句谓语相同，可用 do, did 或 does 代替。
2. 比较从句连系动词 be 与主句连系动词 be 相同，可以省略 be，也可以不省略。
3. 主句谓语动词短语使用“助动词(如 have, has, had, will)或情态动词(can, could, may, should) + verb”形式时，比较从句往往省略 verb，保留助动词或情态动词。
4. 比较从句的主语和谓语与主句的主语和谓语相同时，可以全部省去，常常保留作状语的介词短语或状语从句。
5. 比较从句的主语与主句主语相同，可以省略。

四、比较从句中的时态与情态

1. 比较从句与主句时态一致，即两比较对象的动作发生的时间相同或同一事物的不同动作发生的时间相同。例如：

I eat more food than he does.

Contrary to the general impression, this quest for import relief has hurt more companies than it has helped.

2. 比较从句与主句时态不一致，即两比较对象的动作是相同的，但其发生的时间却不一致，或同一事物的相同动作发生的时间不同，than 或 as 从句中补出的助动词的时态由时间状语和句子意思决定。例如：

I eat more food than he did last year.

The economy of Florida is more diversified than it was ten years ago.

3. 比较从句的情态与主句的情态可以一致，也可以不一致，由句子意思决定。

I can eat more food than he can.

I eat more food than he can.

五、倍数的表达

1. twice 用法

twice as many...as; twice as much...as; twice + the + n.; twice + what 从句

2. 用动词表达倍数

动词 double (是/为...的两倍), triple (是/为...的三倍), quadruple (是/为...的四倍), quintuple (是/为...的五倍) 可用主动语态,也可用被动语态,但不能和 as 搭配。

3. ...times(或数字) + as + 形容词或副词 + as...

4. sb. be + 百分数 + more likely to do sth. than to do sth.

六、比较结构中的习惯搭配

1. as + adj. + a/an + n. + as...

在比较两个人或事物在某方面相同时,可以用 as + adj. + a/an + n. + as...。例如:

Exercising is as good a way as any to lose unwanted weight.

2. more because... than because... 更多地因为..., 而不是因为...

3. not...so much A as B 与其说 A 倒不如说 B

4. the more... the more... 越..., 越...

该结构本为倒装语序,其中 be 动词常常省略, the more 前不能再加修饰语。

5. no more...than 与...同样不; no more than 最多, 不超过

6. no less...than 与...一样; no less than 多达, 竟然多达

7. more...than 与 less...than

8. 在“verb. + more of / less of + n.”结构中, more of (在更大程度上)和 less of (在较少程度上)修饰前面的动词。例如:

I will see less of you in the future.

9. ...be more/less likely... than...

10. at least as great as... 至少等于

11. as much as 几乎等于

12. as great as, or greater than, ...

as good as, or better than, ...

13. the same as...

14. like + n. 表比较, 强调同一类事物在某方面具有相似性; as + 句子表比较, as 从句强调动作的相似性。

15. do like (但 do unlike 错); be like/unlike; 标准书面语中, like 后只加名词表比较, 不能加句子。

七、语义上比较或对比的结构

语义上具有比较或对比(如含有 compared with, below, above, superior to 等词)的结构,也要求比较对象或对比对象具有可比性,在形式上要尽可能对称。

◆ 练习题及其详解 ◆

1. Unlike the United States, where farmers can usually depend on rain or snow all

year long, the rains in most parts of Sri Lanka are concentrated in the monsoon months, June to September, and the skies are generally clear for the rest of the year.

- (A) Unlike the United States, where farmers can usually depend on rain or snow all year long, the rains in most parts of Sri Lanka
- (B) Unlike the United States farmers who can usually depend on rain or snow all year long, the rains in most parts of Sri Lanka
- (C) Unlike those of the United States, where farmers can usually depend on rain or snow all year long, most parts of Sri Lanka's rains
- (D) In comparison with the United States, whose farmers can usually depend on rain or snow all year long, the rains in most parts of Sri Lanka
- (E) In the United States, farmers can usually depend on rain or snow all year long, but in most parts of Sri Lanka the rains

读题

Unlike the United States, the rains are...

必杀一步

一步: 比较结构

Unlike X1, X2 do...: 比较对象之间要有可比性。

A B D 选项 the United States 和 the rains 比较对象概念不对等。

C 选项 those 指代重复的名词 parts, parts of the United States 和 parts of rains 比较对象概念不对等。 ➤ 一步到位, 排除 A B C D

正确选项 E

句子并列并不要求主语(farmers 和 the rains)是同一类概念。

8. Unlike Schoenberg's twelve-tone system that dominated the music of the postwar period, Bartok founded no school and left behind only a handful of disciples.

- (A) Schoenberg's twelve-tone system that dominated
- (B) Schoenberg and his twelve-tone system which dominated
- (C) Schoenberg, whose twelve-tone system dominated
- (D) the twelve-tone system of Schoenberg that has dominated
- (E) Schoenberg and the twelve-tone system, dominating

读题

unlike sth., Bartok founded and left.

必杀一步

一步: 比较对象之间要有可比性

A D 选项 system 与 Bartok(人), 不是同一类概念, 无法进行比较。

B E 选项 Schoenberg and system 与 Bartok, 比较对象概念不对等, 无可比性。

➤ 排除 A B D E

正确选项 C

Schoenberg(人)和 Bartok(人)比较,概念对等。

3. Unlike a funded pension system, in which contributions are invested to pay future beneficiaries, a pay-as-you-go approach is the foundation of Social Security.

- (A) a pay-as-you-go approach is the foundation of Social Security
- (B) the foundation of Social Security is a pay-as-you-go approach
- (C) the approach of Social Security is pay-as-you-go
- (D) Social Security's approach is pay-as-you-go
- (E) Social Security is founded on a pay-as-you-go approach

读题

Unlike sth., in which..., 主句

此题一步

一步:比较对象之间要有可比性

Unlike X1, X2 is sth.: 比较对象概念要对等。

A C D 选项 system(系统)和 approach(方法)不属于同一类概念,没有可比性。

B 选项 system(系统)和 foundation(基础)两者概念不对等,不能构成比较。

一步到位,排除 A B C D

正确选项 E

a funded pension system 和 Social Security 属于同一类概念,比较对象对等。

191

4. Unlike auto insurance, the frequency of claims does not affect the premiums for personal property coverage, but if the insurance company is able to prove excessive loss due to owner negligence, it may decline to renew the policy.

- (A) Unlike auto insurance, the frequency of claims does not affect the premiums for personal property coverage
- (B) Unlike with auto insurance, the frequency of claims do not affect the premiums for personal property coverage
- (C) Unlike the frequency of claims for auto insurance, the premiums for personal property coverage are not affected by the frequency of claims
- (D) Unlike the premiums for auto insurance, the premiums for personal property coverage are not affected by the frequency of claims
- (E) Unlike with the premiums for auto insurance, the premiums for personal property coverage is not affected by the frequency of claims

此题一步

一步:比较结构

unlike X1, X2 do sth.: 比较对象 X1 和 X2 必须形式对称,概念对等。

A 选项 auto insurance 和 the frequency 没有可比性。

B E 选项 with 介词短语和 the premiums 形式不对称。

C 选项 the frequency 和 the premiums 不是同一类概念,无法进行比较。

一步到位,排除 A B C E

正确选项 D

the premiums for auto insurance 与 the premiums for personal property 进行比较。

5. Senior executives had a larger percentage increase in pay in 1990 than the wages of other salaried workers.

- (A) Senior executives had a larger percentage increase in pay in 1990 than
- (B) The percentage of senior executives' pay increase in 1990 was larger than for
- (C) The 1990 increase in pay for senior executives was larger in terms of percentage than
- (D) In 1990 senior executives had a larger pay increase in terms of percentage than did
- (E) The pay of senior executives increased in 1990 by a larger percentage than did

必杀一步

一步:比较对象之间要有可比性

- A 选项 sb. had a larger percentage increase than sth., sb. 和 sth. 没有可比性。
- B 选项 the percentage of sth. was larger than for sth., 比较对象形式不对称。
- C 选项 the increase was larger than the wage, increase 和 wage 没有可比性。
- D 选项 sb. had a larger percentage increase than did sth., sb. 和 sth. 没有可比性。

一步到位,排除 A B C D

正确选项 E

the pay increased by a larger percentage than did the wage.

比较从句中的 did 替代主句谓语动词 increased。

6. Unlike a typical automobile loan, which requires a fifteen- to twenty-percent down payment, the lease-loan buyer is not required to make an initial deposit on the new vehicle.

- (A) the lease-loan buyer is not required to make
- (B) with lease-loan buying there is no requirement of
- (C) lease-loan buyers are not required to make
- (D) for the lease-loan buyer there is no requirement of
- (E) a lease-loan does not require the buyer to make

必杀一步

一步:比较对象概念对等,形式对称

unlike X1, X2...: 比较对象 X1 和 X2 必须形式对称,概念对等。

- A C 选项 loan 和 buyer 概念不对等。
- B D 选项 名词 loan 和介词短语 with lease-loan buying (B 选项) 及 for the lease-loan buyer (D 选项), 形式不对称, 不能进行比较。一步到位,排除 A B C D

正确选项 E

比较对象 a typical automobile loan 和 a lease-loan 形式对称——都是名词,概念对等——都是贷款。

7. Because natural gas is composed mostly of methane, a simple hydrocarbon, vehicles powered by natural gas emit less of certain pollutants than the burning of gasoline or diesel fuel.

- (A) less of certain pollutants than the burning of gasoline or diesel fuel
- (B) fewer of certain pollutants than burning gasoline or diesel fuel do
- (C) less of certain pollutants than gasoline or diesel fuel
- (D) fewer of certain pollutants than does burning gasoline or diesel fuel
- (E) less of certain pollutants than those burning gasoline or diesel fuel

读题

Because..., vehicles emit less of certain pollutants than the burning of ...

此题一步

一步:比较对象概念要对等

A B 选项 物质名词 vehicles 与动作性名词 the burning 没有可比性。

C D 选项 vehicles 与 gasoline or diesel fuel 不是属于同一类概念的名词,无法进行比较。

因此一步到位,排除 A B C D

正确选项 E

1) less of 的修饰对象

emit less of pollutants, less of (较少地) 向前修饰动词 emit,而不是向后修饰名词 pollutants。

2) 比较从句中的代词 those

比较从句中,those 代替作为比较对象的重复名词 vehicles, burning gasoline or diesel fuel 分词短语作定语修饰 those。

8. In feudal Europe, urban areas developed from clusters of houses where peasants lived and commuted to farmlands in the countryside, unlike homesteading policies in the American West that required residency on the land itself in order to obtain eventual ownership.

- (A) In feudal Europe, urban areas developed from clusters of houses where peasants lived and commuted to farmlands in the countryside, unlike homesteading policies in the American West that
- (B) In feudal Europe, urban areas developed from clusters of houses where peasants lived and from which they commuted to farmlands in the countryside, but in the American West homesteading policies
- (C) Unlike feudal Europe where urban areas developed from clusters of houses where peasants lived and commuted to farmlands in the countryside, the American West's homesteading policies
- (D) Unlike feudal Europe where urban areas developed from clusters of houses where peasants lived and commuted to farmlands in the countryside, the homesteading policies of the American West

- (E) Urban areas developed from clusters of houses where peasants lived from which they commuted to farmlands in the countryside in feudal Europe, unlike the American West where homesteading policies

读题

In feudal Europe, urban areas developed from..., unlike homesteading policies.

此题一步

一步:比较对象之间要有可比性

like/unlike + 名词,一般放在句首表示比较,放在句尾容易就近修饰名词,从而引起争议。

A 选项 homesteading policies 与句子主语 urban areas 没有可比性,并且 unlike 放在句尾容易产生争议。

C D 选项 feudal Europe 与句子主语 homesteading policies 没有可比性。

E 选项 the American West 与句子主语 urban areas 没有可比性,并且 unlike 放在句尾。

一步到位,排除 A C D E

正确选项 B

转折并列句

句子 1, but + 句子 2: In feudal Europe, urban areas developed from..., but in the American West, homesteading policies required...

9. Unlike the lives of Pushkin, Gogol, Tolstoi, and Dostoevski, subjects of other Troyat biographies, Chekhov belongs to the twentieth century, an age of fretfulness and melancholy skepticism.

- (A) Unlike the lives of Pushkin, Gogol, Tolstoi, and Dostoevski, subjects of other Troyat biographies, Chekhov belongs
- (B) Chekhov, unlike the other Troyat biographies of Pushkin, Gogol, Tolstoi, and Dostoevski, belongs
- (C) The life of Chekhov, unlike the lives of the subjects of other Troyat biographies, Pushkin, Gogol, Tolstoi, and Dostoevski, belongs
- (D) Chekhov and his life, unlike that of the other Troyat biographies—Pushkin, Gogol, Tolstoi, and Dostoevski, belong
- (E) The life of Chekhov, unlike that of other Troyat biographies of Pushkin, Gogol, Tolstoi, and Dostoevski, belongs

读题

Unlike the lives of ..., subjects of ..., Chekhov belongs to...

subjects of other Troyat biographies 作为同位语,解释说明 Pushkin, Gogol, Tolstoi, and Dostoevski

此题一步

一步:比较对象之间要有可比性

A 选项 lives of ... 与 Chekhov 比较对象不对等。

B 选项 Chekhov 与 biographies 不对等。

D 选项 Chekhov and his life 与 that of the other Troyat biographies 不对等, 并且 that 无法指代 subject, 只能指代 life, “传记的生活”, 逻辑意思不合理。

E 选项 that of other Troyat biographies, that 指代 life, “传记的生活”, 逻辑意思不合理。

一步到位, 排除 A B D E

正确选项 C

10. According to his own account, Frederic-Auguste Bartholdi, the sculptor of the Statue of Liberty, modeled the face of the statue like his mother's and the body like his wife's.

(A) modeled the face of the statue like his mother's and the body like his wife's

(B) modeled the face of the statue after that of his mother and the body after that of his wife

(C) modeled the face of the statue like his mother and the body like his wife

(D) made the face of the statue after his mother and the body after his wife

(E) made the face of the statue look like his mother and the body look like his wife

必杀一步

一步: 比较对象形式要对称, 概念要对等

习惯搭配: model X1 after X2 (仿照, 模仿), after 前后的名词进行比较。如不了解上述用法, 解题时可先不考虑这一搭配, 从比较原则入手。

A 选项 like 前后名词进行比较, n. of n. 结构与 n.'s 结构形式上不对称。

C 选项 like 前后名词进行比较, face 与 mother 比较, body 与 wife 比较, 比较对象概念不对等, 逻辑意思不合理。

D 选项 after 前后名词进行比较, 比较对象概念不对等, 逻辑意思不合理。

E 选项 look like 前后两个名词进行比较, face 与 mother 比较, body 与 wife 比较, 逻辑意思不合理。一步到位, 排除 A C D E

正确选项 B

that 指代重复的名词 face/body, that of 等于 face/body of, after 前后比较对象形式对称, 概念对等, 逻辑意思合理。

11. Unlike other arachnids, which have their nerve cells evenly distributed along their bodies, the scorpion nerve cells are clustered in its head, like a mammal's.

(A) bodies, the scorpion nerve cells are clustered in its head, like a mammal's

(B) bodies, the scorpion's head had a cluster of nerve cells, as a mammal does

(C) body, the scorpion has a cluster of nerve cells in its head, as a mammal does

(D) body, nerve cells are clustered in the scorpion's head, like a mammal's

(E) body, a cluster of nerve cells is in the scorpion's head, like a mammal's

读题

Unlike X1, X2 are ...

此步一步

一步:比较对象之间要有可比性

A D E 选项 arachnids 和 nerve cells/ a cluster of nerve cells 没有可比性。

B 选项 arachnids 和 head 没有可比性。一步到位,排除 A B D E

补选

代词指代

A 选项 代词 its 无法指代前面充当名词定语的 scorpion。

正确选项 C

along their body, 单数 body 强调整体概念。

比较从句中的 does 代替主句谓语动词 has, the scorpion has... 与 a mammal has... 比较对象形式对称,概念对等。

12. Like their male counterparts, women scientists are above average in terms of intelligence and creativity, but unlike men of science, their female counterparts have had to work against the grain of occupational stereotyping to enter a "man's world."

(A) their female counterparts have had to work

(B) their problem is working

(C) one thing they have had to do is work

(D) the handicap women of science have had is to work

(E) women of science have had to work

此步二步

一步:比较对象之间要有可比性

B C D 选项 比较对象 men of science 和 problem/one thing/ the handicap women 不是同一类概念,无法进行比较。并且 D 选项中添加 handicap, 逻辑意思不合理。

一步到位,排除 B C D

二步:比较对象形式上要尽可能对称

A 选项 their female counterparts 与 men of science, 形式上不对称, men of science 应对应前文 women scientists 改为 men scientists。一步到位,排除 A

补选

代词指代

C 选项 代词 they 指代对象不清。

正确选项 E

n. of 结构 men of science 与 n. of 结构 women of science, 形式上完全对称。

13. In contrast to true hibernators such as woodchucks and hedgehogs, whose body temperatures drop close to the freezing point during the winter months, the body temperature of bears remains nearly normal throughout their prolonged sleep.

(A) the body temperature of bears remains nearly normal

- (B) a nearly normal body temperature is maintained by bears
- (C) a bear's body temperature remains nearly normal
- (D) a bear maintains a body temperature that is nearly normal
- (E) bears maintain a nearly normal body temperature

读题

In contrast to . . . , the body temperature of bears remains . . .

必杀二步

一步: 比较对象之间要有可比性

A B C 选项 true hibernators 与 the body temperature 没有可比性。 ➤ 排除 A B C

二步: 简洁性原则

D 选项 temperature that is normal 表达不简洁, 用 normal temperature 替换。 ➤ 排除 D

正确选项 E

14. As contrasted with the honeybee, the yellow jacket can sting repeatedly without dying and carries a potent venom that can cause intense pain.

- (A) As contrasted with the honeybee
- (B) In contrast to the honeybee's
- (C) Unlike the sting of the honeybee
- (D) Unlike that of the honeybee
- (E) Unlike the honeybee

必杀二步

197

一步: 习惯用法

A 选项 as contrasted with 搭配错, 习惯搭配为: in contrast to / in contrast with.

➤ 排除 A

二步: 比较对象之间要有可比性

B 选项 the honeybee's 后所省略的名词不明确, 并且 the yellow jacket 与 the honeybee's 比较对象不对等。

C 选项 the yellow jacket 与 the sting 无法比较。

D 选项 that 无指代对象, the yellow jacket 与 that of the honeybee 也无法比较。

➤ 排除 B C D

正确选项 E

15. Ranked as one of the most important of Europe's young playwrights, Franz Xaver Kroetz has written forty plays; his works—translated into over thirty languages—are produced more often than any contemporary German dramatist.

- (A) than any
- (B) than any other
- (C) than are any
- (D) than those of any other
- (E) as are those of any

读题

Ranked as . . . , sb. has written . . . ; sth. —插入语— are produced . . .

必杀二步

一步:比较对象对等

A B C 选项 比较对象是 his works 作品和 dramatist 剧作家,两者概念不同,不能进行比较。排除 B C D

二步:习惯用法

E 选项 more...as 搭配错误,应改为 more...than。排除 E

正确选项 D

those 指代重复的名词 works。

16. The unskilled workers at the Allenby plant realized that their hourly rate of \$ 4.11 to \$ 4.75 was better than many nearby factory wages.

- (A) many nearby factory wages
- (B) many wages in nearby factories
- (C) what are offered by many nearby factories
- (D) it is in many nearby factories
- (E) that offered by many nearby factories

必杀二步

一步:比较对象之间要有可比性

A B 选项 hourly rate(每小时工资)与 wage(每周工资)概念不对等,无可比性。

排除 A B

二步:比较从句的时态

主句为一般过去时(realized),宾语从句中也为一般过去时(was),所以 than 从句应优先使用一般过去时。虽然有时候比较从句的时态可以与主句不一致,但必须从逻辑关系上分析这种不一致是否合理。

C 选项 what are offered by... 一般现在时,时态错。

D 选项 it is in... 一般现在时,时态错。排除 C D

正确选项 E

在比较结构中,用 that 或 those 代替作为比较对象的重复名词。

E 选项 that 代替 hourly rate,过去分词 offered 修饰 that,比较对象对等。

17. Chicago, where industrial growth in the nineteenth century was more rapid than any other American city, was plagued by labor troubles like the Pullman Strikes of 1894.

- (A) where industrial growth in the nineteenth century was more rapid than any other American city
- (B) which had industrial growth in the nineteenth century more rapid than that of other American cities
- (C) which had growth industrially more rapid than any other American city in the nineteenth century
- (D) whose industrial growth in the nineteenth century was more rapid than any other

American city

- (E) whose industrial growth in the nineteenth century was more rapid than that of any other American city

读题

Chicago, where industrial growth... was more rapid than any other American city, was plagued by...

必杀二步

一步:比较对象之间要有可比性

A D 选项 industrial growth 与 any other American city 之间没有可比性。✂ 排除 A D

二步:形容词的使用

B C 选项 原句中的形容词 rapid 作表语,但在 BC 选项中改作定语,错。此外,C 选项将原句中的形容词 industrial 改为副词 industrially,定语变成状语,错。

✂ 排除 B C

正确选项 E

18. In contrast to large steel plants that take iron ore through all the steps needed to produce several different kinds of steel, processing steel scrap into a specialized group of products has enabled small mills to put capital into new technology and remain economically viable.

- (A) processing steel scrap into a specialized group of products has enabled small mills to put capital into new technology and remain
(B) processing steel scrap into a specialized group of products has enabled small mills to put capital into new technology, remaining
(C) the processing of steel scrap into a specialized group of products has enabled small mills to put capital into new technology, remaining
(D) small mills, by processing steel scrap into a specialized group of products, have been able to put capital into new technology and remain
(E) small mills, by processing steel scrap into a specialized group of products, have been able to put capital into new technology and remained

读题

In contrast to..., 句子。

必杀二步

一步:比较结构

In contrast to X1, X2 do...: X1 和 X2 必须形式对称、概念对等。

A B 选项 large steel plants 和 processing sth. 形式不对称。

C 选项 large steel plants 和 the processing of sth. 概念不对等。✂ 排除 A B C

二步:不定式并列

E 选项 to put 和 remained 形式上不能构成不定式并列,并且没有线索表明两个动作发生在不同的时间里。✂ 排除 E

正确选项 D

large steel plants 和 small mills 形式对称、概念对等; to put 和 (to) remain 不定式并列, 省略了第二个 to。

19. Like John McPhee's works, Ann Beattie painstakingly assembles in her works an interesting and complete world out of hundreds of tiny details about a seemingly uninteresting subject.

- (A) Like John McPhee's works, Ann Beattie painstakingly assembles in her works
- (B) Like John McPhee, Ann Beattie's works painstakingly assemble
- (C) Like John McPhee, Ann Beattie painstakingly assembles in her works
- (D) Just as John McPhee's, so Ann Beattie's works painstakingly assemble
- (E) Just as John McPhee, Ann Beattie painstakingly assembles in her works

必杀二步

一步: 比较对象之间要有可比性

like X1, X2 do sth.: 比较对象 X1 和 X2 必须对等。

A 选项 John McPhee's works 和 Ann Beattie 概念不对等。

B 选项 John McPhee 和 Ann Beattie's works 概念也不对等。 ➤ 排除 A B

二步: 习惯用法

D E 选项 just as + 名词, 表示作为..., 不表示比较。 ➤ 排除 D E

正确选项 C

修饰语位置的改变

in her works 作状语, 本应放在句尾, 但放在句尾可能作定语修饰 subject, 为了避免引起争议, 将 in her works 提前。

20. As a result of medical advances, many people that might at one time have died as children of such infections as diphtheria, pneumonia, or rheumatic fever now live well into old age.

- (A) that might at one time have died as children
- (B) who might once have died in childhood
- (C) that as children might once have died
- (D) who in childhood might have at one time died
- (E) who, when they were children, might at one time have died

读题

As a result of..., many people... now live well into old age.

划线部分是 that 定语从句, 修饰 people。

必杀二步

一步: 对比性结构的概念对应

原句中的定语从句 (...might have died) 与主句 (...live) 在逻辑意思上形成对比性结构, 形式上要尽可能对称, 概念要对等。

A C E 选项 定语从句中的 as children/ when they were children 与主句中的 into old age 概念不对应,应改为 in childhood,它与 into old age 构成对等。 ➤ 排除 A C E

第二步:意思单一性

标准书面语中应避免使用口语中可接受的多义词,以保证语义的单一性。

A D E 选项 定语从句中的 at one time 有多种含义,常用于口语中,应改为 once; once 不但表达简洁,而且意思单一,同时和主句中的 now 形式上对称,概念对等。

➤ 排除 A D E

正确选项 B

情态动词 + 完成时态(might have died)表示推测; once 与 now 相对应, might have died 与 live 相对应, in childhood 与 into old age 相对应。

21. Like Byron at Missolonghi, Jack London was slowly killed by the mistakes of the medical men who treated him.

- (A) Like Byron (B) Like Byron's death
(C) Just as Byron died (D) Similar to Byron
(E) As did Byron

读题

Like 介词短语, + 主句. Like 介词短语在句首作比较状语。

必杀三步

一步:比较对象之间要有可比性

Like X1, X2(主句主语)……; X1 和 X2 必须是同一类事物。

B 选项 death(死亡)与 Jack London(人)无法比较。

C 选项 Byron died 表示主动含义,未划线的主句 Jack London was killed 表示被动含义,两者无法比较。 ➤ 排除 B C

第二步:习惯用法

D 选项 similar to 在句首永远错,应该用 like 替换; similar to 的习惯用法: X1 similar to X2 (与 X2 相似的 X1, similar to 作定语修饰 X1); X1 is similar to X2 (similar to 作表语)。 ➤ 排除 D

第三步:比较从句的省略

比较从句谓语与主句谓语相同,可用 do, did 或 does 代替。

E 选项 as did Byron, did 无法代替主句中的 be 动词。 ➤ 排除 E

正确选项 A

22. Balding is much more common among White males than males of other races.

- (A) than (B) than among
(C) than is so of (D) compared to
(E) in comparison with

必杀一步

一步:比较对象形式要对称

than 前面是介词短语 among White males, than 后面也必须使用介词短语, 以保证比较对象的形式对称。✎ 排除 A C D E

正确选项 B

23. In the fall of 1985, only 10 percent of the women entering college planned to major in education, while 28 percent chose business, making it the most popular major for women as well as for men.

- (A) as well as for men (B) as well as the men
(C) and men too (D) and men as well
(E) and also men

读题

Only 10 percent of...planned to..., while 28 percent chose...

必杀一步

一步: 比较对象形式要对称

for women 决定了比较对象必须是 for + 名词的形式, 只有 A 选项符合形式对称的要求。✎ 一步到位, 排除 B C D E

正确选项 A

202

24. Dirt roads may evoke the bucolic simplicity of another century, but financially strained townships point out that dirt roads cost twice as much as maintaining paved roads.

- (A) dirt roads cost twice as much as maintaining paved roads
(B) dirt roads cost twice as much to maintain as paved roads do
(C) maintaining dirt roads costs twice as much as paved roads do
(D) maintaining dirt roads costs twice as much as it does for paved roads
(E) to maintain dirt roads costs twice as much as for paved roads

必杀一步

一步: 比较对象形式要对称

A 选项 sth. cost some money 和 doing sth. 比较对象形式不对称。

C D 选项 doing sth. costs some money 和 sth. cost some money 进行比较, doing sth. 和 sth. 形式不对称。

E 选项 to do sth. costs some money 和 for sth. 比较对象形式不对称。✎ 一步到位, 排除 A C D E

正确选项 B

do 代替重复的动词 cost。

X1 cost some money to do 和 X2 cost (some money to do) 进行比较, 比较对象形式对称, X1 和 X2 概念对等。

25. Two new studies indicate that many people become obese more due to the

fact that their bodies burn calories too slowly than overeating.

- (A) due to the fact that their bodies burn calories too slowly than overeating
- (B) due to their bodies burning calories too slowly than to eating too much
- (C) because their bodies burn calories too slowly than that they are overeaters
- (D) because their bodies burn calories too slowly than because they eat too much
- (E) because of their bodies burning calories too slowly than because of their eating too much

读题

Studies indicate that people become obese more due to the fact than overeating.

必杀一步

一步:比较对象形式要对称,概念要对等

- A 选项 more due to the fact than doing, due to the fact 和 doing 形式上不对称。
- B 选项 more due to their bodies than to eating, their bodies 与 eating 形式不对称。
- C 选项 more because...than that..., because 从句和 that 从句形式上不对称。
- D 选项 more because of their bodies than because of their eating, 名词 bodies 与-ing 形式 eating 概念不对等。一步到位,排除 A B C D

正确选项 E

more because...than because...

203

26. It is as difficult to prevent crimes against property as those that are against a person.

- (A) those that are against a (B) those against a
- (C) it is against a (D) preventing those against a
- (E) it is to prevent those against a

必杀一步

一步:比较对象概念要对等,形式要对称

it 是形式主语,指代后面的不定式短语 to prevent..., 该短语应与第二个 as 后的对应部分比较。

- A B 选项 those 与不定式 to prevent... 无可比性,形式上也不对称;此外, A 选项中 that are 应省略但没省略,不简洁。
- C 选项 it is against a person 句子与不定式 to prevent... 形式上不对称,无可比性。
- D 选项 -ing 形式与不定式 to prevent... 形式上不对称,无可比性。

一步到位,排除 A B C D

正确选项 E

第二个 as 后补出形式主语 it, 是为了强调比较对象,并同时保证形式上对称。

27. While the owner of a condominium apartment has free and clear title to the dwelling, owners of cooperative apartments have shares in a corporation that owns a building and leases apartments to them.

- (A) While the owner of a condominium apartment has free and clear title to the dwelling,
- (B) The owner of a condominium apartment has free and clear title to the dwelling, but
- (C) Whereas owners of condominium apartments have free and clear title to their dwellings,
- (D) An owner of a condominium apartment has free and clear title to the dwelling, whereas
- (E) Condominium apartment owners have a title to their dwelling that is free and clear, while

读题

由 while 引导的状语从句, + 主句。

while 在句首表示转折含义。在英语中有三个类似的词表示转折含义: while, whereas, where。where 只有当放在句首作状语时才表示转折含义 (where... + 主句.); while 和 whereas 可放在句首, 也可放在主句后面的从句前, 都引导状语从句, 表转折含义。

必杀一步

一步: 意思对比的结构, 形式上要尽可能对称

未划线部分句子的主语为 owners of + 名词, 划线部分句子的主语在形式上应尽可能与之对称。

A B 选项 the owner of + 名词 与 owners of + 名词, 不对称。

D 选项 an owner of + 名词 与 owners of + 名词, 不对称。

E 选项 名词作定语修饰 owners 与 owners of + 名词, 不对称。 ➤ 排除 A B D E

补选

1> 不能改变原句的合理重心

B 选项 把原句的主从结构改成了并列结构, 原句的重心改变。

D E 选项 whereas/ while 放在了主句的后面, 语法上没有问题, 但把原句从句部分改成了主句, 主句部分变成了从句, 原句的重心改变。 ➤ 排除 B D E

2> 修饰对象的合理性

E 选项 定语从句 that is free and clear 语法上就近修饰 dwelling, 但逻辑上应跳越修饰 title, 修饰对象有争议。 ➤ 排除 E

正确选项 C

28. In metalwork one advantage of adhesive-bonding over spot-welding is that the contact, and hence the bonding, is effected continuously over a broad surface instead of a series of regularly spaced points with no bonding in between.

- (A) instead of
- (B) as opposed to
- (C) in contrast with
- (D) rather than at
- (E) as against being at

必杀二步

一步: 比较对象形式要对称

A B C 选项 介词短语 over a broad surface 与名词短语 a series of points 进行比较,比较对象形式不对称。 ➤ 排除 A B C

第二步:永远错误的形式

E 选项 as against being... 永远错。 ➤ 排除 E

补遗

1 > 习惯用法

未划线部分 one advantage of X1 over X2, X1 相对于 X2 的优势。

2 > 用词倾向性

GMAT 考试中,如果 instead of 和 rather than 同时出现,正确选项常优先使用 rather than,而较少使用 instead of。

正确选项 D

介词短语 over a surface 与介词短语 at points 进行比较,形式对称。

29. Local residents claim that San Antonio, Texas, has more good Mexican American restaurants than any city does in the United States.

- (A) any city does (B) does any other city
(C) other cities do (D) any city
(E) other cities

必杀一步

一步:比较结构中的种属关系

当一个事物(属)与它所从属的种类(种)比较时,必须用 other 把它自身排除在从属范围之外: any + other + n., 语气强烈, any 不能省略。

A D 选项 缺少 other 排除自身。

C E 选项 缺少 any, 改变原句的强烈语气。

D E 选项 缺少 do / does 代替重复的动词 has。 ➤ 一步到位,排除 A C D E

正确选项 B

205

30. The United States government employs a much larger proportion of women in trade negotiations than any government.

- (A) a much larger proportion of women in trade negotiations than any
(B) a much larger proportion of women in trade negotiations than does any other
(C) much larger proportions of women in trade negotiations than has any
(D) proportions of women in trade negotiations that are much larger than any
(E) proportions of women in trade negotiations that are much larger than any other

必杀二步

一步:比较结构中的种属关系

当一个事物(属)与它所从属的种类(种)比较时,必须用 other 把它自身排除在从属范围之外。 ➤ 排除 A C D

二步:定语从句修饰对象的合理性

E 选项 定语从句 that are much larger than... 不简洁, 并且 that 定语从句可能就近修饰 negotiations, 使修饰关系不合理。 \Rightarrow 排除 E

正确选项 B

比较从句中用 does 代替重复的动词 employs。

31. Los Angeles has a higher number of family dwellings per capita than any large city.

- (A) a higher number of family dwellings per capita than any large city
- (B) higher numbers of family dwellings per capita than any other large city
- (C) a higher number of family dwellings per capita than does any other large city
- (D) higher numbers of family dwellings per capita than do other large cities
- (E) a high per capita number of family dwellings, more than does any other large city

必杀三步

一步: 比较结构中的种属关系

当一个事物(属)与它所从属的种类(种)比较时, 必须用 other 把它自身排除在从属范围之外: any + other + n. 语气强烈, any 不能省略。 \Rightarrow 排除 A D

二步: 比较从句的省略

比较从句谓语动词与主句谓语动词相同时, 可以用 do, did 或 does 替换。 \Rightarrow 排除 B

三步: 修饰语的位置

修饰语位置的变化导致修饰对象的变化, 从而改变原句的意思。必须从逻辑上判断是否需要这种改变。

E 选项 per capita 修饰 number, 而原句中 per capita 修饰 family dwellings, 修饰语位置变动, 导致修饰对象的变化, 从而改变原句的合理意思。 \Rightarrow 排除 E

补遗

习惯用法: higher numbers of 永远错, 正确用法是 a higher number of。 \Rightarrow 排除 B D

正确选项 C

32. Salt deposits and moisture threaten to destroy the Mohenjo-Daro excavation in Pakistan, the site of an ancient civilization that flourished at the same time as the civilizations in the Nile delta and the river valleys of the Tigris and Euphrates.

- (A) that flourished at the same time as the civilizations
- (B) that had flourished at the same time as had the civilizations
- (C) that flourished at the same time those had
- (D) flourishing at the same time as those did
- (E) flourishing at the same time as those were

必杀二步

一步: 比较结构的用词原则

用 that 或 those 代替比较对象中重复的名词。在前面已出现的不可数名词或单数名词, 用 that 代替; 在前面已出现的复数名词, 用 those 代替。

C D E 三个选项 复数代词 *those* 无法代替前面的单数名词 *civilization*。 ➤ 排除 C D E

第二步:时态判断

B 选项 *that* 定语从句使用了过去完成时,但是没有任何过去时间标志和过去行为表明动作发生在过去的过去。 ➤ 排除 B

补遗

1> 动词还原

比较从句中任何省略的动词都必须能够还原。比较从句谓语动词与主句谓语动词相同,可用 *do*, *did* 或 *does* 代替。

主句谓语动词短语使用“助动词(如 *have*, *has*, *had*, *will*)/情态动词 + *verb*”形式时,比较从句往往省略 *verb*, 保留助动词/情态动词。

C 选项 定语从句中没有 *had* + *verb* 形式的动词短语,所以比较从句中的助动词 *had* 无法还原。

D 选项 比较从句中的 *did* 无法还原。

E 选项 比较从句中的 *were* 无法还原。

2> -ing 分词短语作定语和定语从句作定语的区别

-ing 分词短语作定语强调动作的多次性、重复性和客观性,无明确时间概念;定语从句作定语强调动作的一次性、具体时间的具体行为。

根据逻辑意思,文明的繁荣应该发生在过去某一具体的时期,所以用定语从句修饰 *an ancient civilization* 更合理。

正确选项 A

207

223. According to a recent poll, owning and living in a freestanding house on its own land is still a goal of a majority of young adults, like that of earlier generations.

(A) like that of earlier generations (B) as that for earlier generations

(C) just as earlier generations did (D) as have earlier generations

(E) as it was of earlier generations

必杀二步

一步:比较从句的省略

1) 比较从句中,任何省略的动词都必须能够还原:谓语与主句谓语相同,可用 *do*, *did* 或 *does* 代替。

C 选项 主句中没有实义动词可供比较从句中的 *did* 替换,*did* 无法还原。

2) 主句谓语动词短语使用“助动词(如 *have*, *has*, *had*, *will*)或情态动词(*can*, *could*, *may*, *should*) + *verb*”形式时,比较从句往往省略 *verb*, 保留助动词或情态动词。

D 选项 主句中没有 *have* + *verb* 形式的动词短语,所以比较从句中的助动词 *have* 无法还原。 ➤ 排除 C D

第二步:习惯用法

like + *n.*: 一般放在句首或主语后,与句子主语进行比较,作状语; *as* + *n.*: *as* 作为介词,表示“作为...”,不表示比较。

A 选项 *like* + *n.* 放在句尾不符合习惯用法; *that* 无明确指代对象。

B 选项 *as* + *n.* 不表示比较; *that* 也无明确指代对象。 ➤ 排除 A B

正确选项 E

句子基本结构为: doing sth. is a goal of sb., as it was of sb.。其中, it 指代 doing sth., was 后面省略了 a goal。

34. The guiding principles of the tax plan released by the Treasury Department could have even a greater significance for the economy than the particulars of the plan.

- (A) even a greater significance for the economy than
- (B) a significance that is even greater for the economy than
- (C) even greater significance for the economy than have
- (D) even greater significance for the economy than do
- (E) a significance even greater for the economy than have

读题

The guiding principles could have a greater significance than the particulars of the plan.

必需一步

一步: 比较从句的省略

- 1) 比较从句谓语与主句谓语相同, 可用 do, did 或 does 代替;
- 2) 主句谓语动词短语使用“助动词(如 have, has, had, will)或情态动词(can, could, may, should) + verb”形式时, 比较从句往往省略 verb, 保留助动词或情态动词;
- 3) 比较从句的主语和谓语与主句的主语和谓语相同时, 可以全部省去, 常常保留介词短语或状语从句。

A B 选项 比较从句中只有名词短语 the particulars of the plan, 没有出现语法上需要出现的而又可接受的助动词, 如 could, did, do, 不符合比较从句的省略原则。

排除 A B

C E 选项 than have the particulars of the plan, 根据省略原则 1 >, 比较从句中的 have 如果是实义动词就必须用 do 代替; 如果 have 是助动词, 根据省略原则 2 >, 主句谓语动词短语使用“情态动词(could) + verb(have)”的形式, 比较从句中应该保留 could 而不是 have。排除 C E

补选**不可数名词**

不可数名词不能用不定冠词 a/an 来修饰。

A B E 选项 significance 是不可数名词, 不能用不定冠词 a 来修饰。

正确选项 D

根据比较从句省略原则 1), 比较从句中的 do 代替主句中的实义动词 have。主句 could do 表示可能性, 比较从句 do 表示客观性/必然性, 可能性和客观性/必然性比较。

35. Tiny quantities of more than thirty rare gases, most of them industrial by-products, threaten to warm the Earth's atmosphere even more rapidly than carbon dioxide during the next fifty years.

- (A) to warm the Earth's atmosphere even more rapidly than carbon dioxide during the

next fifty years

- (B) to warm the Earth's atmosphere even more rapidly over the next fifty years than carbon dioxide will
- (C) during the next fifty years to warm the Earth's atmosphere even more rapidly than carbon dioxide
- (D) a warming of the Earth's atmosphere during the next fifty years even more rapid than carbon dioxide's
- (E) a warming of the Earth's atmosphere even more rapid than carbon dioxide's will be over the next fifty years

必杀二步

一步:不同时态的比较

时间短语 during the next fifty years 标志着比较从句必须使用将来时态。

A C D 选项 than carbon dioxide, 比较从句都没有明显标志表明用将来时态。并且 C 选项 during the next fifty years 位置改变, 修饰主句谓语动词 threaten, 与 threaten 时态不协调; D 选项中 carbon dioxide 没有理由加's。 **排除 A C D**

二步:习惯用法

E 选项 threat + 名词短语, 不符合习惯搭配, 应使用 threat to。 **排除 E**

正确选项 B

36. In the 1980's the rate of increase of the minority population of the United States was nearly twice as fast as the 1970's. 209

- (A) twice as fast as
- (B) twice as fast as it was in
- (C) twice what it was in
- (D) two times faster than that of
- (E) two times greater than

必杀一步

一步:比较结构

A E 选项 the 1970's 是个时间概念, 和 the rate of increase 概念不对等, 不能构成比较。

B 选项 it was in the 1970's 是个句子, 与名词短语 the rate of increase 形式不对称。

D E 选项 "...times + 形容词/副词比较级 + than..." 属于有争议结构, 标准书面语中避免使用此结构: 如 A is 3 times faster than B, 可理解为 "A 比 B 快 3 倍 ($A = B \times 4$)" 或 "A 比 B 快 2 倍 ($A = B \times 3$)"。另外, 标准书面语中, 在表示 "2 倍" 时, 往往用 double, twice, 一般不用 two times。 **一步到位, 排除 A B D E**

正确选项 C

从功能上讲, what 从句相当于名词短语, the rate of increase 和 what 从句构成了名词短语之间的比较, 比较对象对等。

37. Inuits of the Bering Sea were in isolation from contact with Europeans longer than Aleuts or Inuits of the North Pacific and northern Alaska.

- (A) in isolation from contact with Europeans longer than
- (B) isolated from contact with Europeans longer than

- (C) in isolation from contact with Europeans longer than were
- (D) isolated from contact with Europeans longer than were
- (E) in isolation and without contacts with Europeans longer than

必杀二步

一步:比较对象的单一性

A B E 选项 longer than 后为名词短语,比较从句结构不完整,导致比较对象引起争议。一种可能:Inuits of the Bering Sea (IBS) were in isolation from contact with Europeans 与 from contact with Aleuts or Inuits of the North Pacific and northern Alaska (AI) 比较;另一种可能:IBS were in isolation from contact with Europeans 与 AI were in isolation from contact with Europeans 比较。✂ 排除 A B E

二步:简洁性原则

A D E 选项 in isolation (from) 表达不简洁,直接可以用动词 isolate from 表达。
✂ 排除 A D E

正确选项 D

比较从句的省略

主句谓动词短语使用“助动词(如 have, has, had, will)或情态动词(can, could, may, should)+ verb”形式(本句为 were isolated)时,比较从句往往省略 verb(本句省略 isolated),保留助动词或情态动词(本句保留 were)。

210

38. In one of the bloodiest battles of the Civil War, fought at Sharpsburg, Maryland, on September 17, 1862, four times as many Americans were killed as would later be killed on the beaches of Normandy during D-Day.

- (A) Americans were killed as
- (B) Americans were killed than
- (C) Americans were killed than those who
- (D) more Americans were killed as there
- (E) more Americans were killed as those who

必杀一步

一步:习惯搭配

同级比较用 as...as...

B C 选项 as...than...搭配错。

D E 选项 more...as...搭配错。✂ 一步到位,排除 B C D E

正确选项 A

比较从句的主语省略

Four times as many Americans were killed as (Americans) would later be killed on...
比较从句省略了相同的主语 Americans。

39. The visiting pharmacologists concluded that the present amalgam of Chinese and Western medicine is probably as good, or better than, any system that might be devised for the patients who are treated at the Nan Kai hospital in Tian-jing.

- (A) as good, or better than, any system that might be devised for the patients who are
 (B) as good, or better, than any system that might be devised for patients being
 (C) as good, or better than, any system that might be devised for patients which are
 being
 (D) good as, or even better than, any other system that may be devised for the patients
 who are
 (E) as good as, or better than, any other system that might be devised for the patients

必杀一步**一步:同级比较**

A B C D 选项 同级比较 as good as 结构都不完整。一步到位,排除 A B C D

补选**比较结构中的种属关系**

当一个事物(属)与它所从属的种类(种)比较时,必须用 other 把它自身排除在从属范围之外: any + other + n. 语气强烈, any 不能省略。

A B C 选项 缺少 other 排除自身。

正确选项 E**1> 简洁性原则**

当定语从句和分词短语作定语都可以接受的情况下,根据简洁性原则,优先使用分词短语: the patients treated at... 比 the patients who are treated at 更简洁。

2> 宾语从句的时态

宾语从句陈述统计数据、科学事实、商业惯例等时,优先使用一般现在时,它的时态可以和主句的时态不协调。

211

40. Last year, land values in most parts of the pinelands rose almost so fast, and in some parts even faster than what they did outside the pinelands.

- (A) so fast, and in some parts even faster than what they did
 (B) so fast, and in some parts even faster than, those
 (C) as fast, and in some parts even faster than, those
 (D) as fast as, and in some parts even faster than, those
 (E) as fast as, and in some parts even faster than what they did

必杀二步**一步:同级比较**

同级比较的习惯搭配为: as + adj./adv. + as。排除 A B C

二步:比较对象形式要对称

E 选项 句子 land values rose 与从句 what they did 比较,比较对象形式不对称。排除 E

正确选项 D

1> 比较从句中作为比较对象的重复名词用 that/those 代替,本句中 those 代替 land values, 使比较对象形式对称。

2> and in some parts even faster than 前后用逗号隔开,作为插入语,使句子结构明确清晰。

41. Carbon-14 dating reveals that the megalithic monuments in Brittany are nearly 2,000 years as old as any of their supposed Mediterranean predecessors.

- (A) as old as any of their supposed (B) older than any of their supposed
(C) as old as their supposed (D) older than any of their supposedly
(E) as old as their supposedly

必杀二步

一步:比较结构

as old as 结构前面不能够加数量词。如果加了数量词,as old as 必须改为 older than。

➤ 排除 A C E

二步:形容词和副词不能混淆

D E 选项 supposedly 为副词,不能修饰名词短语 Mediterranean predecessors。而原句 supposed 为形容词,修饰名词 predecessors,逻辑意思也合理,不能改为副词。

➤ 排除 D E

正确选项 B

42. An inventory equal to 90 days sales is as much as even the strongest businesses carry, and then only as a way to anticipate higher prices or ensure against shortages.

- (A) as much as even (B) so much as even
(C) even so much as (D) even as much that
(E) even so much that

必杀一步

一步:习惯搭配

as much as 为同级比较的一种表达方式。

B C 选项 so...as...用在同级比较的否定句中: not so...as...。

D E 选项 that 引导状语从句,不表示比较,并且 D 选项 as...that...搭配错。

➤ 一步到位,排除 B C D E

补选

修饰语的位置

原句中 even 修饰形容词最高级 the strongest。

C D E 选项 even 的位置改变,破坏了原来的合理修饰关系。

正确选项 A

43. Never before had taxpayers confronted so many changes at once as they had in the Tax Reform Act of 1986.

- (A) so many changes at once as they had in
(B) at once as many changes as
(C) at once as many changes that there were with

- (D) as many changes at once as they confronted in
(E) so many changes at once that confronted them in

读题

Never before had sb. done...: 否定性短语 never before 位于句首时,引起部分倒装。

第二步**一步:同级比较**

- A 选项 so...as 只能用在否定句中,正确搭配: not so...as。
C 选项 as...that, 不符合习惯搭配,应使用 as...as。
E 选项 so...that 作为状语从句修饰 adj./adv./v., 不表示比较。而且,语法上 that 从句应就近作定语,不能与 so 搭配。 ➤ 排除 A C E

二步:比较对象之间要有可比性

- B 选项 as many as 前是个句子,表示变化的多少,其后是个法令的名称,两者没有可比性。
➤ 排除 B

正确选项 D**不同时态的比较**

比较从句使用一般过去时 they confronted, 主句使用过去完成时 taxpayers had confronted, 通过动词的不同形式表明不同时态下的比较, 同时体现出两个动作的先后逻辑关系。

44. More ancient Egyptian temples were constructed in the reign of Ramses II as in any other. 213

- (A) as in any other (B) as any other
(C) as in others (D) than others
(E) than in any other

第二步**一步:习惯搭配**

- A B C 选项 more...as...搭配错,应改为 more...than...。 ➤ 排除 A B C

二步:比较对象之间要有可比性

- D 选项 more temples were constructed than others. others 前缺少介词 in,使得 others 无法和 in the reign of Ramses II 比较, temples 与 others 又没有可比性。 ➤ 排除 D

正确选项 E**比较从句的省略**

any other 后省略了重复的名词 reign; 比较从句的主语和谓语与主句的主语和谓语相同时,可以全部省去,常常保留介词短语。in the reign of Ramses II 和 in any other (reign) 比较对象对等。

45. The question of whether to divest themselves of stock in companies that do business in South Africa is particularly troublesome for the nation's 116 private Black colleges because their economic bases are often more fragile than most predominantly White colleges.

- (A) than (B) than those of
(C) than is so of (D) compared to
(E) compared to those of

读题

The question is troublesome for Black colleges because X1 are more fragile than X2.

必杀二步

一步:习惯搭配

more...than...表示比较。

D E 选项 more...compared to 不符合习惯搭配。 ➤ 排除 D E

二步:比较对象之间要有可比性

A 选项 X1 (economic bases) 和 X2 (White colleges) 没有可比性。

C 选项 so 不能作为代词指代重复的名词,so of White colleges 不知道表示什么。

➤ 排除 A C

正确选项 B

those 指代作为比较对象的重复名词 economic bases, economic bases of Black colleges 与 those of White colleges 比较对象对等。

214

46. In a recent poll, 86 percent of the public favored a Clean Air Act as strong or stronger than the present act.

- (A) a Clean Air Act as strong or stronger than
(B) a Clean Air Act that is stronger, or at least so strong as,
(C) at least as strong a Clean Air Act as is
(D) a Clean Air Act as strong or stronger than is
(E) a Clean Air Act at least as strong as

必杀二步

一步:比较结构

as...as; more than

A D 选项 缺少 as 与 as strong 构成搭配。

B 选项 缺少 than 与 stronger 构成搭配,so strong as 不符合习惯搭配。 ➤ 排除 A B D

二步:比较从句的省略

比较从句的 be 动词与其主句的 be 动词相同时,可以省略。

C D 选项 语法上还原后的结构为: a Clean Air Act that is at least as strong as the present act is。其中,定语从句要简化,应省略 that is; as 比较从句中 be 动词 is 可省略。

➤ 排除 C D

正确选项 E

47. Several studies have found that the coronary patients who exercise most actively have half or less than half the chance of dying of a heart attack as those who are sedentary.

- (A) have half or less than half the chance of dying of a heart attack as those who are sedentary
- (B) have half the chance, or less, of dying of a heart attack than those who are sedentary do
- (C) have half the chance that they will die of a heart attack, or less, than those who are sedentary do
- (D) are at least fifty percent less likely to die of a heart attack as those who are sedentary
- (E) are at least fifty percent less likely than those who are sedentary to die of a heart attack

必杀二步

一步:比较结构

A 选项 half or less than half...as 永远错。

B C 选项 half..., or less, than 永远错。 ➤ 排除 A B C

二步:习惯搭配

D 选项 less...as...搭配错。 ➤ 排除 D

正确选项 E

常考句型: sb. be less likely / more likely than sb. to do...。

418. Wind resistance created by opening windows while driving results in a fuel penalty as great or greater than is incurred by using air conditioning.

215

- (A) as great or greater than is incurred by using air conditioning
- (B) that is as great or greater than is incurred using air conditioning
- (C) as great as or greater than that of using air conditioning
- (D) at least as great as air conditioning's
- (E) at least as great as that incurred by using air conditioning

读题

Wind resistance (主语) + -ed 分词 + while doing + results in (谓语) + 名词 + 形容词短语。

-ed 分词短语修饰主语, while doing 是连词 + 分词构成的状语从句省略形式,就近修饰-ed 分词短语中的动词 open, 逻辑主语等于 open 的主语。

介词 + 分词在句首,状语从句修饰主句,逻辑主语等于主句主语,但如果在句尾或者句中,要根据其修饰的动词判断逻辑主语。

必杀二步

一步:比较结构

GMAT 考试中经常出现将相等比较 as...as 和 more...than...形式比较合并在一起写的错误或者复杂的表达方法。

A B 选项 as great or greater than 永远错, 正确表达应该是: at least as great as 或者 as great as or greater than。 ➤ 排除 A B

第二步:不能改变原句的合理意思

原句意思:山风的阻力引起的 fuel penalty 与使用空调引起的 fuel penalty 进行比较。

- C 选项 that of using air conditioning 中的 that 指代 fuel penalty, 使用 of 结构修饰 that, 强调所属关系, 省略了原句中的 incurred by, 导致原句意思改变。
- D 选项 air conditioning's 省略了原句中的 incurred by, 导致原句意思改变, 并且名词's 结构使比较对象形式上不对称。✎ 排除 C D

正确选项 E

that 指代作为比较对象的重复名词短语 a fuel penalty; incurred by 保持了原句的合理意思。

49. Dr. Hakuta's research among Hispanic children in the United States indicates that the more the children use both Spanish and English, their intellectual advantage is greater in skills underlying reading ability and nonverbal logic.

- (A) their intellectual advantage is greater in skills underlying reading ability and nonverbal logic
- (B) their intellectual advantage is the greater in skills underlaying reading ability and nonverbal logic
- (C) the greater their intellectual advantage in skills underlying reading ability and nonverbal logic
- (D) in skills that underlay reading ability and nonverbal logic, their intellectual advantage is the greater
- (E) in skills underlying reading ability and nonverbal logic, the greater intellectual advantage is theirs

读题

research (主语核心词) indicates that the more...the more...

必需一步

一步:习惯搭配

the more...the more... (越...越...):符合这一结构的只有 C 选项。

✎ 一步到位,排除 A B D E

正确选项 C

the more...the more... 结构本为倒装语序,其中 be 动词常常省略,the more 前不能再加修饰语。

50. As rare as something becomes, be it a baseball card or a musical recording or a postage stamp, the more avidly it is sought by collectors.

- (A) As rare as something becomes, be it
- (B) As rare as something becomes, whether it is
- (C) As something becomes rarer and rarer, like
- (D) The rarer something becomes, like
- (E) The rarer something becomes, whether it is

必备二步

一步:习惯搭配

the more... the more...: 越..., 越...

该结构本为倒装语序, 其中 be 动词常常省略, the more 前不能再加修饰语。

✎ 排除 A B C

二步:举例的表达方式

在标准书面语中, like + 名词表示比较, 不表示举例。

D 选项 like X1 or X2 or X3 表示举例, 绝对错。✎ 排除 D

正确选项 E

whether it is X1 or X2 or X3 是举例的一种表示方法。

51. In its most recent approach, the comet Croommelin passed the Earth at about the same distance and in about the same position, some 25 degrees above the horizon, that Halley's comet will pass the next time it appears.

(A) that Halley's comet will pass (B) that Halley's comet is to be passing

(C) as Halley's comet (D) as will Halley's comet

(E) as Halley's comet will do

读题

In..., the comet passed... at the same distance and in the same position, 插入语, that Halley's comet will pass...

217

必备二步

一步:习惯用法

A B 选项 the same position that 中 the same 与 that 搭配错, 应改为 the same... as...。

✎ 排除 A B

二步:比较结构

C 选项 在 at the same distance as Halley's comet / in the same position as Halley's comet 中, 比较对象不对等。

E 选项 主句谓语动词短语使用“助动词(如 have, has, had, will)或情态动词(can, could, may, should) + verb”形式时, 比较从句往往省略 verb, 保留助动词或情态动词。as Halley's comet will do, do 多余, 必须省略。✎ 排除 C E

正确选项 D

52. St. John's, Newfoundland, lies on the same latitude as Paris, France, but in spring St. John's residents are less likely to be sitting at outdoor cafes than to be bracing themselves against arctic chills, shoveling snow, or seeking shelter from a raging northeast storm.

(A) residents are less likely to be sitting at outdoor cafes than to be bracing themselves against arctic chills, shoveling snow, or seeking

(B) residents are less likely to sit at outdoor cafes, and more to brace themselves a-

gainst arctic chills, shovel snow, or be seeking

- (C) residents are less likely to be sitting at outdoor cafes, and more likely to be bracing themselves against arctic chills, shoveling snow, or to be seeking
- (D) residents, instead of their sitting at outdoor cafes, they are more likely to brace themselves against arctic chills, shovel snow, or seek
- (E) residents, instead of sitting at outdoor cafes, are more likely to brace themselves against arctic chills, shovel snow, or to be seeking

读题

..., but St. John's residents are less likely to be doing X1 than to be doing X2, doing X3, or doing X4.

必杀一步

一步:习惯搭配

...be more/less likely... than...

B选项 be less likely...and more..., 错。

C选项 be less likely...and more likely...(缺少 than), 错。

D E选项 instead of..., be more likely...(缺少 than), 错。

B C D E选项都不符合习惯搭配。一步到位,排除 B C D E

补选

218

平行结构

B选项 to brace..., shovel...和 be seeking...形式不对称,be seeking 应该改为 seek,构成不定式并列 to brace..., shovel ...and seek...。

C选项 to be bracing, shoveling, or to be seeking 形式不对称,shoveling 和 seeking 前的 to be 必须一起省略,或者一起补出。

E选项 to brace..., shovel...和 to be seeking...形式不对称,to be seeking 应该改为 seek,构成不定式并列 to brace..., shovel ...and seek...。

正确选项 A

53. Nowhere in Prakta is the influence of modern European architecture more apparent than their government buildings.

- (A) more apparent than their
- (B) so apparent as their
- (C) more apparent than in its
- (D) so apparent than in their
- (E) as apparent as it is in its

读题

nowhere 在句首,句子使用部分倒装结构: Nowhere in Prakta is sth. more apparent than...。

必杀二步

一步:代词指代

A B D选项 代词 their 应指代句子中的复数名词,但句子中所有名词都是单数,所以代词

their 指代不清。 ➤ 排除 A B D

第二步:习惯搭配

Nowhere is sth. more...than..., B D E 选项都不符合该句型结构。 ➤ 排除 B D E

补遗

比较对象之间要有可比性

nowhere 是表示地点的副词,只能和表示地点的介词短语进行比较。

A 选项 nowhere 与名词短语 government buildings 无可比性。 ➤ 排除 A

正确选项 C

句意为:在 Prakta, 欧洲建筑对其政府建筑的影响最为明显。

代词 its 指代 Prakta; nowhere 与介词短语 in government buildings 有可比性; than 从句省略了与主句相同的主谓结构,保留介词短语。

54. Like Rousseau, Tolstoi rebelled against the unnatural complexity of human relations in modern society.

- (A) Like Rousseau, Tolstoi rebelled
- (B) Like Rousseau, Tolstoi's rebellion was
- (C) As Rousseau, Tolstoi rebelled
- (D) As did Rousseau, Tolstoi's rebellion was
- (E) Tolstoi's rebellion, as Rousseau's, was

必杀一步

219

一步:比较的表达方法

like(介词)+名词,表示比较,侧重同类事物比较;as(连词)+句子,表示比较,强调动作的相似性。

B 选项 like X1, X2 was...: X1 为人, X2 为动作性名词,两者概念不对等,不能进行比较。

C E 选项 as + 名词,不表示比较,表示作为...。

D 选项 主句中没有实义动词,导致比较从句中 did 没有替换对象。

➤ 一步到位,排除 B C D E

正确选项 A

55. Like Auden, the language of James Merrill is chatty, arch, and conversational—given to complex syntactic flights as well as to prosaic free-verse strolls.

- (A) Like Auden, the language of James Merrill
- (B) Like Auden, James Merrill's language
- (C) Like Auden's, James Merrill's language
- (D) As with Auden, James Merrill's language
- (E) As is Auden's the language of James Merrill

必杀一步

一步:比较结构

A B 选项 Auden 和 language 概念不同,无法比较。

D 选项 as + 介词短语, 不能表示比较。

E 选项 as be sb.'s the sth. of sb. is... 结构笨拙混乱, 不能表达比较含义。一步到位, 排除 A B D E

正确选项 C

56. The aristocratic values expressed in the writings of Marguerite Yourcenar place her within the French classical tradition, as does her passionate interest in history, particularly Roman history.

- (A) as does (B) so do
(C) as do (D) so is the case with
(E) similarly, does

读题

The aristocratic values place her..., as does her passionate interest in... expressed in the writings of... 作定语修饰主语 the aristocratic values

必杀一步

一步: as 引导的从句

as(连词) + 句子, 作方式状语从句, 强调动作的相似性; 当主从句谓语动词相同时, as 从句谓语动词可以用相应的助动词替换, 同时使用倒装结构。

原句的单数主语 her passionate interest 决定了谓语动词必须使用单数形式。

只有 A 选项满足以上要求。一步到位, 排除 B C D E

正确选项 A

57. Although fruit can no longer grow once it is picked, it continues for some time to respire, taking in oxygen and giving off carbon dioxide, similar to the way human beings breathe.

- (A) similar to the way human beings breathe
(B) similarly to human beings who are breathing
(C) just like the breathing of human beings
(D) as human beings when breathing
(E) just as human beings do when they breathe

必杀一步

一步: 动作相似性的表达

as/just as + 句子表示比较, 强调动作的相似性。

A 选项 用 similar to the way 表示动作的相似性, 表达不简洁, 永远错, 应该用 just as/ as + 句子替换。

B 选项 similarly to + 名词无法强调动作间的相似性。

C 选项 like + 名词, 表示比较, 但是无法强调动作间的相似性。

D 选项 as + 名词, 表示作为..., 不表示比较。一步到位, 排除 A B C D

正确选项 E

58. Like many self-taught artists, Perle Hessing did not begin to paint until she was well into middle age.

- (A) Like (B) As have
(C) Just as with (D) Just like
(E) As did

必杀一步

一步:比较的表达方法

like(介词)+名词,表示比较,侧重名词与句子的主语名词比较;as(连词)+句子,表示比较,强调动作的相似性。

B选项 as have many self-taught artists, have 如作为实义动词,逻辑意思不合理;have 作为助动词,无法还原,因为当主句谓语动词短语使用“助动词(如 have, has, had, will)或情态动词(can, could, may, should)+verb”形式时,比较从句往往省略 verb,保留助动词或情态动词。但本题主句谓语动词为实义动词,比较从句保留助动词 have 没有依据。

C选项 just as + 介词短语,不符合比较的表达方法。

D选项 just like 表示强烈语气,改变原句的一般语气。同时 just like 也不如 like 简洁。

E选项 as + 句子,强调动作的相似性,而原句的 like + 名词,侧重名词与句子的主语名词比较,所以 E 选项改变原句的强调重心。一步到位,排除 B C D E

正确选项 A

59. Similar to rising interest rates, consumer and producer prices have been rising.

- (A) Similar to rising interest rates, consumer and producer prices have been rising.
(B) Consumer and producer prices have been rising, as have interest rates.
(C) As interest rates are rising, so have consumer and producer prices.
(D) Consumer and producer prices have been rising, like interest rates do.
(E) Consumer and producer prices, as interest rates, have been rising.

必杀一步

一步:比较的表达方法

A选项 similar to 在句首永远错,应该用 like 替换。similar to 的习惯用法: X1 similar to X2 (与 X2 相似的 X1, similar to 作定语修饰 X1); X1 is similar to X2 (similar to 作表语)。

C选项 as interest rates are rising 是进行时态,所以 so have consumer and producer prices 中助动词 have 没有替换对象。

D选项 like + 句子,永远错。

E选项 as + 名词,表示作为...,不表示比较,consumer and producer prices 作为 interest rates 逻辑上不合理。一步到位,排除 A C D E

正确选项 B

as 方式状语从句

由 as 引导的方式状语从句(as have interest rates): 保留助动词(have),可以用倒装结

构，强调与主句之间的动作相似性。如：The book was banned in the US, as were two subsequent books.

60. Just as plant species native to regions with browsing mammals evolved many natural anti-browser defenses (such as sharp spines and toxic chemicals), so humans in malarial regions have evolved dozens of chemical defenses against malaria.

- (A) so humans in malarial regions have evolved dozens of chemical defenses against malaria
- (B) humans in malarial regions have been evolving dozens of chemical defenses against malaria
- (C) there has been, in malarial regions, an evolution of dozens of human chemical defenses against malaria
- (D) dozens of chemical defenses against malaria have been evolved by humans in malarial regions
- (E) similarly, in malarial regions, humans have evolved dozens of chemical defenses against malaria

读题

Just as plant species evolved..., so humans have evolved...

此题三步

222

一步：比较结构习惯用法

as 作为连词表示动作的相似性是 GMAT 考试中出现较多的考法，句型结构有以下几种：

- (just) as 从句, + 主句 (主句与从句要尽可能形式对称)
- (just) as 从句, + so + 主句 (主句与从句要尽可能形式对称)
- (just) as 从句, + so too + 主句 (主句要倒装)

CDE 选项 都不符合上述句型。 ➤ 排除 CDE

第二步：时态判断

B 选项 没有时间标志或上下文逻辑线索表明要使用现在完成进行时以强调 evolve 将继续进行。此外，原句 just as 从句, + so + 主句，表达正式，语气强烈；而 just as 从句, + 主句，省略 so，减弱原句的强烈语气。 ➤ 排除 B

正确选项 A

第八章

GMAT

修饰语、定语从句 和状语从句

一、修饰语的分类

修饰是重要的表达意思的手段。增加修饰成份是扩大基本句型的重要手段之一。书面语中常常通过各种修饰成份增加句子信息量,表达复杂的思想。修饰语可以分为四类:

1. 定语

定语的修饰对象为名词、名词短语和代词。

2. 同位语

同位语的修饰对象为名词或名词短语(参见第二章第三节)。

3. 状语

状语的修饰对象为动词、形容词、另一副词、介词、连词甚至整个句子。

4. 插入语

插入语表示对所述内容的看法或态度,或是表示总括、转换话题等意义,可以看作是句子的修饰语。插入语位置灵活,可以在句首、句尾或句中,常用逗号与句子主体部分分开。GMAT 语法考试中较少涉及。

二、定语和状语的形式

1. 定语的 9 种形式:

限定词,形容词,名词,名词所有格与物主代词,不定式, -ing 形式与 -ed 形式,同位语,介词短语,定语从句。

2. 状语的 5 种形式:

副词,介词短语, -ing 形式,不定式,状语从句。

3. 定语和状语不能混淆:

GMAT 语法考试中常常将定语和状语故意混淆,用定语作状语或用状语作定语,解题时必须根据上下文逻辑关系做出准确判断。

三、修饰语使用的四项基本原则

1. 修饰语的修饰对象必须明确、合理。

任何修饰语的修饰对象都必须单一,不能引起争议,同时这种修饰关系在逻辑上要合理。例如:

Young people with higher-than-average blood pressure whose families have a history of high blood pressure... (whose 修饰 young people)

2. 修饰语要尽可能贴近其修饰对象。

3. 跳跃修饰的判断方法:

1) 先就近修饰再跳跃修饰。

2) 利用主谓一致判定定语从句的修饰对象。

例如: Out of... grows a market for bygone styles of furniture and fixtures that is bringing ...back (that 从句修饰 a market)

3) 利用逻辑关系判定定语(含定语从句)修饰对象。

例如: 本章练习题 13。

4. 修饰语的位置改变原则:

不能随意改变修饰语的位置,但当修饰对象不清或者修饰对象引起争议时,可以改变修

饰语的位置。例如:

Early soap operas were first aired on evening radio in the 1920's. 不可变为:

Early soap operas were aired on evening radio first in the 1920's.

四、名词的修饰语

1. 名词前的修饰语数量要相对有限:尽可能控制在3~4个以内。
2. 名词的修饰语要尽可能有层次地分布在名词前或名词后,并且保持逻辑关系清晰。常用模式为:限定词+前置修饰语+中心词+后置修饰语。
3. 名词的前置修饰语中 **and** 和逗号的使用:有时可只用“,”而不用“**and**”表示并列关系,两者无意义变化。一般来说,多个前置修饰语的语义类别不同,它们之间不能加 **and** 或用逗号隔开;如果语义类别相同,它们之间可用 **and** 连接或用逗号隔开。例如:
正确用法:the official financial help; a concrete and glass factory 或 a concrete, glass factory
错误用法:the official and financial help; the official, financial help
4. 在书面英语中,有一些-ed 分词必须放在名词后作修饰语,有些则不能,而需放在名词前。
 - 1) n. + -ed
the people questioned, the only place left, those selected, the material needed, the method adopted, the journalists surveyed
 - 2) available 用法:放在名词前或后皆可。
 - 3) increased/increasing + n.: increased 和 increasing 不能放在名词后,只能放在名词前。

五、定语从句

1. 定语从句的修饰对象必须明确合理,修饰原则是先就近再跳跃。通过定语从句的主谓一致,可以保证修饰对象的清楚明确。
2. 定语从句分为限定性定语从句和非限定性定语从句。限定性定语从句对先行词起限制、确定作用,与先行词有着不可分割的联系,它的前后通常没有逗号;非限定性定语从句与它的先行词之间只有比较松散的关系,通常用逗号将它与主句隔开。
3. 必须准确使用关系代词和关系副词。
关系代词:that(指代人或物), which(指代物), who(指代人,主格), whom(指代人,宾格), whose(指代人或物)
关系副词:when, where, why
4. 定语从句尽可能简化,常常省略 **that** / **which** 和 **be** 动词。如:
the chemical that is irritating 常表达为:the chemical irritant
the dioxins that are currently uncontrolled 常表达为:the currently uncontrolled dioxins
5. 习惯搭配
the period when... a time when... since 1989 when the year that...
the way in which... the way + 句子 an age in which... the next time + 句子
phenomenon in which...
6. 如果关系代词 **whom** 或 **which** 和一个含有介词的及物动词短语连用时,介词应放在关系代词的前面。如:the collateral against which farmers borrow to get through the harvest

season。

7. 非限定定语从句的关系代词 **which** 不能指整个句子, 正确的表达是:
 句子, -ing... (用-ing 分词短语代替 **which** 从句, 作伴随结果状语)
 句子 + n. 结尾, **which**... (**which** 引导的从句修饰 n.)
8. 名词/代词/数词 + **of** + **which/whom**... 结构作非限定性定语。

六、状语从句

1. 状语从句位置

- 1) 主句前: **When rates were raised in 1985**, postal service officials predicted that the increase would make further rate increases unnecessary.
- 2) 主句后: In the last ten years, the dropout rate among Black high school students has fallen substantially, **while the number of Blacks attending college has more than doubled.**
- 3) 句中: Between 1975 and 1985, nursing-home occupancy rates averaged 87 percent of capacity, **while admission rates remained constant**, at an average of 95 admissions per 1,000 beds per year.
- 4) 所修饰的动词短语后: It is an oversimplified view of cattle raising to say that all one has to do with cattle is leave them alone **while they feed themselves** and then corral them and drive them to market **when the time is ripe.**

2. 状语从句的主语

- 1) 状语从句在主语之前时, 如果两者的主语表示同一个人, 其中任何一个主语都可以用代词表示。如果主句在状语从句前面, 则只有状语从句的主语可以用代词表示。
- 2) 主句的主语和状语从句的主语可以是同类事物, 也可以不是同类事物。

3. 时间状语从句

after, when, whenever, while, as, since, ever since, until, once, as soon as before/after + 句子/短语/doing sth.; **before/after doing sth.**, + 句子: doing sth. 的逻辑主语等于句子主语

4. 比较状语从句

参见第七章。

5. 方式状语从句

as 是用来引导方式状语从句的常用连词, 含“照…方式”或“类似…方式”之意。

6. 目的状语从句和结果状语从句

- 1) **so/such...that...** 表示结果, 可以用在单一主谓结构中, 也可以用在复杂主谓结构中, 不用考虑逻辑主语问题。**such** 后一般不加抽象名词。

特别说明: **so/such...as to...** 表示结果, 用于单一主谓结构中, 逻辑主语等于句子主语, 即句子主语可以执行 **as to** 后动词的动作。**such** 后一般不加抽象名词。

- 2) **so that** 状语从句: 从句中出现情态动词, **so that** 表示目的; 从句中没有出现情态动词, **so that** 表示结果。**such that** 状语从句: 表示结果。**so/such that** 从句不用考虑逻辑主语问题。

特别说明: **so as to** 可以表示目的也可以表示结果, 用于单一主谓结构中, 逻辑主语等于句子主语, 即句子主语可以执行 **as to** 后动词的动作。

7. 条件状语从句

if, unless, only if(强烈条件关系), as long as, on condition that...
should(如果/假如) + 主语 + do(原形)/be done...

8. 转折与让步状语从句

although, even though, even if, while, whereas, where
however much/many/long/great...; however 表示强烈语气
特别注意: despite(介词) + 名词短语, 不能加句子或 doing...

9. 原因状语从句

because, as, since, for, now that, if only because(惟一的原因是...), in that

10. 状语从句的省略

正确形式: 表示时间、条件、转折的连词(when / while / if / unless / although / even though / even if) + 形容词短语 / -ing 分词短语 / -ed 分词短语(逻辑主语等于句子主语)

错误形式: 表示时间、条件、转折的连词 + 介词短语 / 名词短语

特殊情况: once 可以加介词短语 / 名词短语, whatever 可以加名词短语构成状语从句省略

● 练习题及其详解 ●

1. As virtually all the nation's 50 busiest airports are, New York's were built for an age of propellers, before jet planes weighing 800,000 pounds needed over two miles of runway.

- (A) As virtually all the nation's 50 busiest airports are,
- (B) As with virtually all of the nation's 50 busiest airports,
- (C) Like virtually all of the nation's 50 busiest airports,
- (D) Like the cities where virtually all the nation's 50 busiest airports are,
- (E) Like other cities where virtually all the nation's 50 busiest airports are,

● 第二步

一步: 修饰语修饰对象的单一性

A 选项 all the nation's 50 busiest airports 中, all 可能修饰 the nation, 也可能修饰 50 busiest airports, 修饰对象有争议。 ➤ 排除 A

二步: 比较对象之间要有可比性

B 选项 as + 名词, 表示作为..., 不表示比较。

D E 选项 cities 与 New York's (airports) 无法比较。 ➤ 排除 B D E

● 正确选项 C

all of the nation's 50 busiest airports 与 New York's (airports) 比较对象对等。

2. Because young children do not organize their attention or perceptions systematically, like adults, they may notice and remember details that their elders ignore.

- (A) like adults
- (B) unlike an adult
- (C) as adults
- (D) as adults do

(E) as an adult

读题

because 状语从句, + 介词短语, + 主句.

必杀二步

一步: 修饰语修饰对象的单一性

A B 选项 介词短语 (like adults/unlike an adult) 作状语, 可以向前修饰 because 从句的谓语动词, 也可以向后修饰主句的谓语动词, 修饰对象产生争议。 ➤ 排除 A B

二步: as 的用法

C E 选项 as + 名词中, as 是介词, 表示作为..., 代入原句后使句子的逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 C E

正确选项 D

as adults do 只能向前作 because 从句的状语, 因为 do 指代 because 从句中的谓语动词短语 organize...; 当主句的谓语使用情态动词 + verb 的形式时, 比较从句的省略原则是: 省略 verb, 保留情态动词, 所以 as adults do 不可能向后修饰主句的谓语动词, 从而保证了其修饰对象的单一性。

3. Beatrix Potter, in her book illustrations, carefully coordinating them with her narratives, capitalized on her keen observation and love of the natural world.

- (A) Beatrix Potter, in her book illustrations, carefully coordinating them with her narratives,
- (B) In her book illustrations, carefully coordinating them with her narratives, Beatrix Potter
- (C) In her book illustrations, which she carefully coordinated with her narratives, Beatrix Potter
- (D) Carefully coordinated with her narratives, Beatrix Potter, in her book illustrations,
- (E) Beatrix Potter, in her book illustrations, carefully coordinated them with her narratives and

读题

sb. (主语), 介词短语, -ing 分词短语, capitalized (谓语动词) on...

必杀三步

一步: 修饰语的位置

要避免修饰语的位置导致修饰对象引起争议。

A B 选项 -ing 分词短语 coordinating them with... 可以向前作定语, 就近修饰名词 illustrations, 也可以向后作状语, 修饰谓语动词 capitalized, 修饰语的修饰对象有争议。 ➤ 排除 A B

二步: 逻辑主语

D 选项 -ed 分词短语 coordinated with... 在句首, 逻辑主语等于句子主语, Beatrix Potter (人) was coordinated with her narratives, 被动关系不合理。 ➤ 排除 D

三步: 不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

原句中, *coordinating them with ...* 用作从属性成分。

E 选项 *coordinated* 和 *capitalized* 并列, 共同作为主语谓语, 从属关系变为并列关系, 改变原句的重心。✎ 排除 E

正确选项 C

In her book illustrations, which..., BP capitalized on...: which 定语从句就近修饰名词 *illustrations*, 修饰关系单一明确。

4. In A. D. 391, resulting from the destruction of the largest library of the ancient world at Alexandria, later generations lost all but the *Iliad* and *Odyssey* among Greek epics, most of the poetry of Pindar and Sappho, and dozens of plays by Aeschylus and Euripides.

- (A) *resulting from the destruction of the largest library of the ancient world at Alexandria*,
- (B) *the destroying of the largest library of the ancient world at Alexandria resulted and*
- (C) *because of the result of the destruction of the library at Alexandria, the largest of the ancient world*,
- (D) *as a result of the destruction of the library at Alexandria, the largest of the ancient world*,
- (E) *Alexandria's largest library of the ancient world was destroyed, and the result was*

必杀三步

一步: 修饰语修饰对象的单一性

A B 选项 介词短语 *at Alexandria* 可以修饰 *the largest library*, 也可以修饰 *the ancient world*, 从而使句子意思产生歧义。✎ 排除 A B

二步: 避免意思重复

C 选项 *because of* 与 *the result of* 意思重复。✎ 排除 C

三步: 不能改变原句的合理重心

B E 选项 把原句主从关系改为并列关系, 改变原句的重心。

E 选项 *Alexandria's* 限定 *largest library*, 表明不只有一个 *largest library*, 仅仅 *Alexandria* 的 *largest library* 被破坏了, 改变了原句的意思; 另外, *the result* 后面缺少 *that* 引导表语从句。✎ 排除 B E

补遗

1> 逻辑主语的合理性

A 选项 -ing 分词短语 *resulting from* 在句首, 逻辑主语等于主句主语 *later generations*, *later generations result from the destruction of ...* 逻辑意思不合理。

2> 用词倾向性

B 选项 动词 *destroy* 有名词形式 *destruction*, 就不能使用 *the + -ing* 形式充当动词的名词形式。

正确选项 D

because of 和 *as a result of* 只能作状语, 不能作定语或表语; *resulting from* 只能作定语修饰名词。

5. During the early years of European settlement on a continent that was viewed as "wilderness" by the newcomers, Native Americans, intimately knowing the ecology of the land, were a help in the rescuing of many Pilgrims and pioneers from hardship, or even death.

- (A) Native Americans, intimately knowing the ecology of the land, were a help in the rescuing of
- (B) Native Americans knew the ecology and the land intimately and this enabled them to help in the rescue of
- (C) Native Americans, with their intimate knowledge of the ecology of the land, helped to rescue
- (D) having intimate knowledge of the ecology of the land, Native Americans helped the rescue of
- (E) knowing intimately the ecology of the land, Native Americans helped to rescue

读题

During..., Native Americans were a help in the rescuing of sb. from sth..

此题二步

一步:习惯用法

- A 选项 sb. be a help in the doing..., 表达累赘, 应使用简洁的习惯搭配: sb. help (to) do...。
- B D 选项 help in the rescue (n.) of sb. from sth., 表达不简洁, 而且不符合习惯搭配; 习惯表达为: rescue (v.) sb. from sth.。 ✖ 排除 A B D

二步:修饰语的位置

- D E 选项 -ing 分词短语 having sth. / knowing sth. 放在名词 newcomers 和主句 Native Americans helped... 之间, 可以作定语修饰 newcomers, 也可以作主句的伴随状语, 修饰语的位置导致修饰对象产生争议。 ✖ 排除 D E

补选

标准书面语原则

在标准书面语中, 任何代词都不能指代整个句子; 代词 this / that / these / those 不能单独充当主语。

- B 选项 this enable them to ... 中的代词 this 单独充当主语, 并指代前面整个句子, 错。

正确选项 C

6. As well as heat and light, the Sun is the source of a continuous stream of atomic particles known as the solar wind.

- (A) As well as heat and light, the Sun is the source of a continuous stream
- (B) Besides heat and light, also the Sun is the source of a continuous stream
- (C) Besides heat and light, the Sun is also the source of a continuous streaming
- (D) The Sun is the source not only of heat and light, but also of a continuous stream

- (E) The Sun is the source of not only heat and light but, as well, of a continuous streaming

必杀二步

一步:修饰关系的合理性

A B C 选项 介词短语 as well as.../ besides... 在句首,语法上修饰主句主语 the sun,但 the Sun 和 heat and light 不属于同一类概念,heat / light is the source of stream of atomic particles, 逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 A B C

二步:习惯用法

not only... but also...

E 选项 not only 与 as well 不构成习惯搭配。 ➤ 排除 E

补遗

用词倾向性

当一个动词(stream)有名词形式(stream)时,应优先使用该名词(stream)而不使用该动词的-ing形式(streaming)代替名词。

C E 选项 streaming 错,应使用 stream 代替。

正确选项 D

7. New hardy varieties of rice show promise of producing high yields without the costly requirements of irrigation and application of commercial fertilizer by earlier high-yielding varieties.

- (A) requirements of irrigation and application of commercial fertilizer by earlier high-yielding varieties
- (B) requirements by earlier high-yielding varieties of application of commercial fertilizer and irrigation
- (C) requirements for application of commercial fertilizer and irrigation of earlier high-yielding varieties
- (D) application of commercial fertilizer and irrigation that was required by earlier high-yielding varieties
- (E) irrigation and application of commercial fertilizer that were required by earlier high-yielding varieties

必杀二步

一步:修饰对象的合理性与单一性

修饰对象必须明确、合理,不能引起争议。

A 选项 介词短语 by earlier high-yielding varieties 语法上只能就近修饰 application of commercial fertilizer, 不能与 irrigation 产生修饰关系。

C 选项 earlier high-yielding varieties 只与 irrigation 产生修饰关系,但从上下文逻辑意思上分析,earlier high-yielding varieties 应该同时与 application of commercial fertilizer 和 irrigation 产生修饰关系。 ➤ 排除 A C

二步:and 连接对象不能引起争议

B D 选项 and 是就近连接 irrigation 和 commercial fertilizer, 还是跳跃连接 irrigation 和 application of commercial fertilizer, 连接对象引起争议。 ➤ 排除 B D

正确选项 E

实现意思单一性的手段

- 1 > 改变并列项的位置: 把 irrigation 放在 application of commercial fertilizer 的前面, 避免 and 连接对象引起争议。
- 2 > 利用定语从句的主谓一致: that were required by earlier high-yielding varieties 只能修饰 irrigation and application of..., 定语从句的主谓一致保证了其修饰对象明确。

8. Initiated five centuries after Europeans arrived in the New World on Columbus Day 1992, Project SETI pledged a \$ 100 million investment in the search for extraterrestrial intelligence.

- (A) Initiated five centuries after Europeans arrived in the New World on Columbus Day 1992, Project SETI pledged a \$ 100 million investment in the search for extraterrestrial intelligence.
- (B) Initiated on Columbus Day 1992, five centuries after Europeans arrived in the New World, a \$ 100 million investment in the search for extraterrestrial intelligence was pledged by Project SETI.
- (C) Initiated on Columbus Day 1992, five centuries after Europeans arrived in the New World, Project SETI pledged a \$ 100 million investment in the search for extraterrestrial intelligence.
- (D) Pledging a \$ 100 million investment in the search for extraterrestrial intelligence, the initiation of Project SETI five centuries after Europeans arrived in the New World on Columbus Day 1992.
- (E) Pledging a \$ 100 million investment in the search for extraterrestrial intelligence five centuries after Europeans arrived in the New World, on Columbus Day 1992, the initiation of Project SETI took place.

解题步骤

一步: 修饰对象的合理性

A D E 选项 介词短语 on Columbus Day 1992, 就近修饰 Europeans arrived in the New World, 逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 A D E

二步: 逻辑主语的合理性

B 选项 -ed 分词短语在句首, 逻辑主语等于主句主语 an investment, an investment was initiated on Columbus Day 1992 逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 B

补遗

谓语动词与分词短语不能混淆

D E 选项 把原句的谓语动词 pledged 改为分词短语作状语, 改变原句的重心。

正确选项 C

project SETI 作为 initiated 的逻辑主语, 意思合理; on Columbus Day 1992 就近修饰 initiated, 修饰对象合理。

9. According to some economists, the July decrease in unemployment so that it was the lowest in two years suggests that the gradual improvement in the job market is continuing.

- (A) so that it was the lowest in two years
- (B) so that it was the lowest two-year rate
- (C) to what would be the lowest in two years
- (D) to a two-year low level
- (E) to the lowest level in two years

读题

according to sb., decrease suggests that...

必杀二步

一步:状语从句不能修饰名词短语

A B 选项 so that 引导状语从句,可以修饰动词 decrease,但不能修饰名词短语 decrease in unemployment。此外, it 指代对象有争议,或者指 decrease,或者指 unemployment。➤ 排除 A B

二步:修饰对象的合理性

A C 选项 形容词 lowest 没有修饰对象, the lowest 也无法理解为 lowest 承接前面重复的名词省略了 decrease,因为 the lowest decrease 最低的减少,逻辑意思不合理。

B D 选项 two-year 修饰 rate/level,“最低的两年水平”/“两年的低水平”,改变了原句用介词短语 in two years 所表示的明确的时间范围,“两年之中的最低水平”。

➤ 排除 A B C D

补选

情态动词表示可能性

C 选项 随意添加情态动词 would, 表示可能性,改变原句对真实情况的描述。

正确选项 E

介词短语 to the lowest level in two years 修饰名词短语 decrease in unemployment; lowest 有明确、合理的修饰对象 level; 介词短语 in two years 作定语,表示两年之中的最低水平。

10. From the bark of the paper birch tree the Menomini crafted a canoe about twenty feet long and two feet wide, with small ribs and rails of cedar, which could carry four persons or eight hundred pounds of baggage so light that a person could easily portage it around impeding rapids.

- (A) baggage so light
- (B) baggage being so light
- (C) baggage, yet being so light
- (D) baggage, and so light
- (E) baggage yet was so light

读题

From the bark sb. crafted a canoe which could carry... persons or ... baggage so light that...

which 定语从句跳过两个介词短语 about... 和 with..., 修饰主句宾语 a canoe。

必需二步

一步: 修饰对象的合理性

A 选项 so light 就近修饰名词 baggage, eight hundred pounds of baggage are light, 逻辑意思不合理。

B 选项 being + 形容词: being 多余, 必须省略; 并且同 A 选项一样, (being) so light 就近修饰名词 baggage, 逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 A B

二步: 平行结构形式要对称

C 选项 which could carry... persons or ... baggage, yet being so light that...: 连词 yet 无法连接句子 a canoe could carry... 与短语 being so light that...。

D 选项 which could carry... persons or ... baggage, and so light that...: 形容词短语 so light 没有可以并列的对象。 ➤ 排除 C D

正确选项 E

which could carry... persons or ... baggage yet was so light that...: 连接词 yet 连接两个动词短语 could carry... 和 was so light...。

11. Since the 1930's aircraft manufacturers have tried to build airplanes with frictionless wings, shaped so smoothly and perfectly that the air passing over them would not become turbulent.

(A) wings, shaped so smoothly and perfectly

(B) wings, wings so smooth and so perfectly shaped

(C) wings that are shaped so smooth and perfect

(D) wings, shaped in such a smooth and perfect manner

(E) wings, wings having been shaped smoothly and perfectly so

必需二步

一步: 逻辑意思的合理性

A E 选项 副词 smoothly 修饰动词 shaped, 光滑地成型, 逻辑意思不合理。

D 选项 介词短语 in such a smooth and perfect manner 修饰动词 shaped, 以光滑和完美的方式成型, 逻辑搭配“光滑的方式”不合理。 ➤ 排除 A D E

二步: 不能改变原句的合理意思

C 选项 形容词 smooth 和 perfect 不能修饰动词 be shaped, 这里用作主语补语, 即 wings 的特征是 smooth and perfect, 但原句说 wings 完美地成型 (shaped perfectly), 所以该选项改变原句的合理意思。 ➤ 排除 C

补选

-ing 分词的完成时态不能作定语修饰名词

E 选项 重复性同位结构 wings having been shaped 中 having been shaped 不能修饰名词 wings。

正确选项 B

形容词 smooth 修饰 wings, 副词 perfectly 修饰 shaped。

12. The nation's three military academies have seen a dramatic rise in applications, one fueled by a resurgence of patriotism, increasing tuition costs at private colleges, and improved recruiting by the academies.

- (A) one fueled by a resurgence of patriotism, increasing tuition costs at private colleges, and improved recruiting by the academies
- (B) one fueled by a resurgence of patriotism, tuition costs that have increased at private colleges, and academies improving their recruiting
- (C) one fueled by a resurgence of patriotism, private colleges that increased their tuition costs, and recruiting improvements by the academies
- (D) fueled by a resurgence of patriotism, tuition costs increasing at private colleges, and academies improving their recruiting
- (E) fueled by a resurgence of patriotism, increasing tuition costs at private colleges, and academies improving their recruiting

读题

Academics have seen a rise, one fueled by X1, X2, and X3

代词 one 作为 a rise 的同位结构, -ed 分词短语 fueled by 修饰 one。

必需二步

一步: 修饰语修饰对象的合理性

D E 选项 “句子, fueled by...” 中, fueled by 优先作定语就近修饰名词 applications, 逻辑意思不合理, 也改变它在原句中的修饰对象。 ➤ 排除 D E

二步: 平行结构概念要对等

B D E 选项 resurgence 和 costs 都是动作性名词, 但 academies 是名称名词, 与前两者概念不对等, 不能构成平行结构。

C 选项 同理, private colleges 与 resurgence, improvement 概念也不对等。

➤ 排除 B C D E

正确选项 A

同位结构

作用: 一般修饰名词或名词性短语

位置: 一般放在修饰对象的后面

形式: 1 > 名词性同位结构, noun 解释 noun

2 > 具体化同位结构, 抽象名词(如 principle, information, belief 等) + that 从句, that 从句是对抽象名词的具体化

3 > 概括性同位结构, 用一个概括性的名词去概括前面的解释对象(可能是 noun, -ing 形式, 句子)

4 > 名词重复型同位结构, 如...similarities between...and..., similarities that...

5 > 代词代替型同位结构, 如 a dramatic rise in..., one fueled by...

13. Byron possessed powers of observation that would have made him a great anthropologist and that makes his letters as a group the rival of the best novels of the

time.

- (A) makes his letters as a group the rival of
- (B) makes his letters as a group one to rival
- (C) makes his letters a group rivaling
- (D) make his letters as a group the rival of
- (E) make his letters a group which is the rival of

读题

Byron possessed powers of observation that 句子 1 and that 句子 2。

that 句子 1 和 that 句子 2 是定语从句并列。

必杀二步

一步:定语从句修饰对象的判断

定语从句通过语法和逻辑的手段保证修饰对象的明确和单一;定语从句并列,它们的修饰对象必须相同。

根据上下文的逻辑意思,that 句子 1 的修饰对象是 powers 而不是 observation,因为观察力(强大的能力)使他成为伟大的人类学家,而不是观察(人人都会的)使他成为伟大的人类学家。

A B C 选项 单数谓语动词 makes 决定了 that 句子 2 修饰单数名词 observation,并列的定语从句修饰对象不一致,逻辑意思也不合理。 ➤ 排除 A B C

二步:习惯用法

make sth. sth.; make sth. + adj.; make it + adj. + to do

A B D 选项 make sth. as sth., as 多余,必须省略。 ➤ 排除 A B D

正确选项 E

谓语动词 make 保证了 that 句子 2 跳跃修饰 of 前面的复数名词 powers。

14. In June of 1989, Princeton Township approved a developer's plans to build 300 houses on a large portion of the 210-acre site of the Battle of Princeton, one of only eight Revolutionary War battlefields that had remained undeveloped.

- (A) one of only eight Revolutionary War battlefields that had remained undeveloped
- (B) one of eight of the only Revolutionary War battlefields that have remained undeveloped
- (C) one of the only eight undeveloped Revolutionary War battlefields that remains
- (D) only one of eight Revolutionary War battlefields to remain undeveloped
- (E) only one of the eight remaining undeveloped Revolutionary War battlefields

必杀二步

一步:修饰语的位置

原句中 only 修饰 eight,表示仅有的八个革命战场。

B 选项 only 的位置改变,修饰 Revolutionary War battlefields,改变原句的意思。

D E 选项 only 修饰 one of, 改变原句意思。 ➤ 排除 B D E

二步:时态判断

B C 选项 定语从句使用现在完成时/一般现在时,表示 remain undeveloped 发生在主句动作(同意开发 Princeton 战场)以后,动作间的逻辑关系不合理。 ➤ 排除 B C

正确选项 A

one of ... 是同位结构,解释说明 Battle of Princeton; one of + 复数名词 + that 从句, that 从句修饰复数名词短语 only eight Revolutionary War battlefields; 定语从句使用过去完成时 had remained, 表示动作发生在主句动作 approved 之前。

15. While some academicians believe that business ethics should be integrated into every business course, others say that students will take ethics seriously only if it would be taught as a separately required course.

- (A) only if it would be taught as a separately required course.
- (B) only if it is taught as a separate, required course.
- (C) if it is taught only as a course required separately.
- (D) if it was taught only as a separate and required course.
- (E) if it would only be taught as a required course, separately.

此题二步

一步:条件从句的时态

主句用一般将来时,条件从句只能使用一般现在时。

A E 选项 条件从句使用过去将来时,错。

D 选项 条件从句使用一般过去时,错。 ➤ 排除 A D E

二步:修饰语位置的改变

only 修饰 if 条件从句,only if 表示强烈语气。

C D E 选项 only 的位置都发生变动,导致 only 的修饰对象发生变化,改变原句的合理意思和强烈语气。 ➤ 排除 C D E

补选

形容词和副词的区别

A C E 选项 副词 separately 修饰 required, 逻辑意思不合理。

B D 选项 形容词 separate 修饰 course, 根据前文对应的逻辑意思 be integrated into..., 这种修饰关系更合理。

正确选项 B

16. A collection of 38 poems by Phillis Wheatley, a slave, was published in the 1770's, the first book by a Black woman and it was only the second published by an American woman.

- (A) it was only the second published by an American woman
- (B) it was only the second that an American woman published
- (C) the second one only published by an American woman
- (D) the second one only that an American woman published
- (E) only the second published by an American woman

读题

A collection of sth. by sb. (主语), + sb. 的同位语, + was published (谓语), + 主语同位语。

主语核心词是 a collection of 短语, 此短语决定主语按单数名词处理, a slave 是 Phillis Wheatley 的同位语, 句尾的名词短语也是主语同位语。

必需二步

一步: 平行结构形式要对称

A B 选项 and 连接名词短语 (the first book by sb.) 和句子 (it was...), 平行结构形式不对称。 ➤ 排除 A B

二步: 修饰语的位置不能随意改变

C D 选项 原句 only 作形容词修饰 the second, C 选项中 only 变为副词修饰 published, D 选项中 only 修饰 that 从句。改变 only 的位置, 从而改变其修饰对象, 原句的合理意思也被改变。 ➤ 排除 C D

补选

省略原则

C D 选项 the second 后面不能加名词 (book) 或代词 (one), 因为 the second 是承接前面的相同名词 (the first book) 的省略。

正确选项 E

17. In a period of time when women typically have had a narrow range of choices, Mary Baker Eddy became a distinguished writer and the founder, architect, and builder of a growing church.

- (A) In a period of time when women typically have
- (B) During a time in which typically women have
- (C) Typically, during a time when women
- (D) At a time when women typically
- (E) Typically in a time in which women

读题

介词短语 (状语), + 主句

介词短语中包含 when 定语从句。

必需二步

一步: 主从句时态的协调

A B 选项 主句中谓语动词 became 表示一般过去时, 介词短语中 when/ in which 从句的 have had 表示现在完成时, 主从句时态不一致, 且没有合理的理由。 ➤ 排除 A B

二步: 修饰语的位置不能随意改变

修饰语位置的变化导致其修饰对象的变化, 从而改变原句的意思。必须从逻辑上判断是否需要这种改变。

原句中 typically 修饰 have had (从句中的动词)。

C 选项 typically 放在句首,修饰整个句子,改变原合理的修饰对象。

E 选项 typically 修饰介词短语,改变原合理的修饰对象。 ➤ 排除 C E

补选

习惯用法

表示某个时期用 a time when... 或者在某个时期用 at a time when...

A 选项 in a period of time when, B 选项 during a time in which, C 选项 during a time when, E 选项 in a time in which 都不符合习惯用法。

正确选项 D

18. As more and more people invest their money in savings certificates or money-market funds in order to earn higher interest, they are abandoning traditional low-interest investment havens such as passbook accounts and life insurance policies.

- (A) As more and more people invest their money
- (B) While people have more and more been investing their money
- (C) As money is more and more invested by people
- (D) More and more, when investors put their money
- (E) While, more and more, investors have been putting their money

此题一步

一步:修饰语的位置

修饰语位置的改变,导致修饰对象的改变,从而改变原句的意思。

原句 more and more 修饰名词 people。

B 选项 more and more 修饰动词 have been investing。

C 选项 more and more 修饰名词 is invested。

D 选项 more and more 不能放在句首修饰整个句子。

E 选项 more and more 不能作为插入语修饰 while 从句。 ➤ 一步到位,排除 B C D E

正确选项 A

连词 as 引导状语从句,表示时间。

more and more 用于修饰名词、动词、形容词和副词。

19. A huge flying reptile that died out with the dinosaurs some 65 million years ago, the Quetzalcoatlus had a wingspan of 36 feet, believed to be the largest flying creature the world has ever seen.

- (A) believed to be
- (B) and that is believed to be
- (C) and it is believed to have been
- (D) which was, it is believed,
- (E) which is believed to be

读题

名词短语, + 主句, + -ed 分词短语。

名词短语 a huge flying reptile that... 作为主语 the Quetzalcoatlus 的同位结构,解释说明主语。

此步二步**一步:修饰对象的合理性**

句子, + -ed 分词短语结构, 优先考虑-ed 分词短语做定语就近修饰名词。

A 选项 believed to be 语法上就近修饰 a wingspan 或者 36 feet, 但逻辑上应跳跃修饰 the Quetzalcoatlus, 修饰对象在语法和逻辑上产生矛盾。

D E 选项 which 定语从句就近修饰 a wingspan 或者 36 feet, 逻辑意思上不合理。

➤ 排除 A D E

二步:标准书面语原则

B 选项 标准书面语中, that 永远不能单独充当主语。 ➤ 排除 B

正确选项 C

it 指代前面句子的主语 the Quetzalcoatlus。

现在完成时

现在完成时 have been 表达迄今为止的概念, 与后面的定语从句 the world has ever seen 逻辑意思协调。

20. Scientists have observed large concentrations of heavy-metal deposits in the upper twenty centimeters of Baltic Sea sediments, which are consistent with the growth of industrial activity there.

- (A) Baltic Sea sediments, which are consistent with the growth of industrial activity there.
- (B) Baltic Sea sediments, where the growth of industrial activity is consistent with these findings.
- (C) Baltic Sea sediments, findings consistent with its growth of industrial activity.
- (D) sediments from the Baltic Sea, findings consistent with the growth of industrial activity in the area.
- (E) sediments from the Baltic Sea, consistent with the growth of industrial activity there.

此步二步**一步:修饰对象的合理性**

A 选项 which 定语从句就近修饰名词 sediments, 意味着 sediments are consistent with the growth of industrial activity, 逻辑意思不合理。

B 选项 where 定语从句就近修饰名词 sediments, 意味着 the growth of industrial activity happens in the sediments, 逻辑意思不合理。

E 选项 形容词短语 consistent with 就近修饰 Baltic Sea, 意味着 Baltic Sea is consistent with the growth of industrial activity, 逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 A B E

二步:代词指代

C 选项 主句中没有任何单数名词, 所以代词 its 没有指代对象。 ➤ 排除 C

补遗

副词 there 指代不清

A E 选项 主句中没有任何合适的表示地点的介词短语可供 there 指代。

正确选项 D

findings consistent with... 是一种独立主格形式(名词 + 形容词短语), 作状语。

in the area 准确地表达了在 Baltic Sea 地区, 而不是在 Baltic Sea, 避免了 there 指代不清。

21. The colorization of black-and-white films by computers is defended by those who own the film rights, for the process can mean increased revenues for them; many others in the film industry, however, contend that the technique degrades major works of art, which they liken to putting lipstick on a Greek statue.

- (A) which they liken to putting lipstick on a Greek statue
- (B) which they liken to a Greek statue with lipstick put on it
- (C) which they liken to lipstick put on a Greek statue
- (D) likening it to a Greek statue with lipstick put on it
- (E) likening it to putting lipstick on a Greek statue

此题二步

一步: 逻辑意思的合理性

A B C 选项 关系代词 which 就近指代 major works of art, 代入定语从句 sb. liken major works of art to putting lipstick on a Greek statue. 把艺术作品比作在希腊雕塑上涂口红, 逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 A B C

二步: 比较对象之间要有可比性

D 选项 it 指代 technique, 技术与希腊雕塑之间没有可比性。 ➤ 排除 D

正确选项 E

contend 宾语从句中, -ing 分词短语 likening 在句尾作伴随状语, 修饰 the technique degrades。

major works of art; it 指代 technique, 把给黑白电影上色的技术比作给希腊雕塑涂口红, 动作具有相似性。

22. The cameras of the Voyager II spacecraft detected six small, previously unseen moons circling Uranus, which doubles to twelve the number of satellites now known as orbiting the distant planet.

- (A) which doubles to twelve the number of satellites now known as orbiting
- (B) doubling to twelve the number of satellites now known to orbit
- (C) which doubles to twelve the number of satellites now known in orbit around
- (D) doubling to twelve the number of satellites now known as orbiting
- (E) which doubles to twelve the number of satellites now known that orbit

此题二步

一步: 修饰关系的合理性

A C E 选项 which 定语从句优先就近修饰 Uranus(天王星), Uranus doubles sth. to twelve 逻辑意思不合理, 所以 which 定语从句和修饰对象 Uranus 修饰关系不合理; 并且在

标准书面语中关系代词 which 也不能理解为指代前面整个句子。✎ 排除 A C E

第二步:习惯用法

D 选项 know as doing 永远错。

正确用法: know as + n. 或者 known to do (但 known to be 永远错)。✎ 排除 D

正确选项 B

-ing 分词短语在句尾作伴随结果状语,主句是原因,分词短语是结果。

习惯搭配: double sth. to + 数量,本题中 sth. 指 the number of satellites..., 因为该短语太长,所以放到了 to twelve 之后。

23. According to the National Pasta Association, per-capita consumption of pasta in the United States, which has already been approaching 19 pounds a year, will achieve 30 pounds a year by the twenty-first century.

- (A) According to the National Pasta Association, per-capita consumption of pasta in the United States, which has already been approaching 19 pounds a year, will achieve 30 pounds a year by the twenty-first century.
- (B) Already approaching 19 pounds a year in the United States, the National Pasta Association predicts that per-capita consumption of pasta will reach 30 pounds a year by the twenty-first century.
- (C) The National Pasta Association predicts by the twenty-first century that per-capita consumption of pasta in the United States, which is already approaching 19 pounds a year, will achieve 30 pounds a year.
- (D) By the twenty-first century, the National Pasta Association predicts that per-capita consumption of pasta in the United States, having already approached 19 pounds a year, will reach 30 pounds a year.
- (E) According to the National Pasta Association, per-capita consumption of pasta in the United States is already approaching 19 pounds a year and will reach 30 pounds a year by the twenty-first century.

读题

According to..., per-capita consumption of pasta will achieve...

此题三步

一步:定语从句修饰对象的合理性

A 选项 which 定语从句就近修饰 the United States, 逻辑意思不合理。✎ 排除 A

第二步:逻辑主语的合理性

B 选项 approaching... 在句首,逻辑主语等于句子主语 the National Pasta Association, 逻辑意思不合理。✎ 排除 B

第三步:修饰语的位置

C D 选项 by the twenty-first century 的位置决定了它必须修饰动词 predicts, 修饰关系不合理。✎ 排除 C D

正确选项 E

改变 by the twenty-first century 的位置,使它修饰动词 will reach。

24. The company is negotiating to sell its profitable credit card subsidiary, which it plans to use money from to acquire some of the mortgage-servicing operations that are being sold by troubled savings institutions.

- (A) subsidiary, which it plans to use money from
- (B) subsidiary, from which it plans to use money
- (C) subsidiary, and it plans the use of money from that
- (D) subsidiary and plans to use money from that sale
- (E) subsidiary and plans the use of money from that sale

必杀二步

一步:定语从句修饰对象的合理性

A B 选项 定语从句就近修饰名词 subsidiary,从语法上讲,A 选项的介词 from 没放在关系代词 which 之前,错;从逻辑上看,A B 选项的 money from the subsidiary (来自子公司的钱)意思不合理,应改为“来自卖掉子公司的钱”,定语从句修饰对象不合理。排除 A B

二步:逻辑关系的合理性

C E 选项 plans the use of money (计划钱的使用)与上下文没有逻辑联系,而后文的 to acquire ... 标志着要优先使用动词短语 use...to do...,表示“使用钱获得...”,所以 plans the use of money 应改为 plans to use money。排除 C E

补选

并列句的主语省略

两个句子并列,主语相同,第二句的主语必须承接第一句的主语省略。

C 选项 The company is negotiating to...(句子1), and it plans...(句子2). 句子2的主语 it 指句子1的主语 the company, 所以这里的 it 应省略。

正确选项 D

代词指代

当代词指代不清或指代对象引起争议时,可以使用一个概括性的名词去替代代词所要指代的对象:概括性名词 that sale 代替短语 to sell its profitable credit card subsidiary。

25. Sales of United States manufactured goods to nonindustrialized countries rose to \$ 167 billion in 1992, which is 14 percent more than the previous year and largely offsets weak demand from Europe and Japan.

- (A) which is 14 percent more than the previous year
- (B) which is 14 percent higher than it was the previous year
- (C) 14 percent higher than the previous year's figure
- (D) an amount that is 14 percent more than the previous year was
- (E) an amount that is 14 percent higher than the previous year's figure

读题

Sales of ...rose to..., which is...and offsets...

必杀二步**一步:修饰对象的合理性**

A B 选项 定语从句 which is... and offsets... 就近修饰 \$ 167 billion, \$ 167 billion is 14 percent more than... / higher than... 逻辑意思不合理。

C 选项 形容词短语 14 percent higher than... 就近修饰 \$ 167 billion, 逻辑意思不合理。

排除 A B C

二步:比较对象之间要有可比性

A 选项 \$ 167 billion 与 the previous year 没有可比性。

B 选项 \$ 167 billion 与 it was the previous year 没有可比性。

D 选项 an amount 与 the previous year was 没有可比性。排除 A B D

正确选项 E**同位结构**

Sales of ... rose to \$ 167 billion, an amount that is... and largely offsets...: an amount 用作 \$ 167 billion 的同位结构。

26. At the time of the Mexican agrarian revolution, the most radical faction, that of Zapata and his followers, proposed a return to communal ownership of land, to what had been a pre-Columbian form of ownership respected by the Spaniards.

(A) land, to what had been a pre-Columbian form of ownership respected by the Spaniards.

(B) land, a form of ownership of the pre-Columbians and respected by the Spaniards.

(C) land, respected by the Spaniards and a pre-Columbian form of ownership.

(D) land in which a pre-Columbian form of ownership was respected by the Spaniards.

(E) land that had been a pre-Columbian form of ownership respected by the Spaniard.

必杀二步**一步:平行结构形式要对称**

B C 选项 and 连接名词短语(a form of ...)和分词短语(respected by...), 平行结构形式不对称。排除 B C

二步:修饰语就近修饰

D 选项 in which 定语从句语法上就近修饰名词 land, 表示“在土地上...”, 逻辑意思不合理。

E 选项 that 定语从句语法上就近修饰 land, 但逻辑上 land had been a form of ownership 意思不合理。排除 D E

正确选项 A**同位结构**

to what... 是同位结构的省略, 相当于 a return to what..., 这种结构仅限于 n. + 介词的情况, 当名词与前面解释说明的名词或者名词短语的核心词相同时, 可以省略名词, 只留下介词短语构成同位结构。这是一种比较特殊的同位结构, 本质上是名词性同位结构, 在 GMAT 考试中出现次数较少。

27. The labor agreement permits staff reductions through attrition with increased pension benefits and a special early-retirement program for speeding it up.

- (A) attrition with increased pension benefits and a special early-retirement program for speeding it up
- (B) attrition and provides increased pension benefits and a special early-retirement program to speed the attrition process
- (C) attrition, which will be speeded up by providing increased pension benefits and a special early-retirement program
- (D) attrition, which, by their providing increased pension benefits and a special early-retirement program, will speed the process
- (E) attrition, which provides increased pension benefits and a special early-retirement program for speeding the attrition process

必需三步

一步:动作目的的表达

动作的目的关系用 to do 表示。

A E 选项 for speeding 表示动作的目的关系,错。✗ 排除 A E

二步:修饰关系的合理性

D 选项 which 定语从句就近修饰 attrition, attrition will speed the process, 逻辑意思不合理;而且, the process 所指不明,意思含混; by their providing... (by one's doing...) 永远错,可使用 by doing...。

E 选项 which 定语从句修饰 attrition, attrition provides increased pension benefits and a special early-retirement program, 逻辑意思不合理。✗ 排除 D E

三步:时态判断

C 选项 没有时间标志或逻辑线索表明可以使用一般将来时 will be speeded up。

✗ 排除 C

补选

1> 修饰语修饰对象的单一性

要避免因修饰语的位置而导致修饰关系不明确,修饰对象产生争议。

A 选项 介词短语 with X1 and X2 放在名词 attrition 后面,可以作定语修饰名词,也可能作状语修饰主句的谓语 permits staff reductions through attrition。

2> 代词指代

D 选项 代词 their 语法上只能指代 staff reductions, 但逻辑上不合理,所以代词 their 没有指代对象。

正确选项 B

28. As a baby emerges from the darkness of the womb with a rudimentary sense of vision, it would be rated about 20/500, or legally blind if it were an adult with such vision.

- (A) As a baby emerges from the darkness of the womb with a rudimentary sense of vision, it would be rated about 20/500, or legally blind if it were an adult with such vision.

- (B) A baby emerges from the darkness of the womb with a rudimentary sense of vision that would be rated about 20/500, or legally blind as an adult.
- (C) As a baby emerges from the darkness of the womb, its rudimentary sense of vision would be rated about 20/500; qualifying it to be legally blind if an adult.
- (D) A baby emerges from the darkness of the womb with a rudimentary sense of vision that would be rated about 20/500; an adult with such vision would be deemed legally blind.
- (E) As a baby emerges from the darkness of the womb, its rudimentary sense of vision, which would be deemed legally blind for an adult, would be rated about 20/500.

必杀三步

一步:代词指代的一致性

相同的两个代词,包括数上相同的代词,应该指代同一对象。

- A 选项 第一个代词 it 应该指代 a rudimentary sense of vision,根据代词指代一致性原则,第二个代词 it 应该优先指代第一个代词指代的对象,a rudimentary sense of vision was an adult 逻辑意思不合理。✖ 排除 A

二步:修饰关系的合理性

- B 选项 that 定语从句修饰 vision, vision would be rated about 20/500 逻辑意思合理,但是 vision would be blind 逻辑意思不合理。
- E 选项 which 定语从句优先就近修饰名词 vision, vision would be deemed blind 逻辑意思不合理。✖ 排除 B E

三步:句子结构的完整性

分号前后必须使用完整的主谓结构。

- C 选项 分号后面的结构为-ing 分词短语而不是一个完整的主谓结构,句子结构不完整。✖ 排除 C

补遗

状语从句的省略形式

标准书面语中,状语从句的省略形式为:表示转折、时间、条件的连词 + 形容词短语 / 分词短语。

错误形式:连词 + 介词短语 / 名词短语。

特例:once 可以加介词短语 / 名词短语,whatever 可以加名词短语构成状语从句省略。

- C 选项 if + 名词,错。

正确选项 D

代词指代不清时的修改方法

- 1> 重复代词指代的对象。
- 2> such + n. 或者用指示代词 this/that/these/those + n.。
- 3> 用一个名词概括代词指代的对象。

本题中使用了第二种方法 an adult with such vision. ...

29. Presenters at the seminar, one who is blind, will demonstrate adaptive equipment that allows visually impaired people to use computers.

- (A) one who (B) one of them who
(C) and one of them who (D) one of whom
(E) one of which

必杀一步

一步:定语从句

1> 修饰对象的合理性

A 选项 one 指代单数名词短语的核心词, presenters 为复数, one 只能指代 seminar, 使得定语从句 who is blind 修饰对象不合理。

B C 选项 who 指代 presenters 充当介词 of 的宾语, 同时 them 也指代 presenters 充当介词 of 的宾语, them 和 who 重复(简而言之, them who 永远错), 并且 C 选项主句主语 presenters 和定语从句之间无需用 and 连接。

2> 关系代词的使用

that(指代人或物), which(指代物), who(指代人, 主格), whom(指代人, 宾格), whose(指代人或物)

E 选项 关系代词 which 无法指代人 presenters。排除 A B C E

正确选项 D

one of whom is blind 是名词/代词/数词 + of + which/whom 型非限定性定语从句。

30. Proponents of artificial intelligence say they will be able to make computers that can understand English and other human languages, recognize objects, and reason as an expert does—computers that will be used to diagnose equipment breakdowns, deciding whether to authorize a loan, or other purposes such as these.

- (A) as an expert does—computers that will be used to diagnose equipment breakdowns, deciding whether to authorize a loan, or other purposes such as these
(B) as an expert does, which may be used for purposes such as diagnosing equipment breakdowns or deciding whether to authorize a loan
(C) like an expert—computers that will be used for such purposes as diagnosing equipment breakdowns or deciding whether to authorize a loan
(D) like an expert, the use of which would be for purposes like the diagnosis of equipment breakdowns or the decision whether or not a loan should be authorized
(E) like an expert, to be used to diagnose equipment breakdowns, deciding whether to authorize a loan or not, or the like

读题

sb. say they will be able to make computers that 句子 1—computers that 句子 2.

破折号后的 computers 是前一个 computers 的重复性同位结构。

必杀二步

一步:举例的表达方式

such as + 名词/-ing 形式, 表示举例, 但 such as 后不能加代词; like + 名词, 表示比较, 不表示举例。

A 选项 such as these, 错。

D 选项 like + 名词表示举例, 错。 排除 A D

第二步: 修饰对象的合理性

B 选项 computers that 句子 1, which may be used for...: 关系代词 which 没有指代对象, which 定语从句没有修饰对象。

D 选项 computers that 句子 1, the use of which...: 非限定性定语从句就近修饰名词 an expert, 定语从句修饰对象不合理。

E 选项 computers that 句子 1, to be used..., deciding..., or the like: 不定式短语就近修饰名词 an expert, 修饰关系不合理, 并且 to be done 和 doing 形式不对称, 也没有连词连接, 不能并列。 排除 B D E

补选

简洁性原则

D 选项 标准书面语中 whether or not 表达不简洁, or not 一般省略。

正确选项 C

原句中 computers that can understand..., recognize... and reason as an expert does, that 从句中有三个动词, 其比较从句中 does 不能明确代替哪一个动词, C 选项把 as an expert does 改为 like an expert, 构成 reason like + n. 结构, 避免了争议, 这里的 an expert 表示一类概念。

248

31. As the price of gasoline rises, which makes substituting alcohol distilled from cereal grain attractive, the prices of bread and livestock feed are sure to increase.

(A) which makes substituting alcohol distilled from cereal grain attractive.

(B) which makes substituting the distillation of alcohol from cereal grain attractive.

(C) which makes distilling alcohol from cereal grain an attractive substitute.

(D) making an attractive substitution of alcohol distilled from cereal grain.

(E) making alcohol distilled from cereal grain an attractive substitute.

读题

as 引导的状语从句, + which 非限定性定语从句, + 主句。

必杀二步

一步: 定语从句的关系代词

标准书面语中, 关系代词 which 不能指代整个句子, 它只能就近指代名词。

A B C 选项 定语从句关系代词 which 没有指代对象。 排除 A B C

第二步: 逻辑意思的合理性

D 选项 如理解为 make sth. done 结构, “使得替换物被蒸馏”, 逻辑意思不合理; 如把 distilled 当作过去分词作定语修饰 alcohol, “制造替换物”, 逻辑意思也不合理。

排除 D

补选

make 的习惯搭配

make sth. sth.; make sth. + adj.; make it + adj. + for sb. to do; make do (凑合)



着做)。

A B C 选项 make doing sth. 永远错。✎ 排除 A B C

正确选项 E

-ing 分词短语作为 as 从句的伴随结果状语。

make sth. (alcohol) sth. (an attractive substitute), distilled 作分词短语修饰名词 alcohol。

32. India is country with at least fifty major regional languages, of whom fourteen have official recognition.

- (A) of whom fourteen have official recognition
- (B) fourteen that have official recognition
- (C) fourteen of which are officially recognized
- (D) fourteen that are officially recognized
- (E) among whom fourteen have official recognition

读题

主句, + 非限定性定语从句。

此题二步

一步: 定语从句的关系代词

A E 选项 关系代词 whom 不能指代 languages。✎ 排除 A E

二步: 逻辑意思的清楚性

B D 选项 that 定语从句修饰数词 fourteen, 但 fourteen 没有明确的指代对象, 逻辑意思不清楚。✎ 排除 B D

补选

用词倾向性

GMAT 考试中, 倾向于使用 be 动词 + adv. + -ed 分词(如 are officially recognized)这一表达方式, 而不使用 have + 抽象名词(have official recognition)。又如 have a disinclination to 应改为 be disinclined to。✎ 排除 A B E

正确选项 C

which 指代 languages; 数词/代词/名词 + 介词 + which(fourteen of which)是定语从句常见的表达方式。

33. During the nineteenth century Emily Eden and Fanny Parks journeyed throughout India, sketching and keeping journals forming the basis of news reports about the princely states where they had visited.

- (A) forming the basis of news reports about the princely states where they had
- (B) that were forming the basis of news reports about the princely states
- (C) to form the basis of news reports about the princely states which they have
- (D) which had formed the basis of news reports about the princely states where they had

(E) that formed the basis of news reports about the princely states they

读题

主句, + -ing 分词短语。

主句中时间标志 during the nineteenth century, 决定了谓语动词应该用一般过去时。

-ing 分词短语在句尾作状语, 表示伴随动作; 其中包含两个修饰关系: 现在分词短语 forming 修饰 journals, where 定语从句修饰 states。

必杀二步

一步: 关系代词和关系副词的区别

A D 选项 states where they had visited, visited 是及物动词, 必须有动作对象, states 是 visited 的动作对象, 应该用关系代词 that / which 替换关系副词 where; 因为 states 在从句中充当宾语, 所以关系代词可以省略。 ➤ 排除 A D

二步: 定语从句时态的判断

B 选项 定语从句 that were forming 时态错, 没有线索表明 journals 正在形成 the basis of news reports。

C 选项 定语从句 which they have visited 时态错, 没有时间标志或者逻辑关系(主句为一般过去时)决定用现在完成时。

D 选项 定语从句 which had formed 和 where they had visited 时态错, 没有线索表明动作发生在过去的过去。 ➤ 排除 B C D

补选

语态的选择

有些及物动词倾向于不用被动语态, 如 visit, enter, receive 等。所以, a place that they visited 不可以将定语从句简化为分词短语 a place visited by them, 虽然 visit 是及物动词可以有被动语态, 但此类词要优先使用主动语态。

B 选项 the princely states visited, visited 过去分词做定语修饰 the states, 不符合习惯用法。 ➤ 排除 B

正确选项 E

定语从句作定语和-ing 分词短语作定语的区别

-ing 分词短语作定语: 强调动作的多次性 重复性和客观性, 无明确的时间概念; 定语从句作定语: 强调动作的一次性, 强调具体时间的具体行为。

A 选项中-ing 分词短语(forming)做定语修饰 journals, E 选项中 that 定语从句修饰 journals; 从 journals 与 news reports 的逻辑关系看, E 选项比 A 选项的定语形式更合理。

34. His studies of ice-polished rocks in his Alpine home-land, far outside the range of present-day glaciers, led Louis Agassiz in 1837 to propose the concept of an age in which great ice sheets had existed in now currently temperate areas.

- (A) in which great ice sheets had existed in now currently temperate areas.
- (B) in which great ice sheets existed in what are now temperate areas.
- (C) when great ice sheets existed where there were areas now temperate.
- (D) when great ice sheets had existed in current temperate areas.

(E) when great ice sheets existed in areas now that are temperate.

读题

His studies led sb. to propose the concept of...

必杀二步

一步:定语从句的习惯搭配

an age 后的定语从句,关联词必须使用 in which...,不能使用 when。 ➤ 排除 C D E

二步:避免用词重复

A 选项 now 和 currently 意思重复,必须去掉一个。 ➤ 排除 A

正确选项 B

35. The airline industry is cutting its lowest discount fares more widely, more substantially, and earlier this year than it normally does at the end of the summer, a time during which travel usually decreases and the industry uses some lower fares for the attraction of passengers.

- (A) during which travel usually decreases and the industry uses some lower fares for the attraction of
- (B) during which travel usually decreases and therefore the industry will use some lower fares for the attraction of
- (C) in which travel usually decreases and in which the industry therefore uses some lower fares attracting
- (D) when travel usually decreases and the industry uses some lower fares to attract
- (E) when travel usually decreases and therefore the industry will use lower fares for the attraction of

读题

sb. is cutting sth. more... more..., and earlier this year than it normally does.

be doing 和 does 标志着不同同时态下的比较。

a time... 作为 the end of the summer 的名词性同位语。

必杀二步

一步:定语从句的习惯搭配

a time 后的定语从句关系副词必须是 when。

A B C 选项 a time during which / a time in which 都不符合习惯搭配。 ➤ 排除 A B C

二步:动作目的的表达

use sth./sb. to do

A B E 选项 use sth. for + 动作性名词(the attraction), 绝对错。

C 选项 use sth. doing 不符合习惯表达。 ➤ 排除 A B C E

补遗

不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

B C E 选项 随意添加副词 therefore, 因果关系强加, 改变原句的逻辑意思。

正确选项 D

36. The medieval scholar made almost no attempt to investigate the anatomy of plants, their mechanisms of growth, nor the ways where each was related to the other.

- (A) nor the ways where each was related to the other
- (B) nor how each was related to some other
- (C) or the way where one is related to the next
- (D) or the ways in which they are related to one another
- (E) or the ways that each related to some other

必杀一步

一步:定语从句的习惯搭配

the way 后能跟三种形式: the way to do...; the way + in which...; the way + 句子。

两者之间用 each...the other, 两者以上用 one another。

A 选项 the ways where..., 永远错。

B 选项 each...some other, 永远错。

C 选项 the way where...和 one...the next, 永远错。

E 选项 the way that...和 each...some other, 永远错。一步到位, 排除 A B C E

正确选项 D

37. Although schistosomiasis is not often fatal, it is so debilitating that it has become an economic drain on many developing countries.

- (A) it is so debilitating that it has become an economic
- (B) it is of such debilitation, it has become an economical
- (C) so debilitating is it as to become an economic
- (D) such is its debilitation, it becomes an economical
- (E) there is so much debilitation that it has become an economical

必杀二步

一步:状语从句的习惯搭配

so...that...作状语修饰 adj./adv./v., 表示结果。

so that 引导状语从句, 从句中出现情态动, so that 表示目的; 从句中没有出现情态动词, so that 表示结果。

such that 和 such...that...都表示结果; such...that..., such 后面只能加可数名词单数、可数名词复数或不可数名词(如 pain), 不能加动作性名词(如 debilitation)或形容词性名词(如 profundity)。

so/ such...that 中 so 短语和 such 短语位于句首时, 主句需要部分倒装。

so...as to 用于单一主谓结构中, 逻辑主语等于句子主语, 即句子主语可以执行 as to 后动词所表达的动作。

B 选项 缺少 that 与 such 搭配, 并且 such 后面不能加动作性名词 debilitation。

C选项 so...as to 结构不能使用倒装语序。

D选项 缺少 that 与 such 搭配,出现“...句子1, 句子2”这一错误结构(逗号不能用在两个完整的主谓结构之间)。✗ 排除 B C D

第二步:永远错误的形式

E选项 there be + 由形容词转化而来的名词,永远错,一般改为 it is + adj. + that...。

✗ 排除 E

正确选项 A

38. Several years ago the diet industry introduced a variety of appetite suppressants, but some of these drugs caused stomach disorders severe enough to have them banned by the Food and Drug Administration.

- (A) stomach disorders severe enough to have them
- (B) stomach disorders that were severe enough so they were
- (C) stomach disorders of such severity so as to be
- (D) such severe stomach disorders that they were
- (E) such severe stomach disorders as to be

必杀一步

一步:状语从句的习惯搭配

A选项 severe enough to 表示主观心理标准满足,而根据后文...banned by the Food and Drug Administration 推断,应严重到某种客观标准。

B选项 enough so 搭配错。

C选项 such... so as to 搭配错。

E选项 such/so...as to 后一般不加被动语态。✗ 一步到位,排除 A B C E

正确选项 D

39. The Emperor Augustus, it appears, commissioned an idealized sculpture portrait, the features of which are so unrealistic as to constitute what one scholar calls an “artificial face.”

- (A) so unrealistic as to constitute
- (B) so unrealistic they constituted
- (C) so unrealistic that they have constituted
- (D) unrealistic enough so that they constitute
- (E) unrealistic enough so as to constitute

读题

sb., 插入语, commissioned sth., the features of which... what...

the features of which 是名词/代词/数词 + of + which/whom 结构,作非限定性定语, which 向前指代 portrait; what 从句作动词 constitute 的宾语从句。

必杀二步

一步:习惯搭配

B 选项 缺少 that 与 so 搭配。

D 选项 enough 与 so that 不能搭配。

E 选项 enough 与 so as to 不能搭配。 ➤ 排除 B D E

第二步:时态判断

C 选项 没有时间标志以及逻辑关系表明 so...that 状语从句必须使用现在完成时态。

➤ 排除 C

正确选项 A

40. Students in the metropolitan school district lack math skills to such a large degree as to make it difficult to absorb them into a city economy becoming ever more dependent on information-based industries.

(A) lack math skills to such a large degree as to make it difficult to absorb them into a city economy becoming

(B) lack math skills to a large enough degree that they will be difficult to absorb into a city's economy that becomes

(C) lack of math skills is so large as to be difficult to absorb them into a city's economy that becomes

(D) are lacking so much in math skills as to be difficult to absorb into a city's economy becoming

(E) are so lacking in math skills that it will be difficult to absorb them into a city economy becoming

必杀一步

一步:习惯用法

1> enough to 是一种主观心理标准满足,在标准书面语中很少使用。

2> so/such...that... 可以用在单一主谓结构中,也可以用在复杂主谓结构中,不用考虑逻辑主语问题。

3> so/such...as to... 表示结果,用于单一主谓结构中,逻辑主语等于句子主语,即句子主语可以执行 as to 后动词所表达的动作。

A 选项 as to 的逻辑主语为 students, students make it difficult to absorb them into a city economy, 逻辑意思不合理。而且, to such a large degree as to... 属于累赘、笨拙的表达方式,永远错。

B 选项 to a large enough degree that 属于累赘、笨拙的表达方式,永远错。

D 选项 so much...as to be difficult to absorb 属于累赘、笨拙的表达方式,永远错。

➤ 排除 A B D

第二步:名词、动词、代词的使用

C 选项 原句谓语动词 lack 变成了 lack of 名词短语作主语,使得原句主语垂悬于句首,无句法功能;同时 them 的指代对象变成了 math skills, 逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 C

正确选项 E

so...that... 作结果状语修饰动词 lack, 不用考虑逻辑主语问题。

41. Among the Cossacks, vegetable farming was once so despised that it was forbidden on pain of death.

- (A) so despised that it was (B) so despised to be
(C) so despised it had been (D) despised enough that it was
(E) despised enough as to be

必杀一步

一步:习惯用法

so...that...

B 选项 so...to be 搭配错。

C 选项 缺少 that 与 so 构成搭配。

D 选项 enough that 搭配错。

E 选项 enough as to 搭配错。 ➤ 一步到位,排除 B C D E

正确选项 A

42. The number of mountain gorillas is declining with such rapidity that the population is one-half in the twenty years between a count made by George Schaller in 1960 and the one made by Dian Fossey in 1980.

- (A) with such rapidity that the population is one-half
(B) with such rapidity that the population was one-half
(C) so rapidly the population divided in half
(D) so rapidly that the population was halved
(E) in such rapidity that the population is halved

读题

The number is declining with such rapidity that ...

必杀一步

一步:状语从句的习惯搭配

so/such...that...表示结果,可以用在单一主谓结构中,也可以用在复杂主谓结构中,不用考虑逻辑主语问题。such 后面一般不能加由动词或形容词转化而来的名词,如 rapidity, profundity。

A B E 选项 such + rapidity + that 从句, 错。

C 选项 缺少 that 与 so 搭配。 ➤ 一步到位,排除 A B C E

正确选项 D

43. Once common throughout the Western plains, black-footed ferrets are thought to have declined in number as a result of the poisoning of prairie dogs, their prey.

- (A) black-footed ferrets are thought to have declined in number as
(B) it is thought that the decline in number of black-footed ferrets is
(C) the decline in the number of black-footed ferrets is thought of as
(D) that black-footed ferrets have declined in their numbers is thought to be

(E) the numbers of the black-footed ferret are thought to have declined as

读题

Once common throughout..., black-footed ferrets are thought to....

once 可以引导状语从句: once + 完整主谓结构

once 状语从句的省略形式: once + 名词短语 / 介词短语 / 形容词短语, 逻辑主语等于主句的主语

必备一步

一步: 状语从句的省略形式

once + 形容词短语在句首, 逻辑主语等于主句的主语, 只有 black-footed ferrets 可以充当 common throughout the Western plains 的逻辑主语。一步到位, 排除 B C D E

正确选项 A

44. Certain pesticides can become ineffective if used repeatedly in the same place; one reason is suggested by the finding that there are much larger populations of pesticide-degrading microbes in soils with a relatively long history of pesticide use than in soils that are free of such chemicals.

- (A) Certain pesticides can become ineffective if used repeatedly in the same place; one reason is suggested by the finding that there are much larger populations of pesticide-degrading microbes in soils with a relatively long history of pesticide use than in soils that are free of such chemicals.
- (B) If used repeatedly in the same place, one reason that certain pesticides can become ineffective is suggested by the finding that there are much larger populations of pesticide-degrading microbes in soils with a relatively long history of pesticide use than in soils that are free of such chemicals.
- (C) If used repeatedly in the same place, one reason certain pesticides can become ineffective is suggested by the finding that much larger populations of pesticide-degrading microbes are found in soils with a relatively long history of pesticide use than those that are free of such chemicals.
- (D) The finding that there are much larger populations of pesticide-degrading microbes in soils with a relatively long history of pesticide use than in soils that are free of such chemicals is suggestive of one reason, if used repeatedly in the same place, certain pesticides can become ineffective.
- (E) The finding of much larger populations of pesticide-degrading microbes in soils with a relatively long history of pesticide use than in those that are free of such chemicals suggests one reason certain pesticides can become ineffective if used repeatedly in the same place.

读题

Sth. can become ineffective if used repeatedly; One reason is suggested by the finding that....

the finding that...是具体化同位结构;类似的还有: theory / evidence / belief / principle that...。

必杀二步

一步:状语从句的省略形式

B C 选项 if used...是状语从句的省略形式,逻辑主语等于主句的主语,one reason 无法充当它的逻辑主语。

D 选项 the finding is suggestive of one reason, if used repeatedly: 连接词 + 分词在句尾有两种可能性:一是修饰谓语动词,逻辑主语等于主句的主语,二是就近修饰动词,逻辑主语等于所修饰的动词的逻辑主语。if used repeatedly 在这里修饰谓语动词短语 is suggestive of,但是 the finding 不能合理充当 if used repeatedly 的逻辑主语。排除 B C D

二步:不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

原句中 the finding + that 从句是具体化同位结构,that 从句说明 finding 的具体内容,强调整体意思。

E 选项 the finding of 强调所属关系,改变了原句的合理意思和重心。而且比较结构 The finding of much larger populations...than in those that 比较对象不清,意思含混。

排除 E

正确选项 A

if used repeatedly 修饰谓语动词,逻辑主语等于句子主语 certain pesticides。

45. Although just inside the orbit of Jupiter, amateur astronomers with good telescopes should be able to see the comet within the next few weeks.

- (A) Although just inside the orbit of (B) Although it is just inside the orbit of
(C) Just inside the orbit of (D) Orbiting just inside
(E) Having orbited just inside

必杀二步

一步:状语从句的省略形式

A 选项 连词(although) + 介词短语(inside...)错。排除 A

二步:逻辑意思的合理性

C 选项 介词短语 Just inside the orbit of 在句首作状语,句意“业余天文爱好者在 Jupiter 的轨道里应该能看见彗星”不合理。

D E 选项 分词短语在句首,逻辑主语等于主句的主语。主句主语 amateur astronomers 不能充当分词短语的逻辑主语,因为 amateur astronomers orbiting inside Jupiter 和 amateur astronomers having orbited inside Jupiter 逻辑意思都不合理。

排除 C D E

正确选项 B

从句中的代词 it 可以指代主句中的名词,必须根据上下文逻辑关系进行代词指代对象的查找,it 指代 comet,逻辑意思合理。

46. Although the lesser cornstalk borer is widely distributed, control of them is neces-

sary only in the South.

- (A) the lesser cornstalk borer is widely distributed, control of them is
- (B) widely distributed, measures to control the lesser cornstalk borer are
- (C) widely distributed, lesser cornstalk borer control is
- (D) the lesser cornstalk borer is widely distributed, measures to control it are
- (E) it is widely distributed, control of the lesser cornstalk borer is

读题

although 引导的状语从句, + 主句.

此题二步

一步:代词指代

A 选项 代词 them 没有指代对象。

E 选项 状语从句中的代词 it 应该优先指代主句主语的核心词 control, control is widely distributed 逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 A E

二步:状语从句的省略形式

连词 + 分词短语是状语从句的省略形式,放在句首,省略的主语等于主句的主语。

B 选项 主句主语的核心词 measures 不能充当 distributed 的逻辑主语。

C 选项 主句主语的核心词 control 也不能充当 distributed 的逻辑主语。 ➤ 排除 B C

正确选项 D

lesser 不属于比较结构,它本身就是一个形容词,表示较小的,所以后面没有出现比较结构 than...。

第九章

词的使用与惯用法

(4) 当两种或多种词性相同时，可按以下顺序进行分析：主谓一致，情态，语态，语气，时态。

(3) 当两种或多种词性不同时，应选择不

(2) 当两种或多种词性不同时，应选择不

(1) 当两种或多种词性不同时，应选择不

2. 词性的使用

(4) 当两种或多种词性不同时，应选择不

各词性时，应选择不

(3) 当两种或多种词性不同时，应选择不

of

addition, in contrast to, in terms of, instead of, on the basis of, on account of, out

because of, due to, as for, as to, along with, apart from, as a result of, for all, in

throughout, to, under, over, against, with, within, without, during, including, according to,

between, besides, by, despite, except, for, from, in, into, like, of, on, since,

(2) GMAT 常考介词和介词短语有: about, over, after, before, against, among, be-

(1) 介词的使用

三、三类词的重点

be + 介词 + 名词 + 介词 + 名词 + 介词 + 名词

done; there be + 名词 + 介词 + 名词 + 介词 + 名词 + 介词 + 名词

there be + 名词 + 介词 + 名词 + 介词 + 名词 + 介词 + 名词

表示“作为”

表示“像”

表示“像”

表示“像”

表示“像”

表示“像”

表示“像”

表示“像”

表示“像”

表示“像”

表示“像”

表示“像”

表示“像”

表示“像”

表示“像”

表示“像”

表示“像”

表示“像”

表示“像”

表示“像”

表示“像”

表示“像”

表示“像”

表示“像”

表示“像”

表示“像”

表示“像”

表示“像”

一、用词的五大基本原则

1. 注意标准书面语与口语的区别, 严格遵循标准书面语原则。
2. 优先选择简洁的表达方式, 尤其是简洁的习惯搭配。
3. 密切关注词的位置的变化, 保证词的位置正确。
4. 避免词与词在语义上重复。
5. 实义词(名词/动词/形容词/副词)不能随意省略、添加或替换。

二、标准书面语与口语的区别

1. 宾语从句和表语从句引导词 **that** 不能省略。
2. **if** 只能引导条件状语从句, 表示“如果”, 而不能表示“是否”, 只有 **whether** 可以表示“是否”, 引导主语从句、宾语从句和表语从句。
3. “句子, **which** 定语从句”中, **which** 不能指代前面整个句子。
4. 代词 **it/this/that** 都不能指代整个句子; 代词 **this/that/these** 不能单独充当主语, 必须加上名词才能作主语。
5. “do + 代词”永远错, 正确表达为: **do so**。
6. “like + 句子”永远错; **like** 可以作动词也可以作介词, “like(介词) + 名词”表示比较, 不表示举例, “such as + 名词”表示举例; “just as/ as + 句子”表示比较, “just as / as + 名词”表示“作为…”。
7. **there be** 句型的绝对错误形式: **there could be done sth.**; **there being sth.**; **there be sth. done**; **there be + a/an + 由形容词/动词变化而来的名词**。GMAT 中一般使用 “**there be + 具体名词**”, 表示自然存在。

三、五类词的考试重点

1. 介词的使用

- 1) 密切关注习惯搭配中介词是否准确。
- 2) GMAT 常考介词和介词短语有: **about, over, after, before, against, among, between, besides, by, despite, except, for, from, in, into, like, of, on, since, through, to, under, until, with, within, without, during, including; according to, because of, due to, as for, as to, along with, apart from, as a result of, for all, in addition to, in contrast to, in terms of, instead of, on the basis of, on account of, out of** 等。
- 3) 介词短语的修饰对象一定要明确: 作状语, 则修饰动词; 作后置定语, 则修饰名词或名词短语。两者不能引起争议。
- 4) 介词后可以加名词性从句, 但不能加完整主谓结构。

2. 动词的使用

- 1) 完整主谓结构不能缺少作谓语的动词。
- 2) 动作之间逻辑关系要合理。
- 3) 谓语动词与分词不能混淆。
- 4) 当怀疑动词有错时, 可按以下顺序进行分析: 主谓一致, 情态, 语态, 语气, 时态。

3. 形容词和副词的使用

- 1) 形容词和副词的修饰对象一定要明确。
- 2) 形容词和副词不能混淆: quick/quickly; economic/economically; increasing/increasingly; alternate/alternatively; significant/significantly; seeming/seemingly; high/highly
- 3) 形容词或形容词短语在句首逻辑主语等于句子主语(contrary to 除外)。

4. 代词的使用

- 1) 要避免代词指代不清。代词指代不清时的修改方法有三个:
 - A. 重复代词指代的对象。
 - B. 用 such + n. 或者指示代词 this/that/these/those + n. 代替代词。
 - C. 用一个名词概括代词指代的对象。
- 2) 代词一致性原则: 相同的代词指代对象要一致。
- 3) it 与 one 的区别: it 指单数名词、单数名词短语或不可数名词; one 指单数名词短语的核心词。
- 4) that 和 those 可以用来替代前面提过的事物或人, 以避免重复。

5. 名词的使用

- 1) 个体名词(表示一类人/物/事)和群体名词(表示若干个体组成的集体)为可数名词, 有复数形式, 而物质名词和抽象名词为不可数名词, 一般不用复数形式。
- 2) 动作性名词和动词-ing 形式的区别: 动作性名词(如 comparison, combustion, sale, increase, rise)强调动作的结果或状态, 动词-ing 形式(如 comparing, burning, selling, increasing, rising)强调动作本身。
- 3) 名词所有格: 's 属格(主要用于有生命的名词, 也用于群体/时间/天体/地理/区域/机构等名词); of... 属格(可用于有生命或无生命的名词); of... 's 属格(GMAT 考试中不接受这一双重所有格); ' 属格(主要用于以-s 缀生的复数名词, 如 monkeys')。
- 4) 名词的泛指与特指: 名词前加定冠词 the、物主代词或其他限定词表示特指; 名词前加不定冠词 a/an 或不加限定词(可数名词用复数)表示泛指。
- 5) 名词短语的核心词不能与其修饰成分中的名词混淆: 如 A of B 中, A 是核心词, 不能变成 B of A。
- 6) 名词的逻辑对应: 复数代词或 such/these/those + 复数名词, 对应已经出现过的复数名词; 单数代词或 the + 单数名词/ such a + 单数名词, 对应已经出现过的单数名词。

◆ 练习题及其详解 ◆

1. Parliament did not accord full refugee benefits to twelve of the recent immigrants because it believed that to do it rewards them for entering the country illegally.

- (A) to do it rewards (B) doing it rewards
(C) to do this would reward (D) doing so would reward
(E) to do it would reward

必杀一步

一步: 永远错误的形式

标准书面语中, 用 “do + 代词 it/this/that/them/these/those” 代替前文的动词短语, 永远错; 正确用法为: do so, 副词 so 和 do 连用表示前面说到的那个动作。

A B E 选项 do it 永远错。

C 选项 do this 永远错。一步到位,排除 A B C E

正确选项 D

2. Machines replacing human labor, there was wide anticipation that the workweek would continue to become shorter.

- (A) Machines replacing human labor, there was wide anticipation that
- (B) When machines replaced human labor, there was wide anticipation
- (C) As machines replaced human labor, it was widely anticipated that
- (D) Insofar as machines replaced human labor, it was widely anticipated
- (E) Human labor being replaced by machines, there was wide anticipation that

必杀二步

一步:简洁性原则

there be + adj. + 动作性名词,表达不简洁,故意复杂化,应该直接用动词短语表达。

A B E 选项 there was wide anticipation 绝对错。排除 A B E

二步:逻辑意思的合理性

C 选项 as 引导状语从句,表示时间概念。

D 选项 insofar as 引导状语从句,相当于 to the degree that,表示到...程度。

根据上下文逻辑意思,时间概念更合理。排除 D

正确选项 C

3. More than thirty years ago Dr. Barbara McClintock, the Nobel Prize winner, reported that genes can "jump," as pearls moving mysteriously from one necklace to another.

- (A) as pearls moving mysteriously from one necklace to another
- (B) like pearls moving mysteriously from one necklace to another
- (C) as pearls do that move mysteriously from one necklace to others
- (D) like pearls do that move mysteriously from one necklace to others
- (E) as do pearls that move mysteriously from one necklace to some other one

必杀二步

一步:like 和 as 的习惯用法

as (介词) + 名词

表示作为...

as (连词) + 主谓结构

表示比较,强调动作的相似性

like (介词) + 名词

表示比较

like (介词) + 主谓结构

在标准书面语中永远错

A 选项 moving 作为定语修饰 pearls,核心词是 pearls,as + 名词(pearls),表示作为珍珠,上下文逻辑意思不合理。

D 选项 like + 主谓结构,错。排除 A D

二步:习惯搭配

one...another; each other; each...the other; some...others

C 选项 one...others 不符合习惯搭配。

E 选项 one...some other one 不符合习惯搭配。 ➤ 排除 C E

正确选项 B

4. The ordinance is intended to force householders to separate such hazardous waste like pesticides, batteries, fertilizers, and oil-based paints from the general stream of household trash.

- (A) to separate such hazardous waste like
- (B) that they should separate such hazardous waste like
- (C) separating such hazardous wastes as
- (D) that they should separate such hazardous wastes as
- (E) to separate such hazardous wastes as

必杀二步

一步:举例的表达方式

like + 名词,表示比较,不能表示举例; such as + 名词/-ing 形式,表示举例。

➤ 排除 A B

二步:习惯用法

force sb. to do

C 选项 force sb. doing 搭配错。

D 选项 force sb. + that 从句,不符合习惯搭配。 ➤ 排除 C D

正确选项 E

5. Some bat caves, like honeybee hives, have residents that take on different duties such as defending the entrance, acting as sentinels and to sound a warning at the approach of danger, and scouting outside the cave for new food and roosting sites.

- (A) acting as sentinels and to sound
- (B) acting as sentinels and sounding
- (C) to act as sentinels and sound
- (D) to act as sentinels and to sound
- (E) to act as a sentinel sounding

必杀二步

一步:平行结构形式要对称

A 选项 and 连接 to do 和 doing,形式不对称。 ➤ 排除 A

二步:习惯用法

such as 表示举例: such as + n./-ing 形式。

C D E 选项 such as + to do 永远错。 ➤ 排除 C D E

正确选项 B

并列连词的使用

such as doing X1, doing X2 and doing X3, and doing X4: doing X2 与 doing X3 有紧密逻辑联系,所以将 doing X2 和 doing X3 先用 and 连接起来。

6. While the base salary for the top five officers of the company did not change

from 1990 to 1991, cuts were made in nonsalary compensation, as in allowances for overseas assignments and club memberships.

- (A) cuts were made in nonsalary compensation, as in
- (B) cuts were made in such nonsalary compensation as
- (C) cuts were made in such nonsalary compensation as those in
- (D) cuts in nonsalary compensation were made in areas like
- (E) there were cuts made in nonsalary compensation, in areas like

读题

While the base salary did not change, cuts were made in...

必需二步

一步: 举例的表达方式

allowance for... 是对 nonsalary compensation 的举例。

A 选项 as + 介词短语不能表示举例。

D E 选项 like + 名词表示比较, 不能表示举例。 ➤ 排除 A D E

二步: 代词指代

C 选项 代词 those 无法指代单数名词 nonsalary compensation。 ➤ 排除 C

正确选项 B

such as 表示举例, such nonsalary compensation as allowances for A and B。

7. The odds are about 4 to 1 against surviving a takeover offer, and many business consultants therefore advise that a company's first line of defense in eluding offers like these be to even refuse to take calls from likely corporate raiders.

- (A) that a company's first line of defense in eluding offers like these be to even refuse
- (B) that a company's first line of defense in eluding such offers be to refuse even
- (C) a company defending itself against offers of this kind that, as a first line of defense, they should even refuse
- (D) companies which are defending themselves against such an offer that, as a first line of defense, they should even refuse
- (E) that the first line of defense for a company who is eluding offers like these is the refusal even

必需二步

一步: 永远错误的形式

like + 代词 this/that/these/those/it 等, 永远错; 正确用法: like + 名词/名词短语, 表示比较。

like 不能表示举例, 表示举例时必须用 such as。

A E 选项 like these 永远错。 ➤ 排除 A E

二步: 习惯用法

advise 的习惯用法: advise sb. to do...; advise + that 从句

C 选项 advise sb. (a company defending...) + that 从句, 错。

D 选项 advise sb. (companies which...) + that 从句, 错。✎ 排除 C D

补选

虚拟语气

表示建议、要求、命令类的动词后面的宾语从句中, 必须使用动词原形表示虚拟语气, 不能使用 should + 动词原形。

E 选项 advise that sth. is...: 宾语从句的 be 动词 is 应改为原形 be。✎ 排除 E

正确选项 B

8. William H. Johnson's artistic debt to Scandinavia is evident in paintings that range from sensitive portraits of citizens in his wife's Danish home, Kerteminde, and awe-inspiring views of fjords and mountain peaks in the western and northern regions of Norway.

- (A) and (B) to
(C) and to (D) with
(E) in addition to

必杀一步

一步: 习惯用法

根据习惯搭配 range from...to... 直接寻找介词 to。✎ 一步到位, 排除 A C D E

正确选项 B

265

9. The new contract forbids a strike by the transportation union.

- (A) forbids a strike by the transportation union.
(B) forbids the transportation union from striking.
(C) forbids that there be a strike by the transportation union.
(D) will forbid the transportation union from striking.
(E) will forbid that the transportation union strikes.

必杀一步

一步: 习惯搭配

forbid 的习惯用法: forbid sth.; forbid sb. to do sth.; forbid doing sth.。

B D 选项 forbid sb. (the transportation union) from doing (striking) 永远错。

C E 选项 forbid + that 从句, 永远错。✎ 排除 B C D E

补选

习惯搭配

v. + sb. + from doing sth. 表示阻止某人做某事的动词有: prevent / prohibit / stop / keep sb. from doing...。

正确选项 A

10. Stable interest rates on long-term bonds are the financial market's vote of confidence in the Federal Reserve keeping in control of inflation.

- (A) in the Federal Reserve keeping in control of inflation.
- (B) that the Federal Reserve will keep inflation under control.
- (C) for the Federal Reserve, that it would keep control of inflation.
- (D) that inflation will be kept control of by the Federal Reserve.
- (E) that inflation would be kept control of by the Federal Reserve.

读题

Stable interest rates are the vote of confidence in sth.

必杀一步

一步: 习惯用法

be in control of; keep/ have/ bring sth. under control; get/ take/ presume/ lose control of
A 选项 keep in control of 永远错。

C D E 选项 keep control of 永远错。 \Rightarrow 一步到位, 排除 A C D E

正确选项 B

11. Frances Wright's book on America contrasted the republicanism of the United States with what she saw as the aristocratic and corrupt institutions of England.

- (A) with what she saw as
- (B) with that which she saw to be
- (C) to that she saw being
- (D) and that which she saw as
- (E) and what she saw to be

读题

The book contrasted ...with what....

必杀一步

一步: 习惯用法

contrast ...with...; see sth. as...; sth. be seen as... (相当于 be regarded as)

C D E 选项 contrast...to.../ contrast...and... 都不符合习惯搭配。

B 选项 see...to be... 搭配错。 \Rightarrow 一步到位, 排除 B C D E

补遗

简洁性原则

B 选项 that which 表达不简洁, 直接用 what 替换。

正确选项 A

12. Most nations regard their airspace as extending upward as high as an aircraft can fly; no specific altitude, however, has been officially recognized as a boundary.

- (A) as extending
- (B) as the extent
- (C) to be an extent
- (D) to be an extension
- (E) to extend

必杀二步

一步: 习惯用法

regard...as + 名词 / 形容词 / -ing 形式

C D E 选项 regard...to 不符合习惯搭配。 ➤ 排除 C D E

第二步:形容词与副词不能混淆

B 选项 划线部分 the extent 是名词,未划线部分 high 是副词,副词不能修饰名词,并且名词 the extent 与副词 upward 也不能搭配。 ➤ 排除 B

正确选项 A

13. The plot of *The Bostonians* centers on the rivalry between Olive Chancellor, an active feminist, with her charming and cynical cousin, Basil Ransom, when they find themselves drawn to the same radiant young woman whose talent for public speaking has won her an ardent following.

- (A) rivalry between Olive Chancellor, an active feminist, with her charming and cynical cousin, Basil Ransom,
- (B) rivals Olive Chancellor, an active feminist, against her charming and cynical cousin, Basil Ransom,
- (C) rivalry that develops between Olive Chancellor, an active feminist, and Basil Ransom, her charming and cynical cousin,
- (D) developing rivalry between Olive Chancellor, an active feminist, with Basil Ransom, her charming and cynical cousin,
- (E) active feminist, Olive Chancellor, and the rivalry with her charming and cynical cousin Basil Ransom,

267

读题

the plot centers on the rivalry between OC with BR, when...

an active feminist 作 OC 的同位语, her charming and cynical cousin 作 BR 的同位语。

此题第二步

一步:习惯用法

rivalry between X1 and X2; A rival B for/in...

A D 选项 rivalry between OC with BR 搭配错。

B 选项 rivals OC against BR 搭配错。 ➤ 排除 A B D

第二步:连词的连接对象

E 选项 and 就近连接 OC 和 rivalry, 两者概念不对等, 连接对象不合理。 ➤ 排除 E

正确选项 C

14. Health officials estimate that 35 million Africans are in danger of contracting trypanosomiasis, or "African sleeping sickness," a parasitic disease spread by the bites of tsetse flies.

- (A) are in danger of contracting (B) are in danger to contract
- (C) have a danger of contracting (D) are endangered by contraction
- (E) have a danger that they will contract

必杀二步**一步:习惯用法**

be in danger of doing, 处在…的危险中

B 选项 be in danger to do, 不符合习惯搭配。

C E 选项 have a danger of, 不符合习惯搭配。 ➤ 排除 B C E

二步:逻辑意思的合理性

D 选项 endanger 一般用主动语态, 不用被动语态; by 短语逻辑意思上不合理, 因为抽象名词 contraction 不能执行 endanger 这个动作, 也不能修饰 trypanosomiasis。

➤ 排除 D

正确选项 A

15. As litigation grows more complex, the need that experts explain technical issues becomes more apparent.

- (A) that experts explain technical issues becomes
- (B) for experts to explain technical issues became
- (C) for experts to explain technical issues becomes
- (D) that technical issues be explained by experts became
- (E) that there be explanations of technical issues by experts has become

必杀二步**一步:习惯用法**

错误搭配: the need + that 从句; the importance + that 从句。

正确搭配: the need to do/ the need for sb. to do/ the need for sth.; the importance of sth.。

➤ 排除 A D E

二步:主从句的时态协调

B 选项 主句的一般过去时 the need became... 与 as 从句的一般现在时 litigation grows... 不协调, 错。 ➤ 排除 B

正确选项 C

16. Samuel Sewall viewed marriage, as other seventeenth-century colonists, like a property arrangement rather than an emotional bond based on romantic love.

- (A) Samuel Sewall viewed marriage, as other seventeenth-century colonists, like a property arrangement rather than
- (B) As did other seventeenth-century colonists, Samuel Sewall viewed marriage to be a property arrangement rather than viewing it as
- (C) Samuel Sewall viewed marriage to be a property arrangement, like other seventeenth-century colonists, rather than viewing it as
- (D) Marriage to Samuel Sewall, like other seventeenth-century colonists, was viewed as a property arrangement rather than
- (E) Samuel Sewall, like other seventeenth-century colonists, viewed marriage as a property arrangement rather than

此步二步**一步:习惯用法**

view...as...

A 选项 view sth. like..., 不符合习惯搭配。

B C 选项 view sth. to be..., 不符合习惯搭配。排除 A B C

二步:比较对象之间要有可比性

D 选项 marriage 与 other seventeenth-century colonists 概念不对等, 没有可比性。

排除 D

补选

A 选项 as other seventeenth-century colonists, as 是介词, 表示作为……, 不表示比较。

B 选项 viewed sth. to be rather than viewing sth. as, rather than 前后比较对象形式不对称; rather than 的习惯用法为: rather than 在句中, 用 rather than + do(省略 to 的不定式);

在句首, 用 rather than + do(省略 to 的不定式)或 rather than + doing....

正确选项 E

17. The expected rise in the price of oil could be a serious impact to industrialized nations and severely diminish the possibility to have an economy free of inflation.

(A) be a serious impact to industrialized nations and severely diminish the possibility to have

(B) seriously impact on industrialized nations and severely impede the possibility to have

(C) seriously impact on industrialized nations and severely impede the possibility of having

(D) have a serious impact on industrialized nations and severely impede the possibility to have

(E) have a serious impact on industrialized nations and severely diminish the possibility of having

269

读题

The rise could be an impact to sth. and diminish the possibility to do sth.

此步二步**一步:习惯用法**

A 选项 be an impact to sth. 搭配错; 正确用法为: have an impact on...; impact on....

A B D 选项 the possibility to do 搭配错; 正确用法为: the possibility of doing; the possibility + that 从句, that 从句使用将来时态, 表示可能性的具体内容。

排除 A B D

二步:实义动词不能随意省略、添加或替换。

B C D 选项 把原句中的实义动词 diminish (减少) 改为 impede (阻止), 改变原句的意思。

排除 B C D

正确选项 E

18. In December of 1987 an automobile manufacturer pleaded no contest to criminal charges of odometer tampering and agreed to pay more than \$ 16 million in civil damages for cars that were test-driven with their odometers disconnected.

- (A) cars that were test-driven with their odometers disconnected
- (B) cars that it had test-driven with their disconnected odometers
- (C) its cars having been test-driven with disconnected odometers
- (D) having test-driven cars with their odometers disconnected
- (E) having cars that were test-driven with disconnected odometers

读题

An automobile manufacturer pleaded no contest to...and agreed to pay...for...

必备二步

一步:习惯用法

pay some money for sth., 表示花钱买东西; pay some money for doing sth., 表示因做某事而赔偿多少钱。

A B C 选项 pay \$ 16 million for (its) cars 花钱买车, 不符合上下文逻辑意思。

→ 排除 A B C

270 第二步:简洁性原则

E 选项 定语从句 that were test-driven 不简洁, 可以直接用 test-driven 修饰 cars。

→ 排除 E

正确选项 D

19. Judicial rules in many states require that the identities of all prosecution witnesses are made known to defendants so they can attempt to rebut the testimony, but the Constitution explicitly requires only that the defendant have the opportunity to confront an accuser in court.

- (A) that the identities of all prosecution witnesses are made known to defendants so they can attempt to rebut
- (B) that the identities of all prosecution witnesses be made known to defendants so that they can attempt to rebut
- (C) that the defendants should know the identities of all prosecution witnesses so they can attempt a rebuttal of
- (D) the identities of all prosecution witnesses should be made known to defendants so they can attempt rebutting
- (E) making known to defendants the identities of all prosecution witnesses so that they can attempt to rebut

必备一步

一步:习惯用法

require sb. to do; require + that 从句(必须使用虚拟语气); require of sb. + that 从句(必须使用虚拟语气); sth. be required of sb.; require doing (doing 主动形式表被动含义)

A C 选项 that 从句中没有使用动词原形, 错。

D 选项 宾语从句缺少连词 that, 也没有使用动词原形; 并且 so 与 they... 之间缺 that 与 so 构成习惯搭配 so that。

E 选项 require making known to 形式上(require doing)可以接受, 但逻辑意思上不合理。

一步到位, 排除 A C D E

正确选项 B

20. One of the most powerful driving forces behind recycling is the threat of legislation that would require companies that they take more responsibility for the disposal of its products.

- (A) that they take more responsibility for the disposal of its products.
- (B) that they should take more responsibility for disposing of products.
- (C) having to take more responsibility for disposing of their products.
- (D) to take more responsibility for the disposal of their products.
- (E) taking more responsibility for their product's disposal.

读题

One of the forces is the threat of legislation that...

271

必需一步

一步: 习惯用法

A B 选项 require sb. + that 从句, 永远错。

C E 选项 require sb. doing, 永远错。一步到位, 排除 A B C E

补选

1 > responsibility 的习惯搭配

have a responsibility to do (responsibility 前必须加 a); take responsibility for sth. / doing sth. (responsibility 前不加 a / the)

2 > 定语从句修饰对象的判断

定语从句优先就近修饰, 然后再跳跃修饰; 并且要从语法上(如定语从句的主谓一致)或逻辑上(如上下文的逻辑关系)保证定语从句跳跃修饰的合理性。

the threat of legislation that would require companies to do...; that 从句就近修饰 legislation。

正确选项 D

21. Congress is debating a bill requiring certain employers provide workers with unpaid leave so as to care for sick or newborn children.

- (A) provide workers with unpaid leave so as to
- (B) to provide workers with unpaid leave so as to

- (C) provide workers with unpaid leave in order that they
 (D) to provide workers with unpaid leave so that they can
 (E) provide workers with unpaid leave and

必杀二步

一步:习惯用法

A C E 选项 require sb. do 永远错。 ➤ 排除 A C E

二步:逻辑主语

so as to 可以表示目的,也可以表示结果,用于单一主谓结构中,逻辑主语等于句子主语,即句子主语可以执行 as to 后动词所表达的动作。

so that 引导状语从句:从句中出现情态动词,so that 表示目的;从句中没有出现情态动词,so that 表示结果。so that 不用考虑逻辑主语问题。

B 选项 句子不是单一主谓结构,so as to 可以修饰多个动词 debate/require/provide,导致 so as to 的逻辑主语不明确。 ➤ 排除 B

正确选项 D

so that 引导状语从句,就近修饰动词 provide;状语从句中的代词 they 优先指代修饰对象中的复数名词 workers;情态动词 can 的添加,使 so that 状语从句只能表示动作的目的。

22. Astronomers at the Palomar Observatory have discovered a distant supernova explosion, one that they believe is a type previously unknown to science.

- (A) that they believe is (B) that they believe it to be
 (C) they believe that it is of (D) they believe that is
 (E) they believe to be of

读题

Astronomers discovered a...explosion, one that...

one 作为代词性同位结构,解释说明 explosion,that 定语从句修饰 one。

必杀一步

一步:习惯用法

believe 的正确用法:believe + that 从句;believe sth. to be; believe sth.。

错误用法:believe sth. sth.; believe sth. that。

- A 选项 that they believe 作定语修饰 one, is 是 one 的谓语动词,原句结构为“句子 1, 句子 2”,两个完整的主谓结构不能够用逗号连接。如果考虑把 is 当作定语从句中的动词,应该把 they believe 变成插入语 one that, they believe, is...。
- B 选项 that 作为定语从句的关系代词充当 believe 的宾语,语法上多出代词 it 就意味着 it 和 that 重复,it 必须省略。
- C 选项 that it is of 作为 believe 的宾语,就意味着 they believe that it is of 不能作为定语从句修饰 one,因为 believe 后面只能跟一个宾语,believe sth. + that 从句,永远错。
- D 选项 that is a type 作为 believe 的宾语,使得 they believe that is a type 不能充当 one 的定语从句,并且代词 that 不能单独作主语。 ➤ 一步到位,排除 A B C D

正确选项 E

1> 关系代词的省略

在定语从句中充当及物动词宾语的关系代词 **that** 或 **which** 可以省略。

2> 逻辑意思的合理性

原句 **an explosion is a type**, 把特定的一次爆炸等同于一个爆炸类型, 逻辑意思不合理; E 选项加出介词 **of**, 添加所属关系, 使特定的爆炸是一个爆炸类型中的一种, 更符合科学事实。

23. The metabolic rate of sharks is low compared with the rates of most other fishes.

- (A) with the rates of most other fishes (B) to most other fishes' rate
(C) to that of rates for most other fishes (D) to most other fishes
(E) with most other fishes

秒杀二步**一步: 习惯用法**

compare to 和 **compare with** 的区别: **compare X1 to X2** 把 X1 比成 X2, X1 和 X2 是不同类事物, 强调相似性; **compare X1 with X2** 表示 X1 与 X2 相比较, X1 与 X2 是同一类事物, 强调差异性。

B C D 选项 根据上述区别, **compared to** (把...比成...) 使句子比较含义不合理。

➤ 排除 B C D

二步: 比较对象之间要有可比性

E 选项 **the metabolic rate** 和 **most other fishes** 没有可比性。 ➤ 排除 E

正确选项 A

273

24. One noted economist has made a comparison of the Federal Reserve and an automobile as racing through a tunnel, bouncing first off one wall, then the other; the car may get where it is going, but people may be hurt in the process.

- (A) made a comparison of the Federal Reserve and an automobile as racing through a tunnel, bouncing
(B) made a comparison between the Federal Reserve and an automobile racing through a tunnel, bouncing
(C) compared the Federal Reserve with an automobile as racing through a tunnel and which bounced
(D) compared the Federal Reserve to an automobile racing through a tunnel, bouncing
(E) compared the Federal Reserve with an automobile that races through a tunnel and it bounces

读题

sb. has made a comparison of sth. and sth.; the car may get... but people may be hurt.

介词短语 **as racing through...** 修饰 **an automobile**。

秒杀一步**一步: 习惯用法**

compare to 和 compare with 的区别: compare X1 to X2 把 X1 比成 X2, X1 和 X2 是不同类事物, 即不同类事物寻找相似性, 相似性用 compare to 强调; compare X1 with X2 表示 X1 与 X2 相比较, X1 与 X2 是同一类事物, 即同类事物寻找差异性, 差异性用 compare with 强调。

本题中 Federal Reserve 和 automobile 是不同类事物, 应该使用 compare to 强调相似性。

A 选项 a comparison of X1 and X2 搭配错, 习惯搭配为 a comparison between X1 and X2。

B 选项 a comparison between X1 and X2, 强调 X1 和 X2 的差异性。

C E 选项 compare X1 with X2, 强调 Federal Reserve 和 automobile 的差异性。

一步到位, 排除 A B C E

补遗

1> 平行结构形式要对称

C 选项 and 连接 as 短语和 which 定语从句共同修饰 an automobile, as 短语和 which 定语从句形式不对称。

2> 不能改变原句的合理重心

E 选项 把原句的伴随关系改为并列关系, 把从属成份 bouncing first off one wall, then the other 改为并列主句 it bounces..., 改变原句的合理重心。

正确选项 D

-ing 分词短语的修饰对象

-ing 分词短语在句尾优先作为伴随状语, 可能修饰主句的谓语动词, 逻辑主语等于主句主语, 也可能就近修饰动词, 逻辑主语等于所修饰的动词的逻辑主语。

本题 bouncing 作为 racing through... 的伴随动作状语, 逻辑主语等于 racing through 的主语 an automobile。

25. The most favorable locations for the growth of glaciers, rather than being the cold, dry polar regions, would be instead the cool, moist middle latitudes, where there is abundant precipitation and where it is cold enough to allow some snow to accumulate year by year.

- (A) glaciers, rather than being the cold, dry polar regions, would be instead the cool, moist middle latitudes.
- (B) glaciers are not the cold, dry polar regions but the cool, moist middle latitudes.
- (C) glaciers are the cool, moist middle latitudes rather than the cold, dry polar regions,
- (D) glaciers, instead of being the cold, dry polar regions, would be the cool, moist middle latitudes,
- (E) glaciers are, instead of the cold, dry polar regions, rather the cool, moist middle latitudes,

读题

The location for sth., rather than... regions, would be... latitudes, where... and where...

两个 where 引导的定语从句并列, 共同修饰 middle latitudes。

必杀二步**一步:习惯用法**

rather than 和 instead of 都表示“而不是...”,具体用法有:

- 1> rather than 在句首时,用 rather than + 名词/-ing 形式/动词原形; rather than 在句中或句尾时,用 rather than + 名词/动词原形。
- 2> instead of + 名词,不能与 rather 重复使用; rather than 和 instead /instead of 不能重复使用。
- 3> GMAT 考试中,如果 instead of 和 rather than 同时出现,正确选项常常使用 rather than,而较少使用 instead of,因为书面语中倾向于使用 rather than。

A 选项 rather than + being + n. (the cold, dry polar regions), being 多余,必须省略; rather than 和 instead 同时使用,错。

D 选项 instead of + being + n. (the cold, dry polar regions), being 多余,必须省略。

E 选项 instead of 与 rather 重复使用,错。 ➤ 排除 A D E

二步:定语从句修饰对象的合理性

原句中,两个并列的定语从句就近修饰 the cool, moist middle latitudes。

C 选项 where 定语从句就近修饰 the cold, dry polar regions,与原句意思完全相反,也不符合科学事实,定语从句修饰对象不合理。 ➤ 排除 C

正确选项 B

名词的否定形式: not A, but B; not A, but rather B; A, rather than B; A, not B。

26. State officials report that soaring rates of liability insurance have risen to force cutbacks in the operations of everything from local governments and school districts to day-care centers and recreational facilities.

- (A) rates of liability insurance have risen to force
- (B) rates of liability insurance are a force for
- (C) rates for liability insurance are forcing
- (D) rises in liability insurance rates are forcing
- (E) liability insurance rates have risen to force

必杀二步**一步:避免意思重复**

A E D 选项 A E 选项中的 soaring 和 have risen, D 选项中的 soaring 和 rises,意思重复。

➤ 排除 A D E

二步:不能改变原句的合理意思

B 选项 把原句的动词 force(强迫)改为名词 a force(力量),改变原句意思。 ➤ 排除 B

补选**时态判断**

A E 选项 主句使用一般现在时(report),宾语从句使用现在完成时(have risen),没有时间标志或上下文逻辑关系表明“已上升”的概念。

正确选项 C

are forcing 与前文的 soaring rates of... 逻辑意思一致。

27. It has been estimated that the annual cost to the United States of illiteracy in lost industrial output and tax revenues is at least \$ 20 billion a year.

- (A) the annual cost to the United States of illiteracy in lost industrial output and tax revenues is at least \$ 20 billion a year
- (B) the annual cost of illiteracy to the United States is at least \$ 20 billion a year because of lost industrial output and tax revenues
- (C) illiteracy costs the United States at least \$ 20 billion a year in lost industrial output and tax revenues
- (D) \$ 20 billion a year in lost industrial output and tax revenues is the annual cost to the United States of illiteracy
- (E) lost industrial output and tax revenues cost the United States at least \$ 20 billion a year because of illiteracy

读题

It has been estimated that the annual cost to sb. of sth. is ... a year.

必需二步

一步: 避免意思重复

A B D 选项 annual 和 a year 意思重复。 ➤ 排除 A B D

二步: 逻辑意思的合理性

E 选项 lost industrial output and tax revenues (而不是 illiteracy) 使美国损失 \$ 20 billion, 逻辑意思不合理。合理的意思是: 文盲使美国每年在工业产出和税收上损失了 \$ 20 billion。 ➤ 排除 E

正确选项 C

习惯表达: sth. cost sb. some money

28. Joachim Raff and Giacomo Meyerbeer are examples of the kind of composer who receives popular acclaim while living, often goes into decline after death, and never regains popularity again.

- (A) often goes into decline after death, and never regains popularity again
- (B) whose reputation declines after death and never regains its status again
- (C) but whose reputation declines after death and never regains its former status
- (D) who declines in reputation after death and who never regained popularity again
- (E) then has declined in reputation after death and never regained popularity

读题

sb. are examples of the kind of composer who receives, goes into decline, and never regains.

必需二步

一步: 避免意思重复

A B D 选项 regain 和 again 意思重复。 ➤ 排除 A B D

第二步:时态一致

D E 选项 定语从句中的三个动词 receive, decline 和 regain 时态不一致,并且没有合理的理由。

D 选项 regained popularity 不可能发生在 receives 以前。

E 选项 has declined in reputation 不可能发生在 receives 以前, regained popularity 也不可能发生在 has declined in reputation 以前。 ➤ 排除 D E

补选

1> 定语从句修饰对象的合理性

A 选项 who goes into decline after death 修饰 composer, 逻辑意思不合理, 应该是 reputation goes into decline 而不是 people go into decline。

2> 定语从句的并列

并列的定语从句必须功能相同, 如 where 引导的定语从句与 who 引导的定语从句不能并列, 因为 where 充当定语从句中的状语, who 充当定语从句中的主语, 两者功能不相同。

B 选项 who 定语从句和 whose 定语从句功能相同, 可以并列, 但两者之间缺少连接词。

正确选项 C

29. It seems likely that a number of astronomical phenomena, such as the formation of planetary nebulas, may be caused by the interaction where two stars orbit each other at close range.

277

(A) may be caused by the interaction where two stars orbit each other

(B) may be caused by the interaction between two stars that each orbit the other

(C) are because of the interaction between two stars that orbit each other

(D) are caused by the interaction of two stars where each is orbiting the other

(E) are caused by the interaction of two stars orbiting each other

必杀三步

一步:避免意思重复

A B 选项 may be 表示可能性, 与未划线部分的 it seems likely that 意思重复。

➤ 排除 A B

第二步:习惯用法

because of sth. 以及 as a result of sth. 只能作状语, 不能作定语或表语。

C 选项 because of sth. 充当表语, 错。 ➤ 排除 C

第三步:修饰关系的合理性

D 选项 定语从句就近修饰 two stars, 关系副词 where 表示地点, each is orbiting the other in two stars 逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 D

正确选项 E

-ing 分词短语 orbiting each other 修饰 two stars 表示动作的客观性、重复性和多次性, 符合科学事实。

30. Because the financial review covered only the last few fiscal years, and there-

fore the investigators were unable to determine the extent to possible earlier overpayments.

- (A) and therefore the investigators were unable to determine the extent to possible
- (B) so therefore the investigators were not capable of determining the possible extent of
- (C) therefore the investigators were unable to determine the possible extent of
- (D) the investigators were not capable of determining the possible extent of
- (E) the investigators were unable to determine the extent of possible

必杀二步

一步:避免用词重复

A B C 选项 because 从句表示原因,主句中的 therefore 多余,必须省略。

排除 A B C

二步:修饰语的位置

修饰语位置的变动导致修饰对象的改变。

原句中, the extent to possible overpayments, possible 修饰 overpayments。

D 选项 the possible extent of overpayments, possible 修饰 extent, 修饰对象的改变必然导致原句意思的改变。排除 D

正确选项 E

278 31. Although Napoleon's army entered Russia with far more supplies than they had in their previous campaigns, it had provisions for only twenty-four days.

- (A) they had in their previous campaigns
- (B) their previous campaigns had had
- (C) they had for any previous campaign
- (D) in their previous campaigns
- (E) for any previous campaign

必杀一步

一步:代词指代

A B C D 选项 复数代词 they/ their 无法指代单数名词 Napoleon's army。

一步到位,排除 A B C D

正确选项 E

for any previous campaign 前省略了重复的名词 supplies。

32. In 1980 the United States exported twice as much of its national output of goods as they had in 1970.

- (A) twice as much of its national output of goods as they had
- (B) double the amount of their national output of goods as they did
- (C) twice as much of its national output of goods as it did
- (D) double the amount of its national output of goods as it has
- (E) twice as much of their national output of goods as they had

必杀二步**一步:代词指代**

逻辑上划线部分的 they 应该指代 the United States, 但语法上 the United States 应该用单数代词指代。 ➤ 排除 A B E 选项

二步:习惯用法

D 选项 double 和 as 不能搭配。正确用法:sth. double sth.; sth. is doubled; sth. double。

➤ 排除 D

正确选项 C

twice 的习惯用法: twice as many/much ... as; twice + the + 名词; twice + what 从句。

33. At Shiprock, New Mexico, a perennially powerful girls' high school basketball team has become a path to college for some and a source of pride for a community where the household incomes of 49 percent of them are below the poverty level.

- (A) where the household incomes of 49 percent of them are
- (B) where they have 49 percent of the household incomes
- (C) where 49 percent of the household incomes are
- (D) which has 49 percent of the household incomes
- (E) in which 49 percent of them have household incomes

必杀二步**一步:代词指代**

A B E 选项 复数代词 they/them 没有指代对象。 ➤ 排除 A B E

二步:逻辑意思的合理性

D 选项 关系代词 which 指代 a community, 定语从句的意思为: community possesses 49% of all the household incomes below the poverty line, 逻辑意思不合理。

➤ 排除 D

正确选项 C

34. To ensure consistently high quality in its merchandise, the chain of retail stores became involved in every aspect of their suppliers' operations, dictating not only the number of stitches and the width of the hem in every garment as well as the profit margins of those suppliers.

- (A) their suppliers' operations, dictating not only the number of stitches and the width of the hem in every garment as well as
- (B) its suppliers' operations, dictating not only the number of stitches and the width of the hem in every garment as well as
- (C) their suppliers' operations, dictating not only the number of stitches and the width of the hem in every garment but also
- (D) its suppliers' operations, dictating not only the number of stitches and the width of the hem in every garment but also

(E) their suppliers' operations, dictating the number of stitches, the width of the hem in every garment, and

读题

不定式短语, + 主句, + -ing 分词短语。

不定式短语在句首作状语表目的, -ing 分词短语在句尾作伴随动作状语。

排除第二步

一步:代词指代

主句主语 the chain of retail stores 的核心词应该是 the chain, 表示单数概念。

A C E 选项 划线部分代词 their 应优先指代主句主语 the chain of retail stores, 但 the chain of retail stores 按单数概念处理, 所以代词指代错误。 ➤ 排除 A C E

二步:习惯用法

A B 选项 not only...as well as... 永远错, 正确的搭配为: not only...but also...。

➤ 排除 A B

正确选项 D

35. The golden crab of the Gulf of Mexico has not been fished commercially in great numbers, primarily on account of living at great depths - 2,500 to 3,000 feet down.

- (A) on account of living (B) on account of their living
- (C) because it lives (D) because of living
- (E) being they live

排除第二步

一步:代词指代

主语核心词:定冠词 the + 单数名词 golden crab, 表示一类概念, 按单数名词处理。

B E 选项 复数代词 their/they 无法指代单数名词短语, 代词没有指代对象。

➤ 排除 B E

二步:标准书面语原则

标准书面语中 because of 和 on account of 后面只能加名词或名词短语。

A 选项 on account of doing, 错。

B 选项 on account of one's doing, 错。

D 选项 because of doing, 错。 ➤ 排除 A B D

正确选项 C

36. Found throughout Central and South America, sloths hang from trees by long rubbery limbs and sleep fifteen hours a day, moving infrequently enough that two species of algae grow on its coat and between its toes.

(A) sloths hang from trees by long rubbery limbs and sleep fifteen hours a day, moving infrequently enough

(B) sloths hang from trees by long rubbery limbs, they sleep fifteen hours a day, and

with such infrequent movements

- (C) sloths use their long rubbery limbs to hang from trees, sleep fifteen hours a day, and move so infrequently
- (D) the sloth hangs from trees by its long rubbery limbs, sleeping fifteen hours a day and moving so infrequently
- (E) the sloth hangs from trees by its long rubbery limbs, sleeps fifteen hours a day, and it moves infrequently enough

必需二步

一步:代词指代

A B C 三个选项 未划线部分的单数代词 its 意味着主语使用名词复数 sloths 不合理,应改为单数名词 sloth。 ➤ 排除 A B C

二步:动作的并列

E 选项 hangs, sleeps 和 moves 三个动词并列, moves 前的主语 it 破坏平行结构,应该省略。 ➤ 排除 E

补选

习惯用法

A E 选项 enough that 永远错。

正确选项 D

sleeping 和 moving 并列,共同作 hangs 的伴随动作。

281

37. The bank acknowledged that they are and will continue to experience difficulties as it attempts to deal with the precipitous fall of the dollar against the yen and the dislocations reflected in the stock market decline.

- (A) they are and will continue to experience difficulties as it attempts
- (B) they are and will continue to experience difficulties as they attempt
- (C) it is and will continue to experience difficulties as it attempts
- (D) it is experiencing and will continue to experience difficulties as they make an attempt
- (E) its difficulties are likely to continue as it attempts

读题

The bank acknowledged that they are and will... as it attempts to deal with the fall of... and the dislocations...

必需二步

一步:代词指代

A B D 选项 复数代词 they 无法指代单数名词 the bank。 ➤ 排除 A B D

二步:简洁性原则

C 选项 动词 continue 已经包含了从过去到现在并将延续到将来的概念, it is and will continue to... 表达累赘, 不简洁; 此外, it is and will + 实义动词, it is 后省略的部分无法还原。A B 选项的 they are and will continue to 也有类似的错误。 ➤ 排除 C

正确选项 E

are likely to do 为一般现在时,与主句时态不一致,强调客观存在的可能性。

38. In Holland, a larger percentage of the gross national product is spent on defense of their coasts from rising seas than is spent on military defense in the United States.

- (A) In Holland, a larger percentage of the gross national product is spent on defense of their coasts from rising seas than is spent on military defense in the United States.
- (B) In Holland they spend a larger percentage of their gross national product on defending their coasts from rising seas than the United States does on military defense.
- (C) A larger percentage of Holland's gross national product is spent on defending their coasts from rising seas than the United States spends on military defense.
- (D) Holland spends a larger percentage of its gross national product defending its coasts from rising seas than the military defense spending of the United States.
- (E) Holland spends a larger percentage of its gross national product on defending its coasts from rising seas than the United States does on military defense.

必杀二步

一步:代词指代

A B C 选项 复数代词 they/ their 不能指代单数名词 Holland。 ~~排除 A B C~~

二步:比较对象形式要对称

C 选项 比较从句使用主动语态(United States spends sth.),主句使用被动语态(sth. be spent),比较对象语态不一致。

D 选项 主谓结构和名词短语 the military defense 进行比较,形式上不对称。

~~排除 C D~~

正确选项 E

Holland spends ... on doing sth. than United States does on sth.,比较对象形式对称;does 替换重复的动词 spend,does 后省略了相同的名词短语 a percentage of its gross national product.

39. Ms. Chambers is among the forecasters who predict that the rate of addition to arable lands will drop while those of loss rise.

- (A) those of loss rise (B) it rises for loss
- (C) those of losses rise (D) the rate of loss rises
- (E) there are rises for the rate of loss

读题

who 引导定语从句修饰 forecasters; the rate of addition to arable lands will drop while those of loss rise 都是 predict 宾语从句的内容。

必杀二步

一步:代词指代

A C 选项 those 无法指代单数名词 the rate。

B 选项 it 指代 the rate of addition to arable lands, the rate of addition to arable lands rises for loss. 逻辑意思不合理, 代词指代对象不合理。 ➤ 排除 A B C

第二步: 意思对比的结构

意思对比的结构形式要尽可能对称: while 引导状语从句, 表示转折含义, 在 predict 的宾语从句中, 主句和从句意思对比; 两个句子意思上对比, 形式上应尽可能保持对称。

E 选项 the rate will drop 与 there are rises 形式上不对称。 ➤ 排除 E

正确选项 D

the rate of addition... will drop while the rate of loss rises, 主从句意思对比, 形式对称。

40. According to Interstudy, a nonprofit organization that studies health maintenance organizations (HMO's), they estimate that, in comparison to last year, when only 36 percent of the nation's 607 HMO's was profitable, this year 73 percent will be.

(A) they estimate that, in comparison to last year, when only 36 percent of the nation's 607 HMO's was profitable, this year 73 percent will be

(B) compared to only 36 percent of the nation's 607 HMO's being profitable last year, they estimate 73 percent would be this year

(C) only 36 percent of the nation's 607 HMO's were profitable last year; it estimates that this year 73 percent will be

(D) it estimates 73 percent of the nation's 607 HMO's would be profitable this year; last year that was only 36 percent

(E) only 36 percent of the nation's 607 HMO's last year were profitable, whereas they estimate it this year to be 73 percent

读题

According to Interstudy, 同位语, they estimate that, 介词短语, when 状语从句, this year 73 percent will be.

解题二步

一步: 代词指代

A B E 选项 复数代词 they 无法指代单数名词 Interstudy, 代词没有指代对象。

➤ 排除 A B E

第二步: 宾语从句的连词 that 不能省略

D 选项 estimates 后面缺少 that 引导宾语从句。 ➤ 排除 D

补题

1 > 比较对象之间要有可比性

A 选项 in comparison to last year, last year 与宾语从句中的主语 73 percent 没有可比性。

2 > 时态判断

D 选项 过去将来时 would be 与时间标志 this year 不一致。

3 > 指示代词 this/ that/ these/ those 不能单独作主语

D 选项 that was only 36 percent, that 单独作主语, 永远错。

正确选项 C

This year 73 percent will be 后省略了重复的形容词 profitable。

41. More than five thousand years ago, Chinese scholars accurately described the flow of blood as a continuous circle controlled by the heart, but it went unnoticed in the West.

- (A) but it went (B) but it was
(C) although it was (D) but the discovery went
(E) although the discovery was

必杀二步

一步: 代词指代

A B C 选项 代词 it 向前指代单数名词, 将所有的单数名词 the flow of blood / a circle / the heart 代入, 逻辑意思都不合理, 所以代词 it 指代不清。 ➤ 排除 A B C

二步: 不能改变原句的合理意思

E 选项 was 强调状态, 而原句使用 went 强调动作, 所以原句意思被改变。 ➤ 排除 E

正确选项 D

用一个概括性名词 the discovery 来避免代词的指代对象不清。

42. According to surveys by the National Institute on Drug Abuse, about 20 percent of young adults used cocaine in 1979, doubling those reported in the 1977 survey.

- (A) doubling those reported in the 1977 survey
(B) to double the number the 1977 survey reported
(C) twice those the 1977 survey reported
(D) twice as much as those reported in the 1977 survey
(E) twice the number reported in the 1977 survey

读题

According to..., + 主句, + -ing 分词短语。

-ing 分词短语在句尾作伴随结果状语。

必杀二步

一步: 代词指代

A C D 项 代词 those 在语法上指代主句中的复数名词 young adults, 但 double young adults 逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 A C D

二步: 不能改变原句的合理意思

B 选项 强加原句没有的目的关系 to double, 改变原句合理意思。 ➤ 排除 B

正确选项 E

twice 的习惯用法之一: twice + 定冠词(the) + 名词。

the number 概括主句中的 20 percent; 代词指代不清的修改方法之一: 用一个概括性名词(the number)替代代词指代的对象(20 percent)。

43. Joplin's faith in his opera "Tremonisha" was unshakable; in 1911 he published the score at his own expense and decided on staging it himself.

- (A) on staging it himself
- (B) that he himself would do the staging
- (C) to do the staging of the work by himself
- (D) that he himself would stage it
- (E) to stage the work himself

读题

句子 1; 句子 2

必需二步

一步: 代词指代

A D 选项 代词 it 语法上应该优先指代句子 2 中的单数名词 the score (乐谱), 但 stage the score (主演乐谱) 意思不合理, 所以从逻辑关系上看, it 应该指代句子 1 中的 his opera "Tremonisha", 代词指代在语法上和逻辑上产生矛盾。 ➤ 排除 A D

二步: 永远错误的形式

B C 选项 do the staging (do + 动作性名词) 永远错, 直接用动词 stage 更简洁。

➤ 排除 B C

补选

不定式与 that 从句的区别

原句 decide to do / decide on 表示决定做..., 强调动作。

B D 选项 decide + that 从句表示认定、认为, 强调整体, 改变原句的强调重心。

➤ 排除 B D

正确选项 E

代词指代不清时的修改方法

1 > 重复代词指代的对象。

2 > 用 such + n. 或者指示代词 this/that/these/those + n. 代替代词。

3 > 用一个名词概括代词指代的对象。

E 选项 用 the work 代替代词指代的对象 his opera "Tremonisha", 避免了代词指代在语法和逻辑上产生矛盾。

44. By offering lower prices and a menu of personal communications options, such as caller identification and voice mail, the new telecommunications company has not only captured customers from other phone companies but also forced them to offer competitive prices.

- (A) has not only captured customers from other phone companies but also forced them
- (B) has not only captured customers from other phone companies, but it also forced them
- (C) has not only captured customers from other phone companies but also forced these

companies

(D) not only has captured customers from other phone companies but also these companies have been forced

(E) not only captured customers from other phone companies, but it also has forced them

必杀二步

一步:代词指代对象不能引起争议

A B E 选项 代词 them 可以向前指代 other phone companies 也可以指代 customers, 当 the 指代 customers 时, 逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 A B E

二步:平行结构

平行结构 not only...but also... 前后形式必须对称。

D 选项 not only + 动词, but also + 句子, 前后形式不对称。 ➤ 排除 D

正确选项 C

代词指代不清的修改方法之一:用指示代词 + 名词 these companies 去代替代词指代的对象 other phone companies。

45. While depressed property values can hurt some large investors, they are potentially devastating for home-owners, whose equity—in many cases representing a life's savings—can plunge or even disappear.

(A) they are potentially devastating for homeowners, whose

(B) they can potentially devastate homeowners in that their

(C) for homeowners they are potentially devastating, because their

(D) for homeowners, it is potentially devastating in that their

(E) it can potentially devastate homeowners, whose

必杀一步

一步:代词指代

1 > 代词指代一致性原则:相同的两个代词,包括数上相同的代词,应该指代同一对象。

B C 选项 第一个代词 they 指代 depressed property values, 第二个代词 their 语法上必须指代第一个代词的指代对象 depressed property values, 但逻辑上 their 指代 home-owners, 相同代词指代不一致。 ➤ 排除 B C

2 > 代词必须有明确的指代对象

D E 选项 整个句子中没有单数名词, 所以单数代词 it 没有指代对象。 ➤ 排除 D E

正确选项 A

46. Formulas for cash flow and the ratio of debt to equity do not apply to new small businesses in the same way as they do to established big businesses, because they are growing and are seldom in equilibrium.

(A) Formulas for cash flow and the ratio of debt to equity do not apply to new small businesses in the same way as they do to established big businesses, because they are growing and are seldom in equilibrium.

- (B) Because they are growing and are seldom in equilibrium, formulas for cash flow and the ratio of debt to equity do not apply to new small businesses in the same way as they do to established big businesses.
- (C) Because they are growing and are seldom in equilibrium, new small businesses are not subject to the same applicability of formulas for cash flow and the ratio of debt to equity as established big businesses.
- (D) Because new small businesses are growing and are seldom in equilibrium, formulas for cash flow and the ratio of debt to equity do not apply to them in the same way as to established big businesses.
- (E) New small businesses are not subject to the applicability of formulas for cash flow and the ratio of debt to equity in the same way as established big businesses, because they are growing and are seldom in equilibrium.

必杀二步

一步:代词指代的一致性

- A 选项 第一个代词 they 优先指代主句主语 formulas, 逻辑意思合理, 第二个代词 they 优先指代第一个 they 指代的对象 formulas, formulas are growing and are seldom in equilibrium, 逻辑意思不合理。
- B 选项 两个代词 they 指代对象必须保持一致, because 从句中 they 指代 formulas, 逻辑意思不合理。✖ 排除 A B

二步:简洁性原则

- C E 选项 be subject to the applicability of 表达不简洁, 故意复杂化, 应改为动词短语 apply to。✖ 排除 C E

正确选项 D

47. In a 5-to-4 decision, the Supreme Court ruled that two upstate New York counties owed restitution to three tribes of Oneida Indians for the unlawful seizure of their ancestral lands in the eighteenth century.

- (A) that two upstate New York counties owed restitution to three tribes of Oneida Indians for the unlawful seizure of
- (B) that two upstate New York counties owed restitution to three tribes of Oneida Indians because of their unlawful seizure of
- (C) two upstate New York counties to owe restitution to three tribes of Oneida Indians for their unlawful seizure of
- (D) on two upstate New York counties that owed restitution to three tribes of Oneida Indians because they unlawfully seized
- (E) on the restitution that two upstate New York counties owed to three tribes of Oneida Indians for the unlawful seizure of

必杀二步

一步:代词指代的一致性

相同的两个代词, 包括数上相同的代词, 应该指代同一对象。

B C D 选项 划线部分的代词 their/they 应该指代 two upstate New York counties, 但未划线部分的代词 their 指代 three tribes of Oneida Indians, 相同代词指代对象不一致。

➡ 排除 B C D

第二步:不能改变原句的合理重心

原句 rule + that 从句, 强调 that 从句整体内容。

D E 选项 rule on + 名词短语(对...做出裁决), 用名词短语代替 that 从句, 改变原句的强调重心。 ➡ 排除 D E

正确选项 A

48. According to the Better Business Bureau, if you fail to advertise the highest price in a range of prices for a service or product as prominently as that of the lowest, it violates the New York Consumer Protection Law.

- (A) if you fail to advertise the highest price in a range of prices for a service or product as prominently as that of the lowest, it
- (B) if one fails to advertise the highest price in a range of prices for a service or product as prominently as the lowest price, it
- (C) failure to advertise the highest price in a range of prices for a service or product as prominently as the lowest
- (D) failure to advertise as prominently the highest price in a range of prices for a service or product as the lowest
- (E) failing to advertise as prominently the highest price in a range of prices for a service or products as that of the lowest

读题

According to..., if you fail to do..., it violates...

此条第二步

一步:代词指代

A B 选项 代词 it 只能指代单数名词或单数名词短语, 但可能的指代对象代入后逻辑上都不能接受。口语中可以理解为 it 指代前面整个条件从句的内容。但标准书面语中, 所有的代词(如 it, this, that)都不能指整个句子。 ➡ 排除 A B

第二步:语序的判断

D E 选项 比较结构 as prominently as 分离, 导致语序(v. + adv. + n.)错误, 正确语序为: v. + n. + adv. 或 adv. + v. + n.。 ➡ 排除 D E

补遗

-ing 形式和动作性名词

E 选项 动词 fail 有名词形式 failure, 就不使用 failing 代替名词。

正确选项 C

49. By a vote of 9 to 0, the Supreme Court awarded the Central Intelligence Agency broad discretionary powers enabling it to withhold from the public the identities of

its sources of intelligence information.

- (A) enabling it to withhold from the public
- (B) for it to withhold from the public
- (C) for withholding disclosure to the public of
- (D) that enable them to withhold from public disclosure
- (E) that they can withhold public disclosure of

读题

by sth., sb. awarded the CIA powers enabling...

必杀二步

一步:实义词不能随意添加、省略或者改变

B C 选项 省略了实义动词 enable, 导致原句合理意思的改变, 错。 ➤ 排除 B C

二步:代词指代

D E 选项 复数代词 them/they 无法指代单数名词 the Central Intelligence Agency。

➤ 排除 D E

正确选项 A

-ing 分词短语 enabling 作定语修饰 powers, 表示动作的客观性 重复性和多次性。

50. The proposed urban development zones do not represent a new principle; it was employed in "Operation Bootstrap" in Puerto Rico.

- (A) do not represent a new principle; it
- (B) represent not a new principle, but one that
- (C) are not a new principle; the same one
- (D) are not a new principle, but one that
- (E) are not new in principle; it

必杀二步

一步:实义词不能随意省略、添加或者改变

C D E 选项 把原句的实义动词 represent 改为 be 动词, represent 强调动作, be 动词强调状态, 改变原句的合理意思。 ➤ 排除 C D E

二步:代词 it 和 one 的区别

代词 it 指代单数名词、单数名词短语、不可数名词、不可数名词短语; 代词 one 指代单数名词短语的核心词。

A 选项 代词 it 指代单数名词短语 a new principle, a new principle was employed... 新原则在过去被运用过(被运用过的原则不可能是新原则), 逻辑不合理。

B 选项 代词 one 指代名词短语 a new principle 的核心词 principle, the principle was employed... 逻辑合理。 ➤ 排除 A

正确选项 B

51. A report by the American Academy for the Advancement of Science has concluded that much of the currently uncontrolled dioxins to which North Americans are

exposed comes from the incineration of wastes.

- (A) much of the currently uncontrolled dioxins to which North Americans are exposed comes
- (B) much of the currently uncontrolled dioxins that North Americans are exposed to come
- (C) much of the dioxins that are currently uncontrolled and that North Americans are exposed to comes
- (D) many of the dioxins that are currently uncontrolled and North Americans are exposed to come
- (E) many of the currently uncontrolled dioxins to which North Americans are exposed come

此题二步

一步: 准确使用名词的数

dioxins 是 dioxin 的复数形式, 必须用 many of 与其搭配。

A B C 选项 much of dioxins 错。 ➤ 排除 A B C

二步: 定语从句要尽可能简化

D 选项 定语从句 that are currently uncontrolled 不简洁, 可以省略 that are, 用-ed 分词语 the currently uncontrolled 前置修饰 dioxins。 ➤ 排除 D

正确选项 E

52. Because of the enormous research and development expenditures required to survive in the electronics industry, an industry marked by rapid innovation and volatile demand, such firms tend to be very large.

- (A) to survive
- (B) of firms to survive
- (C) for surviving
- (D) for survival
- (E) for firms' survival

读题

Because of X1 and X2, such firms tend to be very large.

-ed 分词 required 修饰名词 X1 and X2; an industry marked by... 作为同位语解释说明 electronics industry。

此题二步

一步: 习惯用法

require sb. to do; require + that 从句(必须使用虚拟语气); require of sb. + that 从句(必须使用虚拟语气); sth. be required of sb.

C D E 选项 sth. be required for... 不符合习惯搭配。 ➤ 排除 C D E

二步: 名词的逻辑对应

复数代词或 such /these/those + 复数名词, 对应已经出现过的复数名词; 单数代词或 the + 单数名词/ such a + 单数名词, 对应已经出现过的单数名词。

A 选项 缺少复数名词 firms 与主句主语 such firms 相对应。 ➤ 排除 A

正确选项 B

定语从句要尽可能简化

required of firms to survive... 修饰名词 the enormous research and development expenditures, required of... 前的 that are 被省略。

53. There is no consensus on what role, if any, is played by acid rain in slowing the growth or damaging forests in the eastern United States.

- (A) slowing the growth or damaging
- (B) the damage or the slowing of the growth of
- (C) the damage to or the slowness of the growth of
- (D) damaged or slowed growth of
- (E) damaging or slowing the growth of

必杀二步

一步: -ing 形式和名词的区别

what role is played by acid rain in..., 介词 in 后面可以加上 -ing 形式或者名词, 区别在于: -ing 形式强调动作, 名词强调结果、状态。

原句介词 in 后面加上 doing sth., 强调动作。

B C D 选项 in 后面均加上名词短语, 强调结果、状态, 改变原句的意思重心。

⇒ 排除 B C D

二步: 平行结构概念要对等

A 选项 slowing 和 damaging 形式对称, 但 slowing 的宾语 the growth 是抽象名词, damaging 的宾语 forests 是可数的名称名词, 两者概念不对等。 ⇒ 排除 A

正确选项 E

强调结构

未划线部分中, if any 为强调结构, 作插入成份, 意思是: 如果说有的话; 放在名词短语后面, 强调名词短语。

54. In the traditional Japanese household, most clothing could be packed flatly, and so it was not necessary to have elaborate closet facilities.

- (A) flatly, and so it was not necessary to have elaborate closet facilities
- (B) flat, and so elaborate closet facilities were unnecessary
- (C) flatly, and so there was no necessity for elaborate closet facilities
- (D) flat, there being no necessity for elaborate closet facilities
- (E) flatly, as no elaborate closet facilities were necessary

必杀二步

一步: 副词与动词的修饰关系

A C E 选项 clothing could be packed flatly 中 flatly 是副词, 修饰动词 packed, 逻辑意思“平躺着打包”不合理。 ⇒ 排除 A C E

二步: 永远错误的形式

A 选项 be necessary to have sth. 永远错, 可以用 sth. is necessary 表达; 但是 it is neces-

sary to do sth. 正确。

C 选项 there was no necessity for sth. 故意复杂化, 属笨拙的表达方式。

D 选项 there being no necessity for sth. 永远错, 也属笨拙的表达方式。排除 A C D

正确选项 B

clothing could be packed flat 中 flat 是形容词, 充当主语的补语, 当句子比较短时, 放在句尾对主语进行解释: 衣服打完包后很平整。

55. Contrary to popular belief, victors in the ancient Greek Olympic Games received cash prizes in addition to their laurel wreaths.

- (A) Contrary to (B) In contrast with
(C) Opposite of (D) Unlike
(E) In spite of

必杀二步

一步: 逻辑主语

形容词短语在句首, 逻辑主语等于主句的主语, 但是形容词短语 contrary to 在句首, 不需要逻辑主语。因为 contrary to 必须加上抽象名词, 如 belief, idea, judgment 等, 修饰整个主句, 不存在逻辑主语问题。

B 选项 in contrast with 或者 in contrast to 必须加上具体名词, 比较对象必须对等, victors 和 popular belief 没有可比性。

C 选项 opposite of 搭配错误, 习惯搭配为 opposite to, 并且 victors 和 popular belief 比较对象不对等。

D 选项 unlike X1, X2 did...: X1 popular belief 与 X2 victors 不具有可比性。

排除 B C D

二步: 不能改变原句的合理意思

E 选项 随意添加原句没有也不需要的转折关系 in spite of, 必然改变原句的合理意思。

排除 E

正确选项 A

56. Executives and federal officials say that the use of crack and cocaine is growing rapidly among workers, significantly compounding the effects of drug and alcohol abuse, which already are a cost to business of more than \$ 100 billion a year.

- (A) significantly compounding the effects of drug and alcohol abuse, which already are a cost to business of
(B) significantly compounding the effects of drug and alcohol abuse, which already cost business
(C) significantly compounding the effects of drug and alcohol abuse, already with business costs of
(D) significant in compounding the effects of drug and alcohol abuse, and already costing business
(E) significant in compounding the effects of drug and alcohol abuse, and already costs

business

读题

officials say that the use of sth. is growing, significantly compounding...

compounding...分词短语在句尾作伴随状语。

必杀二步

一步:习惯用法

sth. cost sb. some money

A 选项 be a cost to business of...永远错。

C 选项 with business costs of...永远错。排除 A C

二步:形容词和副词的区别

原句中,副词 significantly 表示程度上很大,修饰-ing 分词 compounding, significantly compounding 作谓语动词 is growing 的伴随结果状语。

D E 选项 形容词 significant 表示重要的,significant in compounding 形容词短语在句尾不能作状语修饰谓语动词 is growing,只能作定语就近修饰名词。排除 D E

正确选项 B

修饰对象的单一性

定语从句通过主谓一致保证修饰对象的单一性,复数谓语动词 cost 决定了定语从句跳跃修饰复数名词 effects。

57. In 1933 the rubber, clothing, and shipbuilding industries put into effect a six-hour workday, believing it a seeming permanent accommodation rather than a temporary expedient for what many observers thought was an economy made overproductive by advances in technology.

- (A) believing it a seeming permanent accommodation rather than a temporary expedient for what many observers thought was
- (B) believing it a seeming permanent accommodation instead of a temporary expedient for what many observers thought was
- (C) believing that it was not a temporary expedient but a seeming permanent accommodation to what many observers thought of as a
- (D) not as a temporary expedient but as a seemingly permanent accommodation to what many observers thought was
- (E) not as a temporary expedient but believing it a seemingly permanent accommodation for what many observers thought

读题

Industries put into effect a six-hour workday, believing it an accommodation rather than a temporary expedient for sth..

必杀二步

一步:习惯用法

believe 后面不能跟双宾语: believe sth. sth. 或者 believe sth. + that 从句,错;正确搭

配: believe sth.; believe sth. to be; believe + that 从句。

A B E 选项 believe it...accommodation..., 搭配错。 ➤ 排除 A B E

第二步: 形容词和副词的区别

A B C 选项 形容词 seeming 修饰名词 accommodation, 修饰关系不合理, 应该改为副词 seemingly 修饰形容词 permanent。 ➤ 排除 A B C

正确选项 D

1> 习惯用法

Industries put into effect a six-hour workday, not as...but as...

名词的否定形式: not A, but B; not A, but rather B; A, rather than B; A, not B accommodation to 表示“适应于...”。

2> what 从句作同位结构

what many observers thought was 是同位结构, 解释说明后面的名词 an economy。

58. Eating saltwater fish may significantly reduce the risk of heart attacks and also aid for sufferers of rheumatoid arthritis and asthma, according to three research studies published in the *New England Journal of Medicine*.

- (A) significantly reduce the risk of heart attacks and also aid for
- (B) be significant in reducing the risk of heart attacks and aid for
- (C) significantly reduce the risk of heart attacks and aid
- (D) cause a significant reduction in the risk of heart attacks and aid to
- (E) significantly reduce the risk of heart attacks as well as aiding

读题

eating sth. may reduce the risk of ...and also aid for...

必杀二步

一步: 词性不能混淆

A B D 选项 aid for/aid to, aid 可以理解为名词, and 连接名词 risk 和 aid, 共同作 reduce 的宾语, reduce aid 逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 A B D

第二步: 平行结构形式要对称

E 选项 as well as 前后 reduce 与 aiding 形式不对称, 不能构成平行结构。 ➤ 排除 E

补选

形容词和副词的区别

原句中, 副词 significantly 修饰 reduce, 表示大大减少。

B D 选项 把 significantly 改为形容词 significant 表示在某方面重要, 改变原句的合理意思。

正确选项 C

aid 后面省略介词 for/to 直接加宾语, 避免产生词性的混淆; reduce 和 aid 形式对称。

59. Camus broke with Sartre in a bitter dispute over the nature of Stalinism.

- (A) in a bitter dispute over
- (B) over bitterly disputing
- (C) after there was a bitter dispute over
- (D) after having bitterly disputed about

(E) over a bitter dispute about

必杀一步

一步:介词的区别

五个选项中 in 表示在…中, over 表示关于什么, after(介词或连词)表示时间概念。

原句“Camus 和 Sartre 在一次关于斯大林主义本质的激烈争论中关系破裂”, 意思合理, over/after 不能替换 in。 ➤ 排除 B C D E

正确选项 A

60. Along with the drop in producer prices announced yesterday, the strong retail sales figures released today seem like it is indicative that the economy, although growing slowly, is not nearing a recession.

- (A) like it is indicative that (B) as if to indicate
(C) to indicate that (D) indicative of
(E) like an indication of

必杀二步

一步:介词后不能加句子

A 选项 介词 like 后面加上完整主谓结构 it is indicative, 错。

D E 选项 介词 of 后面加上句子 the economy is not nearing recession, 错。

➤ 排除 A D E

二步:宾语从句的连词 that 不能省略

B 选项 indicate 后面缺少连词 that, 并且 as if 引导非真实条件从句, 后面不能加不定式。

➤ 排除 B

补选

简洁性原则

能用动词直接表达的意思, 不能使用由动词衍生出的形容词或名词表达。

A 选项 it is indicative that 表达不简洁, 可以直接用动词 indicate that 表达。

正确选项 C

seem to do...: seem 后跟不定式作宾语。

61. In virtually all types of tissue in every animal species, dioxin induces the production of enzymes that are the organism's trying to metabolize, or render harmless, the chemical that is irritating it.

- (A) trying to metabolize, or render harmless, the chemical that is irritating it
(B) trying that it metabolize, or render harmless, the chemical irritant
(C) attempt to try to metabolize, or render harmless, such a chemical irritant
(D) attempt to try and metabolize, or render harmless, the chemical irritating it
(E) attempt to metabolize, or render harmless, the chemical irritant

必杀二步

一步:用词倾向性

当动词有名词形式时,就不能使用-ing 形式代替名词形式。例如,动词 try 有名词形式 attempt,就不用 trying 代替 attempt。因为动作性名词强调结果、状态,-ing 形式可以充当名词,但强调动作。

当一个动词没有名词形式时,通常用 the + -ing 形式充当其名词形式。例如,动词 staff 没有名词形式,就用 the staffing 充当其名词形式。注意 the staffing(动作性名词)和 staffing (-ing 形式)的区别。 ➤ 排除 A B

第二步:避免意思重复

C D 选项 attempt to try, attempt 和 try 意思重复。 ➤ 排除 C D

补选

标准书面语原则

D 选项 try and do 是口语中的用法;书面语中使用 try to do。

正确选项 E

动词 metabolize 和 render 共享一个宾语 the chemical irritant; the chemical irritant 名词短语比 n. + that 定语从句更简洁。

第十章

一、前缀与后缀

二、逻辑意思与语法

1. 前缀与后缀意思相反
2. 前缀与后缀意思相同
3. 前缀与后缀意思不同
4. 前缀与后缀意思不同
5. 前缀与后缀意思不同
6. 前缀与后缀意思不同
7. 前缀与后缀意思不同
8. 前缀与后缀意思不同
9. 前缀与后缀意思不同
10. 前缀与后缀意思不同

逻辑表达

1. 逻辑表达与语法
2. 逻辑表达与语法
3. 逻辑表达与语法
4. 逻辑表达与语法
5. 逻辑表达与语法
6. 逻辑表达与语法
7. 逻辑表达与语法
8. 逻辑表达与语法
9. 逻辑表达与语法
10. 逻辑表达与语法

练习及其详解

1. The technical term "composition" is a process that leaves editors, instead of printers, assemble the page images that become the metal or plastic plates used in printing.
- (A) is a process that leaves editors, instead of printers, assemble
- (B) refers to a process that allows editors, rather than printers, to assemble

近年来的 GMAT 句子改错题,除了强调语法和用词的准确性外,特别注重逻辑意思表达的有效性,这种有效性体现在下述四大原则之中:

一、简洁有效原则

用词尽可能少,但不能引起争议,逻辑意思必须单一合理。实现简洁的方法有三个:

1. 将从句简化为短语。
2. 将短语简化为词。
3. 使用省略手段(详见第二章第三节的“省略结构”)。

二、逻辑意思合理性原则

1. 前后文逻辑意思不矛盾。
2. 不违反生活事理、科技常识。例如: some buildings that were destroyed and heavily damaged 中 destroyed 和 heavily damaged 不可能同时发生在同一建筑物身上, and 应改为 or。
3. 逻辑搭配必须合理: 要避免主谓搭配不当, 动宾搭配不当, 主表搭配不当, 副词与动词搭配不当, 形容词与名词搭配不当。

三、原句合理意思和重心保持原则

1. 原句合理的意思不能改变。
2. 主次意思不能随意颠倒: 原句的主从关系不能毫无根据地改变, 即作次要成分的不能随意改为句子的主要成分, 而句子的主要成分不能随意下降到从属地位, 作修饰语使用。
3. 定语一般不能改为状语, 状语一般不能改为定语。
4. 整体概念一般不能改为部分含义, 部分含义一般不能改为整体概念。例如: possibility that sb./sth. do... 不能改为 possibility of doing...。

四、意思单一性原则

1. 保证修饰语修饰对象的单一明确。例如: 在 A, -ing, B + verb... 结构中, -ing 修饰对象有争议, 可改为定语从句, 从而只能修饰 A。
2. 在平行结构中, 保证连接词连接对象的单一明确。
3. 单义词优先, 避免使用容易引起歧义的多义词和多义短语。
4. 通过词的位置的改变来保证意思的单一性。如:
 - 1) 在 A and B, who... 结构中, who 不能仅仅指 B, 必须同时指 A 和 B; 如果要保证 who 指 B, 应改为 B, who..., and A。
 - 2) all...do not do... 这一歧义结构应改为 not all...do...。

练习题及其详解

1. The technical term "pagination" is a process that leaves editors, instead of printers, assemble the page images that become the metal or plastic plates used in printing.

(A) is a process that leaves editors, instead of printers, assemble

(B) refers to a process that allows editors, rather than printers, to assemble

- (C) is a process leaving the editors, rather than printers, to assemble
 (D) refers to a process which allows editors, but not to printers, the assembly of
 (E) has reference to the process leaving to editors, instead of the printer, assembling

读题

The term is a process that...

引号中的内容相当于 term 的同位语,不影响主谓一致和逻辑搭配。

必需二步

一步:逻辑搭配的合理性

A C 选项 The term is a process“术语是一个过程”,逻辑搭配不合理。 ➤ 排除 A C

二步:简洁性原则

D 选项 allow sb. + 动作性名词(the assembly of...)表达不简洁,应该改为 allow sb. to do...。

E 选项 has + 动词性名词(reference) to, 表达不简洁,可以直接用动词 refer to sth. 表达。

➤ 排除 D E

正确选项 B

2. According to a study by the Carnegie Foundation for the Advancement of Teaching, companies in the United States are providing job training and general education for nearly eight million people, about equivalent to the enrollment of the nation's four-year colleges and universities.

- (A) equivalent to the enrollment of (B) the equivalent of those enrolled in
 (C) equal to those who are enrolled in (D) as many as the enrollment of
 (E) as many as are enrolled in

必需二步

一步:逻辑意思的合理性

A 选项 800 万人(nearly eight million people)不可能等于入学人数(the enrollment of...)。

B 选项 800 万人(nearly eight million people)不是注册学生的相等物(the equivalent of...)。

C 选项 800 万人(nearly eight million people)与大学注册的学生地位相等(equal to), 逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 A B C

二步:比较对象之间要有可比性

D 选项 nearly eight million people(800 万人)和 the enrollment(入学人数)比较,概念不对等,无可比性。从搭配上讲,as many as + 复数名词正确,as many as + 单数名词永远错。所以,as many as + the enrollment(单数名词)错。 ➤ 排除 D

正确选项 E

省略了重复的比较对象 people (作为 are enrolled in...的主语),people 与 people 比较,比较对象对等。

3. Although the term “psychopath” is popularly applied to an especially brutal crimi-

nal, in psychology it is someone who is apparently incapable of feeling compassion or the pangs of conscience.

- (A) it is someone who is (B) it is a person
(C) they are people who are (D) it refers to someone who is
(E) it is in reference to people

读题

Although the term ... applied to..., it is someone...

必杀三步

一步:逻辑意思的合理性

A B 选项 代词 it 向前指代状语从句中的主语 term, term is someone/a person 术语是人, 逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 A B

二步:代词指代

C 选项 主句主语中的代词 they 应该指代状语从句中的复数名词,但状语从句中的名词都是单数,they 没有指代对象。 ➤ 排除 C

三步:习惯用法

E 选项 in/with reference to (关于)只能作状语,不能作表语,be in/with reference to 永远错。 ➤ 排除 E

正确选项 D

it 指代 term, term refers to someone, 术语指某些人,逻辑搭配合理。

4. Promotions, retirements, deaths, and other actions approved by the board of directors at its May meeting will be reported in the July 15 issue of the company paper.

- (A) Promotions, retirements, deaths, and other actions approved by the board of directors at its May meeting will be reported in the July 15 issue of the company paper.
(B) Promotions, retirements, and other actions which have been approved at the May meeting of the board of directors along with deaths, will be reported in the July 15 issue of the company paper.
(C) To be reported in the July 15 issue of the company paper are the promotions, retirements, deaths, and other actions which were approved at the board of directors' May meeting.
(D) Meeting in May, the promotions, retirements, and other actions approved by the board of directors, including obituaries, will be reported in the July 15 issue of the company paper.
(E) The July 15 issue of the company paper will report on promotions, retirements, and other actions approved by the board of directors at its May meeting; the paper will also include obituaries.

读题

X1, X2, X3 and X4 approved by sb. will be reported.

-ed 分词 approved by 修饰并列的四个名词。

必杀一步

一步:逻辑意思的合理性

- A 选项 deaths approved by the board of directors, 逻辑意思不合理。
 B 选项 along with deaths 作状语修饰 have been approved, “...伴随着死亡...被批准”逻辑意思不合理。
 C 选项 deaths which were approved at the meeting, 逻辑意思不合理。
 D 选项 -ing 分词 meeting 在句首, 逻辑主语等于主句主语, the promotions, retirements, and other actions meet in May, 逻辑意思不合理。一步到位, 排除 A B C D

正确选项 E

5. Neanderthals had a vocal tract that resembled those of the apes and so were probably without language, a shortcoming that may explain why they were supplanted by our own species.

- (A) Neanderthals had a vocal tract that resembled those of the apes
 (B) Neanderthals had a vocal tract resembling an ape's
 (C) The vocal tracts of Neanderthals resembled an ape's
 (D) The Neanderthal's vocal tracts resembled the apes'
 (E) The vocal tracts of the Neanderthals resembled those of the apes

必杀二步

一步:比较结构

301

- A 选项 作为比较对象的重复名词用 that/those 替换, 复数代词 those 无法替换单数名词 a vocal tract。
 C 选项 作为比较对象的 n. + of + n. 结构与 n.'s + n. 结构在形式上不对称, 错。
 排除 A C

二步:逻辑意思的合理性

- D E 选项 划线部分的主语 vocal tracts 与未划线部分中另一个谓语 were 构成搭配, vocal tracts were probably without language 逻辑意思不合理。排除 D E

正确选项 B

Neanderthals were probably without language 逻辑意思合理。

6. The development of a new jumbo rocket that is expected to carry the United States into its next phase of space exploration will be able to deliver a heavier load of instruments into orbit than the space shuttle and at a lower cost.

- (A) The development of a new jumbo rocket that is expected to carry the United States into its next phase of space exploration will be able to deliver a heavier load of instruments into orbit than the space shuttle and at a lower cost.
 (B) The development of a new jumbo rocket is expected to carry the United States into its next phase of space exploration and be able to deliver a heavier load of instruments into orbit at a lower cost than the space shuttle.
 (C) The new development of a jumbo rocket, which is expected to carry the United

States into its next phase of space exploration, will be able to deliver a heavier load of instruments into orbit at a lower cost than the space shuttle.

(D) A newly developed jumbo rocket, which is expected to carry the United States into its next phase of space exploration, will be able to deliver a heavier load of instruments into orbit than the space shuttle can, and at a lower cost.

(E) A newly developed jumbo rocket, which is expected to carry the United States into its next phase of space exploration, will be able to deliver a heavier load of instruments into orbit than the space shuttle and to cost less.

读题

The development of... will be able to deliver... and at a lower cost.

必杀一步

一步: 逻辑搭配的合理性

A B C 选项 The development will be able to deliver instruments (开发能够运送仪器), 逻辑搭配不合理。排除 A B C

E 选项 A rocket will be able to deliver instruments and to cost less. to deliver 与 to cost 并列, A rocket will be able to cost less (火箭能够花更少的钱), 逻辑搭配不合理。

排除 E

正确选项 D

A rocket will be able to deliver instruments 逻辑搭配合理。

介词短语 at a lower cost 就近修饰动词 to deliver, a rocket will be able to deliver sth. at a lower cost, 逻辑搭配合理。

比较从句的时态

比较从句 than the space shuttle can 补出表示一般现在时的情态动词 can, 与表示一般将来时的 will be able to... 比较。

7. Concerned at the increase in accident fatalities, Tennessee adopted a child-passenger protection law requiring the parents of children under four years of age to be restrained in a child safety seat.

(A) the parents of children under four years of age to be restrained in a child safety seat

(B) the restraint of parents of children under four years of age in a child safety seat

(C) that parents restrain children under four years of age in a child safety seat

(D) that children be restrained under four years of age in a child safety seat by their parents

(E) children to be restrained under four years of age by their parents in a child safety seat

必杀一步

一步: 逻辑意思的合理性

A 选项 require parents to be restrained in a child safety seat, 逻辑意思不合理; require sb. to be done 不符合习惯搭配; 应使用 require sb. to do...。

B 选项 the restraint of parents in a child safety seat, 逻辑意思不合理。

D E 选项 介词短语 under four years of age 靠近动词 restrained, 优先作状语修饰 restrained, 修饰关系不合理。

D 选项 children are restrained under four years of age, 逻辑意思不合理。

E 选项 require children to be restrained under four years of age, 逻辑意思不合理; require sb. to be done 不符合习惯搭配, 应使用 require sb. to do...。

➤ 一步到位, 排除 A B D E

正确选项 C

介词短语 under four years of age 靠近名词 children, 优先作定语修饰名词, parents restrain children in a child safety seat, 逻辑意思合理。

8. One legacy of Madison Avenue's recent campaign to appeal to people fifty years old and over is the realization that as a person ages, their concerns change as well.

- (A) the realization that as a person ages, their
- (B) the realization that as people age, their
- (C) to realize that when a person ages, his or her
- (D) to realize that when people age, their
- (E) realizing that as people age, their

必杀二步

一步: 代词指代

A 选项 复数代词 their 无法指代单数名词 a person。 ➤ 排除 A

二步: 逻辑搭配的合理性

主语 one legacy of... 作为名词短语强调结果、状态, 表语应是名词短语方能保证两者逻辑上可以搭配。

C D E 选项 表语为不定式 to realize / 动词的-ing 形式 realizing, 都强调动作, 无法与主语构成逻辑搭配。此外, when (当...的时候) 强调某一时间点, as (随着) 强调过程, 动词 age 与 as 搭配更合理。 ➤ 排除 C D E

正确选项 B

realization 是动词 realize 的名词形式, 强调结果、状态, 与名词短语 one legacy of... 构成合理搭配。

9. Car owners who inflate their tires properly can substantially boost their vehicles' fuel efficiency, since the increase in car-road friction can waste up to five percent of car fuel by under inflation.

- (A) Car owners who inflate their tires properly can substantially boost their vehicles' fuel efficiency, since the increase in car-road friction can waste up to five percent of car fuel by under inflation.
- (B) Because the underinflation of tires can waste up to five percent of a car's fuel by increasing car-road friction, car owners can substantially boost their vehicles' fuel

efficiency by properly inflating the tires.

- (C) Their vehicles' fuel efficiency is substantially boosted by car owners through the proper inflation of tires that, when underinflated, can waste up to five percent of car fuel by an increase in car-road friction.
- (D) The proper inflation of tires by car owners, due to the fact that underinflation can waste up to five percent of a car's fuel by the increase of car-road friction, can substantially boost their fuel efficiency.
- (E) Because up to five percent of a car's fuel are wasted through the increases in car-road friction when the tires are underinflated, car owners properly inflating tires can substantially boost their fuel efficiency.

读题

- (A) Car owners can boost fuel efficiency, since the increase in friction can waste car fuel.
- (B) Because the underinflation can waste a car's fuel, car owner can boost fuel efficiency.
- (C) Their vehicles' fuel efficiency is boosted by car owners.
- (D) The inflation can boost their fuel efficiency.
- (E) Because a car's fuel are wasted, car owners can boost their fuel efficiency.

必杀二步

一步:逻辑搭配的合理性

- A 选项 因为 their vehicles' fuel efficiency 中的代词 their 指代 car owners, 所以 their tires 中的代词 their 也同样指代 car owners, “汽车拥有者的轮胎”, 逻辑搭配不合理。
- D 选项 The inflation can boost their fuel efficiency 逻辑搭配不合理, 并且 their fuel efficiency 中的代词 their 无法指代所有格形式 a car's, 只能指代 tires/car owners, “轮胎/汽车拥有者的燃油有效性”, 逻辑搭配不合理。
- E 选项 同理, their fuel efficiency, 代词和名词的逻辑搭配不合理。 ➤ 排除 A D E

二步:介词的使用

被动语态中, by + 名词, 表示动作的执行者; 主动语态中, by + doing, 表示动作的方式。

- A 选项 since 从句为主动语态, by + 动作性名词 underinflation 不能表示动作的方式。
- C 选项 that 定语从句中, tires can waste car fuel by an increase in..., by an increase 也无法表示动作的方式。
- D 选项 underinflation can waste a car's fuel by the increase of..., by the increase of 不表示动作的方式。 ➤ 排除 A C D

补遗

1> 主动优先原则

- C 选项 被动语态 “Fuel efficiency is boosted by car owners” 不如 B 选项的主动语态 “Car owners can boost fuel efficiency” 更简洁明了。

2> 主谓一致

half/ some/ ...percent/ part/ plenty + of + 名词, 谓语动词的单复数形式由名词的单复数决定。

E 选项 because 从句中, a car's fuel 为单数名词, 所以主语 five percent of a car's fuel 按单数名词处理, 和复数 be 动词 are 主谓不一致。

正确选项 B

Car owners can boost their vehicles' fuel efficiency by inflating the tires.

主动语态中 by inflating 表示 boost fuel efficiency 的方式, tires 前用定冠词 the 修饰, 而不用 their, 避免了 their 可能引起的指代对象不合理(如指代 car owners)。

10. For many people, household labor remains demanding even if able to afford household appliances their grandparents would find a miracle.

- (A) even if able to afford household appliances their grandparents would find a miracle
- (B) despite being able to afford household appliances their grandparents would find a miracle
- (C) even if they can afford household appliances their grandparents would have found miraculous
- (D) although they could afford household appliances their grandparents would find miraculous
- (E) even if they are able to afford household appliances which would have been a miracle to their grandparents

解题二步

一步: 逻辑意思的合理性

A 选项 状语从句 even if able to afford... 的逻辑主语应等于句子主语 household labor, 代入后, household labor is able to afford... 逻辑意思不合理。

A B E 选项 复数名词 household appliances 与单数名词 a miracle 在逻辑上不能搭配: A、B 选项 find household appliances a miracle, 错; E 选项, household appliances would have been a miracle, 错。 ➤ 排除 A B E

二步: 时态判断

在陈述句中, 情态动词 can 和 could 没有语气强弱的区别, 只有时态上的区别, could 是 can 的过去式。

D 选项 从句时态为一般过去时(could afford), 主句时态为一般现在时(remains), 主从句时态不一致, 错。 ➤ 排除 D

正确选项 C

定语从句中, 情态动词 would + 完成时态(would have found)表示推测。

find sth. (household appliances) + adj. (miraculous) 符合习惯用法。

11. Being a United States citizen since 1988 and born in Calcutta in 1940, author Bharati Mukherjee has lived in England and Canada, and first came to the United States in 1961 to study at the Iowa Writers' Workshop.

- (A) Being a United States citizen since 1988 and born in Calcutta in 1940, author Bharati

Mukherjee has

- (B) Having been a United States citizen since 1988, she was born in Calcutta in 1940; author Bharati Mukherjee
- (C) Born in Calcutta in 1940, author Bharati Mukherjee became a United States citizen in 1988; she has
- (D) Being born in Calcutta in 1940 and having been a United States citizen since 1988, author Bharati Mukherjee
- (E) Having been born in Calcutta in 1940 and being a United States citizen since 1988, author Bharati Mukherjee

必杀一步

一步:逻辑意思的合理性

- A 选项 being a citizen since 1988 放在 born in 1940 前面,时间排列顺序不合理,不能构成并列结构。
- B 选项 -ing 分词的完成时态,表示动作发生在主句谓语动词以前,be a citizen 发生在 be born 以前,逻辑意思不合理。
- D E 选项 born 是短暂性动词,但进行时态形式 being born/ having been born 表示持续性动作,逻辑意思不合理。一步到位,排除 A B D E

正确选项 C

306

12. Except for a concert performance that the composer himself staged in 1911, Scott Joplin's ragtime opera *Treemonisha* was not produced until 1972, sixty-one years after its completion.

- (A) Except for a concert performance that the composer himself staged
- (B) Except for a concert performance with the composer himself staging it
- (C) Besides a concert performance being staged by the composer himself
- (D) Excepting a concert performance that the composer himself staged
- (E) With the exception of a concert performance with the staging done by the composer himself

必杀三步

一步:不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

- B 选项 sth. with sb. (a concert performance with the composer) 对原句合理的意思 sth. that sb. do 进行了改变,错。排除 B

二步:逻辑意思的合理性

- C 选项 being staged 表示动作正在发生,逻辑上不合理。排除 C

三步:排除关系的表达

不同类事物的排除和同类事物的排除用不同方式:

except for X1, X2... X1 和 X2 属于不同类事物

except/excepting X1, X2... X1 和 X2 属于同一类事物

原句 a concert performance 和 opera 不属于同一类事物,所以排除关系应用 except for 表达。

D 选项 excepting 只能用在句首表示同类事物的排除。

E 选项 with the exception of 等于 except, 但不如 except 简洁, 也表示同类事物的排除。

排除 D E

补选

简洁性原则

动作性名词 + done by, 如 E 选项 the staging done by, 永远错; do + 动作性名词, 如 do the staging, 永远错; 应直接用动词表达。

正确选项 A

13. Having the right hand and arm being crippled by a sniper's bullet during the First World War, Horace Pippin, a Black American painter, worked by holding the brush in his right hand and guiding its movements with his left.

(A) Having the right hand and arm being crippled by a sniper's bullet during the First World War

(B) In spite of his right hand and arm being crippled by a sniper's bullet during the First World War

(C) Because there had been a sniper's bullet during the First World War that crippled his right hand and arm

(D) The right hand and arm being crippled by a sniper's bullet during the First World War

(E) His right hand and arm crippled by a sniper's bullet during the First World War

此题二步

一步: 逻辑意思的合理性

A B D 选项 right hand and arm being crippled 表示: 右手和右胳膊正在被弄残, 进行时逻辑意思不合理。排除 A B D

二步: 不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

C 选项 there be 句型强调自然存在, 重心转移到 a sniper's bullet, 改变原句的意思。

排除 C

补选

修饰关系的合理性

C 选项 定语从句 that crippled sth. 语法上就近修饰 the First World War, 修饰关系不合理。

正确选项 E

his right hand and arm crippled by... 是名词 + 分词短语形式的独立主格结构, 放在句首表示伴随原因。

14. To help preserve ancient Egyptian monuments threatened by high water tables, a Swedish engineering firm has proposed installing pumps, perhaps solar powered, to lower the underground water level and dig trenches around the bases of the stone walls.

- (A) to lower the underground water level and dig trenches
- (B) to lower the underground water level and to dig trenches
- (C) to lower the underground water level and digging trenches
- (D) that lower the underground water level and that trenches be dug
- (E) that lower the underground water level and trench digging

读题

to do sth. (不定式短语表目的) + 主句 + 插入语 + to do sth. and do sth. (不定式短语表目的)。

必需二步

一步: 并列关系的合理性

不定式并列的表达方法: to do X1 and to do X2, 或者省略第二个 to, 即 to do X1 and do X2。

A B 选项 从逻辑上看, dig trenches 可以降低地下水位, 所以 dig trenches 应与 install pumps 并列, 它们同属于高水位威胁的解决办法; 但连词 and 语法上就近连接不定式短语 to lower... and (to) dig..., 表示 install pumps 的目的是为了 dig trenches, 这一逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 A B

二步: 不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

D E 选项 把原句的目的关系 to lower sth., 改为定语从句 pumps lower sth., 使原句意思产生重大改变, 并且把状语(to do sth.) 改为定语(that 定语从句), 改变原句重心。

➤ 排除 D E

正确选项 C

改变 to dig 的形式, 使 and 在语法上连接 installing... 和 digging..., 表示 engineering firm 提出了两个方案, 一是 install pumps, 二是 dig trenches, 逻辑意思合理。

15. Canadian scientists have calculated that one human being should be struck every nine years by a meteorite, while each year sixteen buildings can be expected to sustain damage from such objects.

- (A) one human being should be struck every nine years by a meteorite
- (B) a human being should be struck by a meteorite once in every nine years
- (C) a meteorite will strike one human being once in every nine years
- (D) every nine years a human being will be struck by a meteorite
- (E) every nine years a human being should be struck by a meteorite

必需二步

一步: 逻辑意思的合理性

A B E 选项 定语从句中情态动词 should 使逻辑意思不合理, “每九年一个人应该被陨石击中”。 ➤ 排除 A B E

二步: 特指和泛指

C 选项 one human being 特指某个人, 使逻辑意思不合理, “某个特定的人每九年都会被陨石击中”。 ➤ 排除 C

正确选项 D

科学家已经预测到今后将要发生的事情,所以主句使用现在完成时,宾语从句使用一般将来时,逻辑关系合理。

宾语从句的时态可以和主句不一致,但必须有合理的理由保证这种不一致可以接受,如时间短语或逻辑关系。

名词的单数形式可以泛指一类东西, a human being 泛指人,比 one human being 特指某个人,逻辑意思更合理。

16. Because the Earth's crust is more solid there and thus better able to transmit shock waves, an earthquake of a given magnitude typically devastates an area 100 times greater in the eastern United States than it does in the West.

- (A) of a given magnitude typically devastates an area 100 times greater in the eastern United States than it does in the West
- (B) of a given magnitude will typically devastate 100 times the area if it occurs in the eastern United States instead of the West
- (C) will typically devastate 100 times the area in the eastern United States than one of comparable magnitude occurring in the West
- (D) in the eastern United States will typically devastate an area 100 times greater than will a quake of comparable magnitude occurring in the West
- (E) that occurs in the eastern United States will typically devastate 100 times more area than if it occurred with comparable magnitude in the West

读题

Because..., an earthquake devastates an area 100 times greater in ...than it does in...

必杀二步

一步:逻辑意思的合理性

A B E 选项 代词 it 的使用暗含了同一地震既发生在东部又发生在西部,逻辑意思不合理。

排除 A B C

二步:比较结构的习惯搭配

C 选项 100 times the area...than... 缺少 more 与 than 构成搭配。排除 C

补选

比较从句的省略

比较从句的主语和谓语与主句的主语和谓语相同时,可以全部省去,常常保留介词短语或状语从句。

A 选项 an earthquake devastates...in the eastern United States than it does in the West. 比较从句中 it does 可以省略,保留介词短语 in the West。

正确选项 D

主句主语中的介词短语 in the eastern United States 使得 because 从句中的代词 there 有明确的指代对象。

比较从句的主语 a quake of comparable magnitude occurring in the West 避免了 A B E

选项中同一地震既发生在东部又发生在西部的逻辑错误。

比较从句保留了助动词 will, 省略了动词 devastate。

17. Recent excavations suggest that the ancient peoples of the Italian peninsula merged the cult of Damia—a goddess of fertility and the harvest—with Venus.

- (A) with Venus (B) and Venus
(C) with that of Venus (D) and Venus'
(E) and Venus' cult

读题

sth. suggest that sb. merged the cult with Venus

merge X1 with X2, 把 X1 和 X2 混合在一起

必需二步

一步: 逻辑意思的合理性

A B 选项 cult of Damia (对 Damia 的礼拜) 和 Venus (维纳斯) 不属于同一类概念, 两者相互融合, 逻辑意思不合理性。☞ 排除 A B

二步: 习惯用法

B D E 选项 merge X1 and X2 永远错, 应使用 merge...with...。☞ 排除 B D E

正确选项 C

that 指代重复的名词 cult, cult of Damia 与 that of Venus 可以相互融合。

18. Unlike transplants between identical twins, whose genetic endowment is the same, all patients receiving hearts or other organs must take antirejection drugs for the rest of their lives.

- (A) Unlike transplants between identical twins, whose genetic endowment is the same
(B) Besides transplants involving identical twins with the same genetic endowment
(C) Unless the transplant involves identical twins who have the same genetic endowment
(D) Aside from a transplant between identical twins with the same genetic endowment
(E) Other than transplants between identical twins, whose genetic endowment is the same

必需二步

一步: 比较对象之间要有可比性

A 选项 Unlike + X1 放在句首与主句主语 X2 产生比较关系, X1 和 X2 必须是同一类概念。transplants 与 all patients 不是同一类概念的名词, 没有可比性。☞ 排除 A

二步: 逻辑意思的合理性

B D E 选项 Besides/ Aside from/ Other than + X1 放在句首与主句主语 X2 产生排除关系, X1 应从属于 X2。transplants/ a transplant 不从属于 all patients, 导致逻辑意思不合理。☞ 排除 B D E

正确选项 C

unless 引导状语从句, 避免了其他选项中比较关系和排除关系的不合理。

19. In the mid-1960's a newly installed radar warning system mistook the rising of the moon as a massive missile attack by the Soviets.

- (A) rising of the moon as a massive missile attack by the Soviets
- (B) rising of the moon for a massive Soviet missile attack
- (C) moon rising to a massive missile attack by the Soviets
- (D) moon as it was rising for a massive Soviet missile attack
- (E) rise of the moon as a massive Soviet missile attack

秒杀二步

一步: 习惯用法

mistake X1 for X2

A E 选项 mistake X1 as X2, 错。

C 选项 mistake X1 to X2, 错。 ➤ 排除 A C E

二步: 概念对等

D 选项 X1 的核心词是物质名词 moon, X2 的核心词是动作性名词 an attack, 两者概念不对等, 无法用 mistake...for... 连接。 ➤ 排除 D

正确选项 B

B 选项中, X1 的核心词是动作性名词 the rising, X2 的核心词也是动作性名词 an attack, 两者概念对等, 可用 mistake...for... 连接。

311

20. Most large companies prefer customized computer software because it can be molded to fit the way a company does business, when off-the-shelf software often requires the company to alter its procedures to fit the software.

- (A) when (B) since
- (C) whereas (D) because
- (E) insofar as

读题

sb. prefer sth. because it can..., when other software often requires...

秒杀一步

一步: 逻辑意思的合理性

代词 it 指代 customized computer software, because 从句的内容 customized computer software(定制的计算机软件) can be molded to fit... 与逗号后的内容 off-the-shelf software(非定制/现售的软件) requires the company to alter... 有对比的逻辑意思。只有 C 选项 whereas 引导状语从句表示对比含义。

A 选项 when 引导时间状语从句, 表时间。

B D 选项 since/ because 引导原因状语从句, 表原因。

E 选项 insofar as = to the degree that, 表示在...范围内, 到...程度。 ➤ 一步到位, 排除 A B D E

正确选项 C

21. With only 5 percent of the world's population, United States citizens consume 28 percent of its nonrenewable resources, drive more than one-third of its automobiles, and use 21 times more water per capita than Europeans do.

- (A) With (B) As
(C) Being (D) Despite having
(E) Although accounting for

必杀二步

一步:逻辑意思的合理性

根据上下文的逻辑意思,美国的人口数量和美国公民所使用的不可再生资源、汽车及水的数量形成强烈对比,划线部分应该表达出这种强烈对比关系。只有 D 选项介词 *despite*, E 选项连词 *although* 表示转折对比关系。 ➤ 排除 A B C

二步:习惯用法

D 选项 *despite + having sth.* 永远错,应去掉 *having*。书面语中较多使用 *despite + n.*。

➤ 排除 D

正确选项 E

连词 + 分词短语在句首,主句的主语必须能够执行该分词短语的动作, *United States citizens account for only 5 percent of ...*, 逻辑意思合理。

22. In 1978 only half the women granted child support by a court received the amount awarded; at least as much as a million and more others had not any support agreements whatsoever.

- (A) at least as much as a million and more others had not any
(B) at least as much as more than a million others had no
(C) more than a million others had not any
(D) more than a million others had no
(E) there was at least a million or more others without any

必杀二步

一步:逻辑意思的清楚性

A B E 选项 *at least* (至少) *as much as* (几乎等于) + *and more/ + more than* (多于)/ + *or more*, 在表达数量多少时含混不清。 ➤ 排除 A B E

二步:简洁性原则

C 选项 *not any* 等于 *no*, 但在标准书面语中倾向使用 *no*, 因为 *no* 更简洁。 ➤ 排除 C

正确选项 D

23. Unlike computer skills or other technical skills, there is a disinclination on the part of many people to recognize the degree to which their analytical skills are weak.

- (A) Unlike computer skills or other technical skills, there is a disinclination on the part of many people to recognize the degree to which their analytical skills are weak.

- (B) Unlike computer skills or other technical skills, which they admit they lack, many people are disinclined to recognize that their analytical skills are weak.
- (C) Unlike computer skills or other technical skills, analytical skills bring out a disinclination in many people to recognize that they are weak to a degree.
- (D) Many people, willing to admit that they lack computer skills or other technical skills, are disinclined to recognize that their analytical skills are weak.
- (E) Many people have a disinclination to recognize the weakness of their analytical skills while willing to admit their lack of computer skills or other technical skills.

必杀二步

一步:比较对象之间要有可比性

A 选项 skills 和 a disinclination 概念不对等,无可比性。

B 选项 skills 和 many people 概念不对等,无可比性。 ➤ 排除 A B

二步:简洁性原则

C E 选项 C 选项中的 bring out a disinclination 和 E 选项中的 have a disinclination 都是“动词 + a/an + 动作性名词”形式,这种表达故意复杂化,一般改为 be + -ed 分词形式。 ➤ 排除 C E

补遗

1> 代词指代

C 选项 代词 they 向前可以指代 many people,也可以指代 analytical skills,代词指代对象不清。

2> 不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

E 选项 the weakness of analytical skills (分析技能的弱点),强调部分概念,原句 analytical skills are weak (分析技能弱),强调整体概念,E 选项改变原句的合理意思和重心。

正确选项 D

-ing 分词短语 willing to...就近作定语修饰主语 many people; are disinclined to do 表达简洁、准确;代词 they 和 their 指代主语 many people。

24. Archaeologists in Ireland believe that a recently discovered chalice, which dates from the eighth century, was probably buried to keep from being stolen by invaders.

- (A) to keep from (B) to keep it from
(C) to avoid (D) in order that it would avoid
(E) in order to keep from

读题

Archaeologists believe that a chalice was buried to keep from doing...

必杀二步

一步:逻辑意思的清楚性

A C E 选项 介词短语 to do/ in order to do 修饰谓语动词 was buried,表示动作的目的。缺少名词或代词,搞不清楚阻止/防止什么东西被偷了。 ➤ 排除 A C E

二步:逻辑意思的合理性

D 选项 it 指酒杯 chalice, 代入后逻辑意思 (the chalice is acting to prevent its own theft) 不合理。✕ 排除 D

补选

用词倾向性

在 GMAT 考试中,倾向于用 to do 或者 so that 从句表达动作的目的,而不倾向于使用 in order to 和 in order that,因为 in order to 和 in order that 表达强烈的语气,并且不如 to do 和 so that 简洁。✕ 排除 D E

正确选项 B

习惯搭配:keep sb. from doing

25. Even their most ardent champions concede that no less than a technical or scientific breakthrough is necessary before solar cells can meet the goal of providing one percent of the nation's energy needs.

- (A) that no less than a technical or scientific breakthrough is necessary
- (B) that nothing other than a technical or scientific breakthrough is needed
- (C) that a technical or scientific breakthrough is necessary
- (D) the necessity for an occurrence of a technical or scientific breakthrough
- (E) the necessity for a technical or scientific breakthrough occurring

必杀二步

一步:不能使用故意复杂化的结构

A 选项 no less than 表示多达...或不亚于...,放在句中逻辑意思不合理,也显得多余,应删去。

B 选项 nothing other than 表示不强于...,不多于,同...一样,用否定形式表示肯定含义,从语法上和逻辑上看都显得多余,应删去。✕ 排除 A B

二步:习惯用法

necessity of sth.

D E 选项 necessity for sth. 不符合习惯用法。✕ 排除 D E

补选

从句和短语的区别

原句 that 宾语从句强调整体概念,表达 concede 的具体内容。

D E 选项 concede the necessity for sth. 强调部分概念,强调重心转移到名词短语 the necessity 上,改变原句的强调重心。

正确选项 C

26. During Roosevelt's years in office, Black Americans began voting for Democrats rather than Republicans in national elections, but Black support for Democrats at the state and local levels developed only after when civil rights legislation was supported by Harry Truman.

- (A) developed only after when civil rights legislation was supported by Harry Truman
 (B) developed only after when Harry Truman supported civil rights legislation
 (C) developed only after Harry Truman's support of civil rights legislation
 (D) develops only at the time after the supporting of civil rights legislation by Harry Truman
 (E) developed only after there being Harry Truman's support of civil rights legislation

必杀二步

一步:习惯用法

A B 选项 after + when 从句, 永远错。

正确用法: after + 名词/-ing 形式 (after 作为介词); after + 主谓结构 (after 作为连词)。 → 排除 A B

二步:简洁性原则

D 选项 at the time after 可以用 after 代替; the supporting of sth. 表达不简洁, 因为 support (v.) 有名词形式 support (n.), 就不能用 the supporting 代替名词形式 support。

E 选项 介词/连词 + there being sth., there being 累赘多余, 永远错。 → 排除 D E

补选

时态判断

D 选项 谓语动词 develops 表示一般现在时, 与前文的一般过去时 began 不协调。

正确选项 C

315 逻辑表达

27. In the minds of many people living in England, before Australia was Australia, it was the antipodes, the opposite pole to civilization, an obscure and unimaginable place that was considered the end of the world.

- (A) before Australia was Australia, it was the antipodes
 (B) before there was Australia, it was the antipodes
 (C) it was the antipodes that was Australia
 (D) Australia was what was the antipodes
 (E) Australia was what had been known as the antipodes

必杀二步

一步:不能改变原句的合理意思

C D E 选项 省略了原句中表示时间概念的词 before, 改变了原句的合理意思。

→ 排除 C D E

二步:逻辑意思的合理性

Australia 是个国家的概念, 不是地理概念, 国家不是自然存在的, 而是建立起来的, 所以 B 选项中 there be 表示自然存在, 逻辑意思上有缺陷。 → 排除 B

正确选项 A

28. Since savings banks have to use short-term deposits to finance long-term fixed-rate mortgage loans, they sometimes lose money when there is a rise in short-term

rates and, on the other hand, they are unable to raise the rates on their mortgages.

- (A) when there is a rise in short-term rates and, on the other hand, they are unable to raise
- (B) when short-term rates rise and they are unable to raise
- (C) when a rise in short-term rates occurs and, correspondingly, there is no rise possible in
- (D) with a rise in short-term rates, and they are unable to raise
- (E) with short-term rates on the rise and no rise possible in

必杀二步

一步: 习惯用法

there be 句型的使用: 在标准书面语中较多使用 there be + 具体名词, 表示自然存在。

错误形式: there is + a/an + 动作性名词; there be sth. done; there being + 名词词组; there could be done sth.。

A 选项 标准书面语中, there is a rise in sth. 错, 应该改为主动语态 sth. rise。另外, and 前后两句之间无对比关系, 不能使用 on the other hand (而...却)。

C 选项 there is no rise possible in sth. 绝对错, 并且随意添加动词 occur, a rise occurs 故意复杂化。 ➤ 排除 A C

二步: 不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

D E 选项 with 介词短语表示伴随关系, 而原句 when 从句表示时间关系, 用伴随关系代替时间关系, 改变原句的意思。 ➤ 排除 D E

正确选项 B

29. As Hurricane Hugo approached the Atlantic coast, it increased dramatically in strength, becoming the tenth most intense hurricane to hit the United States mainland in the twentieth century and most intense since Camille in 1969.

- (A) most intense since Camille in 1969
- (B) most intense after Camille in 1969
- (C) the most intense since Camille in 1969
- (D) the most intense after 1969, which had Camille
- (E) since 1969 and Camille, the most intense

读题

As..., it increased in strength, becoming...

as 作为连词引导状语从句, 表示时间概念。

-ing 分词短语 becoming... 在句尾作为伴随结果状语。

名词前有序数词或者形容词最高级作定语, 名词后的修饰语必须用 to do, 如: the tenth most intense hurricane to hit the United States。

必杀二步

一步: 形容词最高级

A B 选项 the tenth most intense and most intense, 根据平行结构形式对称原则以及形容词

最高级的表达形式,第二个 most intense 前缺少定冠词 the。 ➤ 排除 A B

第二步:不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

D E 选项 把原句 in 1969 的时间概念分别改为 after 1969, since 1969, 改变原句的合理意思。 ➤ 排除 D E

正确选项 C

30. For almost a hundred years after having its beginning in 1788, England exiled some 160,000 criminals to Australia.

- (A) For almost a hundred years after having its beginning in 1788,
- (B) Beginning in 1788 for a period of a hundred years,
- (C) Beginning a period of almost a hundred years, in 1788,
- (D) During a hundred years, a period beginning in 1788,
- (E) Over a period of a hundred years beginning in 1788,

必杀三步

一步:逻辑意思的合理性

A 选项 单数代词 its 只能指代 England, England had its beginning in 1788, 逻辑意思不合理。

B 选项 -ing 分词 beginning in 1788 在句首,逻辑主语等于主句主语 England, England began in 1788, 逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 A B

第二步:不能改变原句的合理意思

C 选项 in 1788 修饰主句,表示在 1788 年,英国流放了 160000 罪犯到澳大利亚,而原句的意思是:从 1788 年开始的 100 年间,英国流放了 160000 罪犯到澳大利亚。修饰语位置的变动导致修饰对象的变化,从而改变原句的合理意思。 ➤ 排除 C

第三步:同位结构的合理性

同位结构在逻辑上一定要对其修饰对象具有解释力。

D 选项 语法上, a period beginning in 1788 只能作为 a hundred years 的同位语,但逻辑上, a period (时期) 不能解释 a hundred years (数量), 所以同位语对其修饰对象没有解释力, 错。 ➤ 排除 D

正确选项 E

31. The gyrfalcon, an Arctic bird of prey, has survived a close brush with extinction; its numbers are now five times greater than when the use of DDT was sharply restricted in the early 1970's.

- (A) extinction; its numbers are now five times greater than
- (B) extinction; its numbers are now five times more than
- (C) extinction; their numbers now fivefold what they were
- (D) extinction, now with fivefold the numbers they had
- (E) extinction, now with numbers five times greater than

必杀三步

一步:不能改变原句的合理重心

原句是分号连接的两个完整的主谓结构。

D E 选项 用逗号连接主句和短语,把原句的主句部分改为从属性成分,改变原句的重心。

✎ 排除 D E

第二步:形容词的准确使用

用 great 形容 numbers 的大小,用 many/much 形容具体事物数量的多少。

B 选项 numbers are more than,用 more 修饰 numbers 不准确。✎ 排除 B

第三步:代词指代

C D 选项 复数代词 they/their 无法指代单数名词 gyrfalcon。✎ 排除 C D

正确选项 A

比较从句的省略

than 从句后主谓结构与主句的主谓结构相同,可以省略,一般保留作状语的介词短语或状语从句。

32. Some of the tenth-century stone churches of Norway are still standing, demonstrating that with sound design and maintenance, wooden buildings can last indefinitely.

- (A) standing, demonstrating that with sound design and maintenance, wooden buildings can last indefinitely
- (B) standing, demonstrating how wooden buildings, when they have sound design and maintenance, can last indefinitely
- (C) standing; they demonstrate if a wooden building has sound design and maintenance it can last indefinitely
- (D) standing, and they demonstrate wooden buildings can last indefinitely when there is sound design and maintenance
- (E) standing, and they demonstrate how a wooden building can last indefinitely when it has sound design and maintenance

读题

主句, + -ing 分词短语; -ing 分词短语中包含 that 宾语从句。

必杀二步

一步:宾语从句的连词 that 不能省略

C D 选项 demonstrate 后省略了 that。✎ 排除 C D

第二步:不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

C D 选项 把原句中的从句变为主句,改变原句主从关系,导致原句重心改变。

B D E 选项 随意添加 how 表示方式,when 表示时间,改变原句合理意思。

✎ 排除 B C D E

补遗

1> 现在分词短语在句尾作状语,表示伴随结果或伴随动作

根据原句逻辑意思,demonstrating 的逻辑主语应该是前面整个主句,也就是说 10 世纪的教堂依然挺立表明..., demonstrating 表示伴随结果。

2> 代词指代的合理性

C D E 三个选项中 they 指代教堂,逻辑意思转变为教堂表明,改变原句的合理意思。

正确选项 A

33. In the textbook publishing business, the second quarter is historically weak, because revenues are low and marketing expenses are high as companies prepare for the coming school year.

- (A) low and marketing expenses are high as companies prepare
- (B) low and their marketing expenses are high as they prepare
- (C) low with higher marketing expenses in preparation
- (D) low, while marketing expenses are higher to prepare
- (E) low, while their marketing expenses are higher in preparation

此题二步

一步:代词指代

B E 选项 代词 they 和 their 没有合理的指代对象。 ➤ 排除 B E

二步:不能缺少比较对象

C D E 选项 比较级 higher 缺少比较对象,意思含糊不清。 ➤ 排除 C D E

补选

不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

C 选项 把原句的并列关系 revenues are low and marketing expenses are high 改为从属关系。

D E 选项 把并列关系改为转折关系,改变原句的强调重心。

正确选项 A

34. Unlike the acid smoke of cigarettes, pipe tobacco, cured by age-old methods, yields an alkaline smoke too irritating to be drawn into the lungs.

- (A) Unlike the acid smoke of cigarettes, pipe tobacco, cured by age-old methods, yields an alkaline smoke
- (B) Unlike the acid smoke of cigarettes, pipe tobacco is cured by age-old methods, yielding an alkaline smoke
- (C) Unlike cigarette tobacco, which yields an acid smoke, pipe tobacco, cured by age-old methods, yields an alkaline smoke
- (D) Differing from cigarettes' acid smoke, pipe tobacco's alkaline smoke, cured by age-old methods, is
- (E) The alkaline smoke of pipe tobacco differs from cigarettes' acid smoke in that it is cured by age-old methods and is

此题二步

一步:比较对象之间要有可比性

Unlike X1, X2 do sth. X1 和 X2 必须是同一类事物。

A B 选项 unlike 后是 smoke (烟), 主句主语是 tobacco (烟草), 比较对象不是同一类事物。

➤ 排除 A B

第二步: 不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

B 选项 is cured by 作为主句谓语, yielding 分词短语作伴随状语, 但原句中 cured by 作分词短语修饰主句主语, yields 作为主句的谓语动词, 所以原句合理的心重被改变。

D 选项 原句中 cured by 修饰 tobacco, D 选项中 cured by 就近修饰 smoke, 修饰对象改变, 从而改变原句意思。此外, differing from 在句首永远错, 应该用 unlike 替换; 表示无生命事物的所属关系时一般不用 's 的形式, 通常用 n. of n. 结构。

E 选项 in that 因果关系强加, 原句无因果含义; it 无论指代主句中的 the alkaline smoke 还是 pipe tobacco, in that 从句的逻辑意思都不合理。 ➤ 排除 B D E

正确选项 C

35. Some analysts point out that because people are becoming accustomed to a steady inflation rate of four to five percent, businesses found that they could raise prices according to this amount without thereby provoking strong public reaction.

(A) found that they could raise prices according to this amount without thereby provoking

(B) found that they were capable of raising prices by this amount and not provoke

(C) find that they are capable of raising prices by this amount and not provoke

(D) are finding that they can raise prices by this amount without provoking

(E) are finding that they can raise prices according to this amount and will not thereby provoke

读题

sb. point out that because..., businesses found that they could...without....

必杀二步

一步: 时态判断

A B 选项 在 point out 的宾语从句中, 主句使用过去时 businesses found, 而 because 从句使用现在进行时 people are becoming, 主从句时态不协调。 ➤ 排除 A B

第二步: 主从关系不能随意改变

B C E 选项 把原句中的从属成分 without provoking 改为并列成分 and not provoke / and will not provoke, 从属关系变为并列关系, 改变原句的重心。 ➤ 排除 B C E

补道

1> 习惯搭配

A 选项 without thereby doing, thereby 必须省略, without 直接加-ing 形式。

2> 情态动词不能随意省略、添加或改变

情态动词 can 表示可能性, be capable of doing 表示能力。

B C 选项 随意把情态动词 can 改为 be capable of doing。

正确选项 D

36. Margaret Courtney-Clarke has traveled to remote dwellings in the Transvaal to photograph the art of Ndebele women, whose murals are brilliantly colored, their geometrical symmetries embellished with old and new iconography and in a style that varies from woman to woman and house to house.

- (A) whose murals are brilliantly colored, their geometrical symmetries embellished with old and new iconography and in a style that varies from woman to woman and house to house
- (B) whose murals are brilliantly colored, their geometrical symmetries are embellished with old and new iconography, and their style is varying among women and houses
- (C) whose murals are brilliantly colored, their geometrical symmetries are embellished with old and new iconography, and they are in styles that vary from woman to woman and house to house
- (D) with murals brilliantly colored, their geometrical symmetries embellished with old and new iconography, and their style varies among women and houses
- (E) with murals that are brilliantly colored, their geometrical symmetries embellished with old and new iconography, and their styles vary among women and houses

读题

主句 + whose 定语从句 + 独立主格

该独立主格形式:名词短语 + -ed 形式。-ed 形式后出现 with 介词短语与 in 介词短语并列作状语修饰 embellished。

比赛一步

一步:不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

B C 选项 原句中作状语的独立主格结构被改为两个完整的主谓结构,与主句并列,句子结构变为:句子 1,句子 2,and 句子 3。

D E 选项 独立主格结构中作状语的 in 介词短语被改为完整的主谓结构,与主句并列,句子结构变为:句子 1,and 句子 2。

B C D E 四个选项把原句中的修饰性成分改为并列句,改变原句合理的重心和基本意思。✂ 一步到位,排除 B C D E

补选

代词指代

代词不是就近指代,代词指代对象的查找顺序为:

- 1> 主从句中:先指代主语的核心词,再指代宾语或表语的核心词,最后指代修饰语中的名词。
- 2> 并列句中:有 2 个或 3 个句子并列,第 2 个或第 3 个句子中的代词应该优先指代第 1 句中主句的名词。

B C 选项 三个句子并列,第 2 和第 3 句中的代词 their/they 优先指代句子 1 中的复数名词 dwellings 或者 women,“住所的几何对称”或者“妇女的几何对称”,逻辑意思都不合理。

D E 选项 两个句子并列,第 2 个句子中的代词 their 优先指代句子 1 中的复数名词

dwelling 或者 women, “住所的风格”或者“妇女的风格”, 逻辑意思都不合理。

正确选项 A

- 1 > 动作的目的用 to do (to photograph the art of Ndebele women) 表示。
- 2 > whose 定语从句优先就近修饰名词 women, “妇女们的壁画颜色鲜艳”, 逻辑意思合理。
- 3 > 独立主格 n. + -ed 形式作状语, 优先就近修饰 whose 定语从句, 所以独立主格中的代词 their 优先指代 whose 定语从句中的复数名词 murals, “壁画的几何对称”, 逻辑意思合理。
- 4 > 习惯性省略: from woman to woman and (from) house to house

37. Most state constitutions now mandate that the state budget be balanced each year.

- (A) mandate that the state budget be balanced
- (B) mandate the state budget to be balanced
- (C) mandate that the state budget will be balanced
- (D) have a mandate for a balanced state budget
- (E) have a mandate to balance the state budget

必杀二步

一步: 习惯用法

mandate + that 从句, that 从句必须使用动词原形表示虚拟语气。

B 选项 mandate sth. to be done 不符合习惯用法。

C 选项 mandate 引导的宾语从句没有使用动词原形。 ➤ 排除 B C

二步: 整体概念与部分概念的区分

原句 mandate + that... 结构强调 mandate 的对象为 that 从句所表达的整体内容。

D E 选项 have a mandate for + 名词短语 / have a mandate to + 动词短语, 强调名词短语或动词短语所表达的部分内容, 改变原句强调重心; 而且上述两短语也不简洁。 ➤ 排除 D E

补遗

修饰对象的单一性

E 选项 状语 each year 可能修饰 to balance..., 也可能修饰 have a mandate, 修饰对象不单一, 错。

正确选项 A

38. The nephew of Pliny the Elder wrote the only eyewitness account of the great eruption of Vesuvius in two letters to the historian Tacitus.

- (A) The nephew of Pliny the Elder wrote the only eyewitness account of the great eruption of Vesuvius in two letters to the historian Tacitus.
- (B) To the historian Tacitus, the nephew of Pliny the Elder wrote two letters, being the only eyewitness accounts of the great eruption of Vesuvius.
- (C) The only eyewitness account is in two letters by the nephew of Pliny the Elder writing to the historian Tacitus an account of the great eruption of Vesuvius.

(D) Writing the only eyewitness account, Pliny the Elder's nephew accounted for the great eruption of Vesuvius in two letters to the historian Tacitus.

(E) In two letters to the historian Tacitus, the nephew of Pliny the Elder wrote the only eyewitness account of the great eruption of Vesuvius.

必杀二步

一步:修饰语的位置

A D 选项 介词短语 in two letters 的功能有两种可能性:一是语法上作定语就近修饰名词短语 the great eruption of Vesuvius,表示“火山爆发发生在两封信里”,逻辑意思不合理;二是逻辑上作状语修饰谓语动词,表示“在两封信中写到了火山爆发”,修饰语的位置导致语法上和逻辑上其修饰对象不一致。✂ 排除 A D

二步:不能改变原句的合理重心

原句强调 sb. wrote the only eyewitness account... in two letters.

B 选项 强调 sb. wrote two letters.

C 选项 强调 the only eyewitness account is an account.

D 选项 把原句的谓语动词 wrote 改为-ing 分词作状语,主次关系颠倒。✂ 排除 B C D

补选

逻辑意思的清楚性和表达的简洁性

B 选项 being the only eyewitness accounts of sth. 如果作为同位语解释说明 two letters, being 多余,必须省略;如果作为-ing 分词短语在句尾作伴随状语,being 的逻辑主语等于所修饰的动词 wrote (唯一的动词)的主语, the Elder was the only eyewitness accounts of sth. 逻辑意思不合理。

C 选项 句子主语意思表达不清楚, the only eyewitness account of what? The only eyewitness account is an account of sth., 名词 account 重复使用,表达累赘,不简洁。

正确选项 E

in two letters 放在句首作状语,通过改变修饰语的位置使修饰关系明确清楚;保持原句强调重心 sb. wrote the only account of sth.。

39. The brochure notes that in the seminar the importance that communication is a two-way process will be emphasized.

(A) importance that communication is a two-way process will be emphasized

(B) importance of communication as a two-way process will be emphasized

(C) importance of communication being a two-way process will be the emphasis

(D) fact will be emphasized that communication is a two-way process and of importance

(E) emphasis will be that communication being a two-way process is important

读题

The brochure notes that the importance will be emphasized.

必杀二步

一步:习惯用法

A 选项 the importance + that 从句永远错,类似的结构 the need + that 从句也错;正确搭

配为: the importance of + n., the need to do, the need for sb. to do, the need for sth. ➤ 排除 A

二步: 不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

C 选项 把原句中的动词 be emphasized 改为名词 the emphasis, the importance will be emphasized 强调动词, the importance will be emphasis 强调状态和结果, 改变原句的强调重心, 并且 being 也必须改为 as。

D 选项 随意添加实义词 fact, 把原句 the importance will be emphasized 的意思改为 fact will be emphasized, 并且名词短语和 of 结构, 形式不对称, 不能用 and 连接。

E 选项 把原句中的谓语动词 be emphasized 改为主语 emphasis, 改变原句的强调重心, 并且 being 也必须改为 as。 ➤ 排除 C D E

正确选项 B

介词短语 as a two-way process 作定语, 就近修饰名词 communication。

40. A number of linguists contend that all of the thousands of languages spoken by the world's five billion people can be traced back to a common root language.

(A) that all of the thousands of languages spoken by the world's five billion people can be traced

(B) that the world's five billion people speak thousands of languages of which all can be traced

(C) the world's five billion people speak thousands of languages which are all traceable

(D) all of the thousands of languages spoken by the world's five billion people to be traceable

(E) the ability to trace all of the thousands of languages that are spoken by the world's five billion people

此题一步

一步: 不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

1> 原句 contend 的基本内容是, 很多语言可以被追溯到一种共同的语言上。

B C 选项 宾语从句的基本意思转移到人们说很多语言, 改变原句的合理意思。

2> 原句 sth. can be traced 强调动作 trace。

C D 选项 sth. be traceable 中形容词 traceable 强调事物特征, 改变原句的强调重心。

3> 原句 contend + that 从句, 强调 that 从句所表达的整体概念。

E 选项 contend + 名词短语 (the ability of...), 强调名词短语所表达的部分概念。

➤ 一步到位, 排除 B C D E

补选

1> 宾语从句的连词 that 不能省略

C 选项 缺少连词 that。

2> 非限定性定语从句

非限定性定语从句的形式之一: 数词/代词/名词 + 介词 + which

B 选项 定语从句 languages of which all can..., 错, 应改为: languages, all of which can...

3> 定语从句要尽可能简化

1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.

E 选项 languages that are spoken by... 定语从句不简洁, 可以直接用分词短语 spoken by... 修饰名词 languages。

正确选项 A

41. So poorly educated and trained are many young recruits to the United States work force that many business executives fear this country will lose its economic pre-eminence.

- (A) So poorly educated and trained are many young recruits to the United States work force that
- (B) As poorly educated and trained as many young recruits to the United States work force are
- (C) Because of many young recruits to the United States work force who are so poorly educated and trained
- (D) That many young recruits to the United States work force are so poorly educated and trained is why
- (E) Many young recruits to the United States work force who are so poorly educated and trained explains why

必杀二步

一步: 不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

B 选项 as...as 句型表示比较含义, 改变原句逻辑上的因果关系。

C 选项 because of + 名词, 强调重心在于 young recruits(人), 而原句强调 young recruits are poorly educated and trained, 所以原句的强调重心被改变。

E 选项 复数主语 many young recruits 和单数谓语动词 explains 主谓不一致; 而且原句的主句内容变成了定语从句内容, 合理的逻辑意思被改变。 ➤ 排除 B C E

二步: 习惯用法

D 选项 is 和 why 之间缺少 the reason 构成符合习惯的表达。 ➤ 排除 D

正确选项 A

部分倒装

so/such...that 句型, 表示结果, so/such 短语在句首, 主句需要用部分倒装。正常语序为: Many young recruits to the United States work force are so poorly educated and trained that many business executives fear this country will lose its economic preeminence.

42. According to some analysts, whatever its merits, the proposal to tax away all capital gains on short-term investments would, if enacted, have a disastrous effect on Wall Street trading and employment.

- (A) its merits, the proposal to tax
- (B) its merits may be, the proposal of taxing
- (C) its merits as a proposal, taxing
- (D) the proposal's merits, to tax
- (E) the proposal's merits are, taxing

读题

According to sb., whatever its merits, the proposal to do sth. would have an effect on...

必杀二步

一步:习惯用法

B 选项 the proposal of doing 搭配错,只能用 the proposal to do...;此外,没有理由添加情态动词 may,改变原句意思。➤ 排除 B

二步:不能改变原句的合理重心

原句主语是 the proposal to tax away..., 强调计划 the proposal。

C D E 选项 用 taxing away.../ to tax away... 代替原句的主语,强调动作 tax away, 导致原句重心的改变。➤ 排除 C D E

补遗

状语从句的省略形式

状语从句的省略形式:表示转折、时间、条件的连词 + 形容词短语 / 分词短语

错误形式:表示转折、时间、条件的连词 + 介词短语 / 名词短语

whatever 可以加名词短语,表示状语从句省略。

正确选项 A

43. The physical structure of the human eye enables it to sense light of wavelengths up to 0.0005 millimeters; infrared radiation, however, is invisible because its wavelength—0.1 millimeters—is too long to be registered by the eye.

- (A) infrared radiation, however, is invisible because its wavelength—0.1 millimeters—is too long to be registered by the eye
- (B) however, the wavelength of infrared radiation—0.1 millimeters—is too long to be registered by the eye making it invisible
- (C) infrared radiation, however, is invisible because its wavelength—0.1 millimeters—is too long for the eye to register it
- (D) however, because the wavelength of infrared radiation is 0.1 millimeters, it is too long for the eye to register and thus invisible
- (E) however, infrared radiation has a wavelength of 0.1 millimeters that is too long for the eye to register, thus making it invisible

必杀三步

一步:逻辑意思的合理性

B 选项 making it invisible 放在名词后面,作为定语修饰 eye,眼睛使红外线不可见,逻辑意思不合理。

D 选项 代词 it 向前指代 wavelength of infrared radiation, wavelength is thus invisible 波长不可见,逻辑意思不合理。➤ 排除 B D

二步:不能改变原句的合理重心

B E 选项 把原句的主句内容 infrared radiation is invisible, 改为从属成分,改变原句的重心。➤ 排除 B E

三步:习惯用法

sth. be too... (for sb.) to do, do 后面不能加宾语; sth. be too... to be done, to 后可以加上动词的被动语态。

C 选项 wavelength is too long for the eye to register it, it 多余, 必须省略。 ➤ 排除 C

正确选项 A

44. Florida will gain another quarter-million jobs this year alone, many of them in high-paying fields like electronics and banking, making the state's economy far more diversified than ten years ago.

- (A) high-paying fields like electronics and banking, making the state's economy far more diversified than
- (B) high-paying fields like electronics and banking, and making the state's economy far more diversified than its economy
- (C) high-paying fields such as electronics and banking, to make the state's economy far more diversified than
- (D) such high-paying fields as electronics and banking, making the state's economy far more diversified than it was
- (E) Such high-paying fields as electronics and banking, and make the state's economy far more diversified than it was

必杀二步

327

一步:举例的表达方式

like + sth. 表示比较, 不能表示举例, 表示举例时应该用 such as + sth.。

A B 选项 like electronics and banking 表示举例, 错。 ➤ 排除 A B

二步:不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

原句-ing 分词短语在句尾作伴随结果状语。

C 选项 将伴随结果状语改为目的关系 to make, 改变原句意思。

E 选项 将状语从句改为并列的句子, 从句变主句, 改变原句重心。 ➤ 排除 C E

补选

比较对象之间要有可比性

A C 选项 state's economy 和 ten years ago 进行比较, 州的经济和十年前两者概念不同, 没有可比性。

正确选项 D

than it was ten years ago, it 指代 the state's economy。比较对象是今年州的经济和十年前州的经济。was 表示一般过去时。不同的时态比较时, 必须有明显的标志表明是在不同的时态下进行比较。

45. The Parthenon was a church from 1204 until 1456, when Athens was taken by General Mohammed the Conqueror, the Turkish sultan, who established a mosque in the building and used the Acropolis as a fortress.

- (A) who established a mosque in the building and used the Acropolis as

- (B) who, establishing a mosque in the building, used the Acropolis like
- (C) who, when he had established a mosque in the building, used the Acropolis like
- (D) who had established a mosque in the building, using the Acropolis to be
- (E) establishing a mosque in the building and using the Acropolis as

此条三步

一步:习惯用法

use sth. as sth. 或者 use sth. to do sth.

B C 选项 use sth. like sth. 不符合标准书面语的习惯表达。

D 选项 use sth. to be sth., to be 应该用 as 替换。 ➤ 排除 B C D

二步:动作间逻辑关系的合理性

动作间的逻辑关系分为:并列关系、伴随结果关系、伴随动作关系以及逻辑上的先后关系(常用不同时态表示)。

C D 选项 had established 与 used /using 两动作之间逻辑上不存在先后关系。

E 选项 -ing 分词短语 establishing sth. 在句尾作伴随状语,显然主句与状语从句间不存在因果关系,伴随结果关系不合理;如果该-ing 分词短语作伴随动作状语,表示 Athens was taken 与 establish a mosque 同时发生,逻辑关系依然不合理。 ➤ 排除 C D E

正确选项 A

46. A proposal has been made to trim the horns from rhinoceroses to discourage poachers; the question is whether tourists will continue to visit game parks and see rhinoceroses after their horns are trimmed.

- (A) whether tourists will continue to visit game parks and see rhinoceroses after their horns are
- (B) whether tourists will continue to visit game parks to see one once their horns are
- (C) whether tourists will continue to visit game parks to see rhinoceroses once the animals' horns have been
- (D) if tourists will continue to visit game parks and see rhinoceroses once the animals' horns are
- (E) if tourists will continue to visit game parks to see one after the animals' horns have been

此条三步

一步:标准书面语原则

在标准书面语中 if 不能表示是否。 ➤ 排除 D E

二步:动作之间逻辑关系的合理性

A D 选项 will continue to visit game parks and see rhinoceroses 语法上可能有两种理解: will continue to visit game parks and (will) see rhinoceroses 或 will continue to visit game parks and (to) see rhinoceroses。从动作之间的逻辑关系看, see rhinoceroses 应是 visit game parks 的目的,所以应改成 will continue to visit game parks to see rhinoceroses, 意思单一合理。 ➤ 排除 A D

三步:代词指代

B E 选项 代词 one 指代不清。✂ 排除 B E

正确选项 C

47. Idioglossia is a phenomenon, incompletely understood at best, where two persons develop a unique and private language with highly original vocabulary and syntax.

- (A) where two persons develop a unique and private language with
- (B) when two persons develop a unique and private language having
- (C) in which two persons have unique and private language development with
- (D) having two persons who develop a unique and private language that has
- (E) in which two persons develop a unique and private language with

读题

Idioglossia is a phenomenon, . . . , where . . .

必杀三步

一步:习惯用法

A B 选项 a phenomenon 不能与 where 和 when 搭配,可与 in which 搭配。

✂ 排除 A B

二步:逻辑意思的合理性

D 选项 a phenomenon having two persons 逻辑意思不合理,错。✂ 排除 D

三步:修饰对象的单一性

C 选项 unique and private 可能修饰 language,也可能修饰 development,修饰对象有争议;而且 have...development 不简洁,不能替换 develop。✂ 排除 C

正确选项 E

329

48. Based on pinto beans and corn tortillas, the Pima Indians have a diet that derives 70 percent of its protein from vegetable sources and only 30 percent from animal foods, the reverse of the typical North American diet.

- (A) the Pima Indians have a diet that derives
- (B) the Pima Indians in their diet derive
- (C) diet of the Pima Indians derives
- (D) diets of the Pima Indians have derived
- (E) diet of the Pima Indians, deriving

读题

Based on . . . , the Pima Indians have a diet that . . .

必杀三步

一步:逻辑意思的合理性

A B 选项 分词短语 based on...的逻辑主语应等于句子主语,但句子主语 the Pima Indians 代入后, the Pima Indians based on pinto beans and corn tortillas 逻辑意思不合

理。 ✖ 排除 A B

第二步:代词指代

D 选项 原句 70 percent of its protein 中的 its 不能指代复数主语 diets。 ✖ 排除 D

第三步:句子结构的完整性

E 选项 句子 the diet of..., deriving...缺谓语,错。 ✖ 排除 E

正确选项 C

49. The task force is reviewing the company's hiring practices for the determination of whether they are meeting the requirements set by the Office of Equal Opportunity.

- (A) for the determination of whether they are meeting the requirements set by the Office of Equal Opportunity
- (B) for the determining of whether or not it meets the requirement set by the Office of Equal Opportunity
- (C) for the determining of whether the requirements set by the Office of Equal Opportunity are being met or not
- (D) determining whether the requirements set by the Office of Equal Opportunity are met
- (E) to determine whether they meet the requirements set by the Office of Equal Opportunity

330

读题

The task force is reviewing the company's hiring practices for the determination of whether...

必杀二步

一步:修饰对象的单一性

A B C 选项 for the determination/ determining of 可能就近作定语修饰 the company's hiring practices, 也可能作状语修饰 is reviewing..., 修饰对象有争议。实际上, for the determination/ determining of 在 GMAT 语法考试中永远错, 一般改为 to determine...; 同样, for the attraction/attracting of 应改为 to attract...。

✖ 排除 A B C

第二步:逻辑意思的合理性

D 选项 determining whether...就近作定语修饰 the company's hiring practices, 逻辑意思不合理。 ✖ 排除 D

正确选项 E

动作目的的表达

用不定式表达动作目的: The task force is reviewing...to determine whether...

50. In the mid-1920's the Hawthorne Works of the Western Electric Company was the scene of an intensive series of experiments that would investigate changes in working conditions as to their effects on workers' performance.

- (A) that would investigate changes in working conditions as to their effects on workers'

- performance
- (B) investigating the effects that changes in working conditions would have on workers' performance
- (C) for investigating what are the effects in workers' performance that changes in working conditions would cause
- (D) that investigated changes in working conditions' effects on workers' performance
- (E) to investigate what the effects changes in working conditions would have on workers' performance

读题

...the Hawthorne Works...was the scene of an intensive series of experiments that would investigate...

必杀三步**一步:时态的判断**

A 选项 过去将来时...that would investigate...没有逻辑理由或时间线索,错。

C 选项 一般现在时 what are the effects...与主句的时态不一致,错。 ➤ 排除 A C

二步:逻辑意思的合理性

D 选项 working conditions' effects on workers' performance 逻辑意思不合理,应改为 changes in working conditions 对 workers' performance 的影响(effects)。

➤ 排除 D

三步:句子结构的完整性

E 选项 changes in working conditions would have 作定语修饰 the effects, 所以从句 what the effects...缺谓语,错。 ➤ 排除 E

正确选项 B

第十一章

综合练习题及其详解

Section 1

1. Of all the possible disasters that threaten American agriculture, the possibility of an adverse change in climate is maybe the more difficult for analysis.

- (A) is maybe the more difficult for analysis
- (B) is probably the most difficult to analyze
- (C) is maybe the most difficult for analysis
- (D) is probably the more difficult to analyze
- (E) is, it may be, the analysis that is most difficult

必杀二步

一步:比较级和最高级的区别

of all the possible disasters 表明了比较的范围是两个以上,所以应该使用形容词最高级。

A D 选项 more difficult 比较级形式,错。✕ 排除 A D

二步:标准书面语原则

表示可能的三个词:maybe, perhaps, probably; 区别在于 maybe 和 perhaps 是口语中的用法,在标准书面语中通常使用 probably。✕ 排除 A C E

备选

1> 习惯用法

A C 选项 sth. be difficult for + n. 永远错; 正确用法:sth. be difficult to do, to do 使用主动形式,以主动形式表被动含义。

2> 逻辑搭配要合理

E 选项 句子 the possibility of ... is ... the analysis 的基本含义逻辑上不合理。

正确选项 B

避免意思重复

句子 the possibility of ... is probably... 中, possibility 与 probably 意思不重复; 而同位结构 the possibility that sb. can/may do... 中, possibility 与 can/may 意思重复,应去掉 can/may。

2. Though the term "graphic design" may suggest laying out corporate brochures and annual reports, they have come to signify widely ranging work, from package designs and company logotypes to signs, book jackets, computer graphics, and film titles.

- (A) suggest laying out corporate brochures and annual reports, they have come to signify widely ranging
- (B) suggest laying out corporate brochures and annual reports, it has come to signify a wide range of
- (C) suggest corporate brochure and annual report layout, it has signified widely ranging
- (D) have suggested corporate brochure and annual report layout, it has signified a wide range of

(E) have suggested laying out corporate brochures and annual reports, they have come to signify widely ranging

必杀二步

一步:代词指代

A E 选项 复数代词 they 无法指代单数名词 the term,代词没有指代对象。 ➤ 排除 A E

二步:不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

原句中 suggest laying out 强调动作, come to 表示过程。

C D 选项 suggest ... layout 强调名词短语,原句中的 come to 被省略,所以原句的合理意思和强调重心被改变。 ➤ 排除 C D

补选

习惯搭配

A C E 选项 widely ranging 不符合习惯表达。

正确用法为:a wide range of。

正确选项 B

3. Poor management, outdated technology, competition from overseas, and steel's replacement to materials like aluminum and fiber-reinforced plastics have all been cited as causes for the decline of the United States steel industry.

334

- (A) steel's replacement to materials like
- (B) the replacement of steel by such materials as
- (C) the replacing of steel with materials of
- (D) the replacing of steel by means of materials like
- (E) to replace steel by materials such as

读题

X1, X2, X3, and X4 have all been cited as causes for...

必杀二步

一步:举例的表达方式

用 such as 表示举例。

A D 选项 标准书面语中不使用 like 表示举例。 ➤ 排除 A D

二步:平行结构形式要对称,概念要对等

未划线部分 management, technology 和 competition 名词短语并列。

C D 选项 动词 replace 有名词形式 replacement,就不能使用 the + -ing 形式代替动作性名词;而且两者强调重心不同:replacement 强调状态和结果,replacing 强调动作。

E 选项 动词不定式 to replace 无法和前面的名词短语构成并列。 ➤ 排除 C D E

补选

1> 无生命事物的所有格形式

A 选项 无生命事物的所有格形式优先使用 n. of n. 的结构,较少使用 n.'s 结构。

2> replace 的习惯搭配

replace as/ by/ with; a replacement for the + 名词(表示一类概念)

正确选项 B

习惯搭配: the replacement of sth. by sth.

4. Teratomas are unusual forms of cancer because they are composed of tissues such as tooth and bone not normally found in the organ in which the tumor appears.

- (A) because they are composed of tissues such as tooth and bone
- (B) because they are composed of tissues like tooth and bone that are
- (C) because they are composed of tissues, like tooth and bone, tissues
- (D) in that their composition, tissues such as tooth and bone, is
- (E) in that they are composed of tissues such as tooth and bone, tissues

必杀三步

一步: 举例的表达方式

like + 名词表示比较, 不能表示举例; such as + 名词/doing... 表示举例。

B C 选项 like tooth and bone 表示举例, 绝对错。 ➤ 排除 B C

二步: 逻辑搭配的合理性

D 选项 their composition (成分) is not found in the organ, 逻辑意思不合理。

➤ 排除 D

三步: 修饰语的修饰对象

A 选项 逻辑上分词短语 not found in... 必须修饰 tissues, 但语法上 not found in... 必须先就近修饰名词 tooth and bone 而不能跳跃修饰 tissues, 所以修饰语在语法上和逻辑上的修饰对象不一致。 ➤ 排除 A

正确选项 E

第二个 tissues 作为第一个 tissues 的重复性同位结构, 使 not found in... 的修饰对象准确合理。

5. The black hole has entered the popular imagination as an object too massive that neither light nor matter can escape its gravitational pull.

- (A) too massive that neither light nor matter can escape its
- (B) too massive for either allowing light or matter to escape its
- (C) massive enough that either light or matter cannot escape their
- (D) so massive that neither light nor matter could escape their
- (E) so massive that neither light nor matter can escape its

必杀三步

一步: 代词指代

C D 选项 复数代词 their 无法指代单数名词短语 the black hole。 ➤ 排除 C D

二步: 习惯用法

so...that... 表示结果, 可以用在单一主谓结构中, 也可以用在复杂主谓结构中, 不用考虑逻辑主语问题。

A 选项 too...that... 搭配错。

C 选项 enough that... 搭配错。 ➤ 排除 A C

三步: 平行结构形式要对称

B 选项 too + adj. + for sb. + to do 太... 以致某人不能...; either doing sth. or sth., 平行结构形式不对称。 ➤ 排除 B

正确选项 E

6. The number of undergraduate degrees in engineering awarded by colleges and universities in the United States increased by more than twice from 1978 to 1985.

(A) increased by more than twice (B) increased more than two times

(C) more than doubled (D) was more than doubled

(E) had more than doubled

读题

the number of sth. increased... from 1978 to 1985.

必杀三步

一步: 永远错误的形式

A 选项 increased by twice, 永远错: twice 是副词, 不作介词 by 的宾语。

B 选项 increased two times, 永远错: 它可以表示数量有过两次或两次以上的增长, 改变原句的合理意思。 ➤ 排除 A B

二步: 主动优先原则

在主动语态与被动语态都可接受的情况下, 优先使用主动语态。

D 选项 使用被动语态, 并且没有表示动作的执行者, 应优先用主动语态。 ➤ 排除 D

三步: 时态判断

明显时间标志 from 1978 to 1985 决定主句必须使用一般过去式。

E 选项 没有线索表明应使用过去完成式。 ➤ 排除 E

正确选项 C

7. The British sociologist and activist Barbara Wootton once noted as a humorous example of income maldistribution that the elephant that gave rides to children at the Whipsnade Zoo was earning annually exactly what she then earned as director of adult education for London.

(A) that the elephant that gave rides to children at the Whipsnade Zoo was earning

(B) that the elephant, giving rides to children at the Whipsnade Zoo, had been earning

(C) that there was an elephant giving rides to children at the Whipsnade Zoo, and it earned

(D) the elephant that gave rides to children at the Whipsnade Zoo and was earning

(E) the elephant giving rides to children at the Whipsnade Zoo and that it earned

读题

sb. noted that the elephant was earning...

必杀三步

一步: 宾语从句的连词 that 不能省略

D E 选项 宾语从句没有连词 *that*; 并且 D 选项 *was earning* 无法与名词短语 *the elephant* 并列, 语法上只能和谓语动词 *noted* 并列, 逻辑意思不合理; E 选项 *that it earned* 也无法和 *the elephant* 构成宾语从句并列。 ➤ 排除 D E

第二步: 时态判断

B 选项 宾语从句使用过去完成时, 主句使用一般过去时, 表示动作 *earn* 发生在 *note* 以前; 而原句宾语从句使用过去进行时, 表示 *Barbara Wootton* 注意到 (*noted*) 当时正发生的动作 (*was earning*), 所以 B 选项改变原句的合理意思。 ➤ 排除 B

第三步: 不能改变原句的合理重心

C 选项 *there be* 句型强调有这样一头大象的存在, 而原句强调大象所挣的钱与人所挣的工资的比较, *there be* 句型改变原句的强调重心。 ➤ 排除 C

正确选项 A

8. The Senate approved immigration legislation that would grant permanent residency to millions of aliens currently residing here and if employers hired illegal aliens they would be penalized.

- (A) if employers hired illegal aliens they would be penalized
- (B) hiring illegal aliens would be a penalty for employers
- (C) penalize employers who hire illegal aliens
- (D) penalizing employers hiring illegal aliens
- (E) employers to be penalized for hiring illegal aliens

此类三步

一步: 代词指代

A 选项 *they* 可以向前指代复数名词 *employers* 或者 *illegal aliens*, 代词指代引起争议。
➤ 排除 A

第二步: 逻辑意思的合理性

B 选项 划线部分“雇用非法居留者是对雇主的一种惩罚”, 逻辑意思不合理。
➤ 排除 B

第三步: 平行结构

D 选项 *legislation that would grant sth. to sb. and penalizing sb.*, -ing 形式 *penalizing* 不能够作谓语动词与 *would grant* 并列。

E 选项 *legislation that would grant permanent residency to sb. and employers to be penalized for...*, 从并列角度看, *grant ...* 与 *employers...* 或者 *permanent residency* 与 *employers* 都不能并列; 而且 *grant sb. to be done* 不符合 *grant* 的习惯搭配。
➤ 排除 D E

正确选项 C

助动词的省略

legislation that would grant sth. to sb. and (would) penalize employers. *penalize* 前的助动词 *would* 要省略。

9. What brought the automobile company back from the verge of bankruptcy short-

ly after the Second World War was a special, governmentally sanctioned price increase allowed during a period of wage and price controls.

- (A) What brought (B) The thing that brought
(C) That which brought (D) Bringing
(E) What has brought

必杀三步

一步:简洁性原则

B C 选项 the thing that 和 that which 就等于 what,但在标准书面语中用 what 引导主语从句更简洁。 ➤ 排除 B C

二步:逻辑搭配的合理性

D 选项 主语改为-ing 形式,bringing...强调动作。表语为名词短语 a price increase,强调结果,所以主语应该使用名词短语与之构成概念上的一致。doing...is a price increase 中的主语与表语逻辑上不能搭配。 ➤ 排除 D

三步:主从句时态的协调

主从句时态应保持一致,除非有合理的理由(时间标志或逻辑关系)保证这种不一致可以接受。

E 选项 主语从句使用现在完成时 has brought,主句使用一般过去时 was,主从句时态不一致,且没有合理的理由。而原句的时间短语 shortly after the Second World War 标志着主语从句应使用一般过去时。 ➤ 排除 E

正确选项 A

what 的指代对象

what 从句相当于名词短语,与 a price increase 在逻辑上可以搭配,其中 what 作为代词的指代对象为名词 increase。

10. Senator Lasker has proposed legislation requiring that employers should retain all older workers indefinitely or show just cause for dismissal.

- (A) that employers should retain all older workers
(B) that all older workers be retained by employers
(C) the retaining by employers of all older workers
(D) employers' retention of all older workers
(E) employers to retain all older workers

必杀三步

一步:虚拟语气

require 表示要求,宾语从句必须使用动词原形表示虚拟语气。

A 选项 should retain 没有使用动词原形。 ➤ 排除 A

二步:逻辑意思的合理性

B 选项 sb. be retained and show, sb. 同时作为 show 的主语,all older workers show just cause for dismissal,逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 B

三步:并列关系的改变

C D 选项 划线部分改为名词短语,改变原句 show 和 retain 的并列关系,使得动词 show 只

能和 has proposed 并列,逻辑关系不合理。✕ 排除 C D

补选

require 的习惯搭配

require sb. to do; require of sb. that...; require that...; sth. be required of sb.

正确选项 E

requiring sb. to retain and show, to retain 和 to show 并列,不定式并列第二个 to 可以省略也可以不省略。

11. During the 1980's approximately \$ 50 billion in private investment capital is estimated to have left Mexico and added to the strain on the country's debt-ridden economy.

- (A) During the 1980's approximately \$ 50 billion in private investment capital is estimated to have left Mexico and added
- (B) During the 1980's it is estimated that approximately \$ 50 billion in private investment capital left Mexico and added
- (C) It is estimated that there was approximately \$ 50 billion in private investment capital that left Mexico during the 1980's and added
- (D) It is estimated that during the 1980's approximately \$ 50 billion in private investment capital left Mexico, adding
- (E) Approximately \$ 50 billion in private investment capital is estimated as having left Mexico during the 1980's adding

读题

During the 1980's \$ 50 billion is estimated to have left...and added to...

added 前省略了助动词 have, have left 与 have added 并列。

必杀三步

一步:时态判断

A B 选项 during the 1980's 标志着它所修饰的动词必须使用一般过去时, is estimated 时态错误。✕ 排除 A B

二步:定语从句的修饰对象

C 选项 定语从句 that left...and added... 优先就近修饰 private investment, private investment left...and added。而原句的意思为 \$ 50 billion left...and added..., C 选项改变原句的意思。✕ 排除 C

三步:习惯用法

be estimated to do / be estimated to be 较常用; be estimated as + 表示价格等数量词, 书面语中较少使用。

E 选项 is estimated as doing 不符合习惯搭配。✕ 排除 E

正确选项 D

-ing 分词短语在句尾作伴随结果状语

It is estimated that during the 1980's \$ 50 billion left..., adding...

during the 1980's 修饰动词 left; \$ 50 billion left... 是原因, adding to... 是伴随结果。

12. Even today, a century after Pasteur developed the first vaccine, rabies almost always kills its victims unless inoculated in the earliest stages of the disease.

- (A) its victims unless inoculated
- (B) its victims unless they are inoculated
- (C) its victims unless inoculation is done
- (D) the victims unless there is an inoculation
- (E) the victims unless inoculated

必杀三步

一步: 永远错误的形式

下述结构永远错: 动作性名词 + be done; there be sth. done; there be a/an + 动作性名词; do + 动作性名词 (如 do the staging)

C 选项 inoculation is done 永远错。

D 选项 there is an inoculation 永远错。 ➤ 排除 C D

二步: 名词前的修饰语

名词第一次出现时, 一般不用定冠词 the 修饰, 而用不定冠词 a/an 或者 its/their 等修饰。

D E 选项 victims 第一次出现, 用 the 作前置修饰语, 错。 ➤ 排除 D E

三步: 状语从句的省略形式

A 选项 unless inoculated 是状语从句省略形式, 它修饰动词 kills, kills 的主语 rabies 就是 inoculated 的逻辑主语, “狂犬病被注射疫苗”, 逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 A

补遗

代词指代

从谓语动词 kills 可以判断主语 rabies 是单数名词, 所以 its victims 中 its 指代 rabies 没有错。

正确选项 B

unless they are inoculated 补出状语从句主语, they 指代 victims, 受害者在早期被注射疫苗, 逻辑意思合理。

13. Even though Bela Bartok's music has proved less popular than Igor Stravinsky's and less influential than Arnold Schonberg's, it is no less important.

- (A) Stravinsky's and less influential than Arnold Schonberg's, it
- (B) Stravinsky's and less influential than Arnold Schonberg's, he
- (C) Stravinsky's is and less influential than Arnold Schonberg's is, it
- (D) Stravinsky and not as influential as Arnold Schonberg, he
- (E) Stravinsky and not as influential as Arnold Schonberg, it

必杀三步

一步: 代词指代

代词指代对象的查找顺序:先主语的核心词,再宾语或表语,最后修饰语中的名词。

主句中的代词可以指代从句中的名词,从句中的代词可以指代主句中的名词,但要根据逻辑关系判断代词的具体指代对象。

B D 选项 从逻辑上看,主句主语应该是 Bela Bartok's music,代词 he 不能指代 music,所以代词指代错误。✎ 排除 B D

第二步:比较从句的省略

主句谓语动词短语使用“助动词(如 have, has, had, will)或情态动词(can, could, may, should) + verb”形式时,比较从句往往省略 verb,保留助动词或情态动词。

C 选项 even though 从句中,主句谓语动词为 has + proved,根据以上原则,比较从句中应该保留助动词 has,而不是 be 动词 is。✎ 排除 C

第三步:比较对象之间要有可比性

D E 选项 Bela Bartok's music 和 Stravinsky, Arnold Schonberg, 音乐和人比较,比较对象概念不对等。✎ 排除 D E

补选

主动形式表被动含义

sth. prove adj., prove (主动语态)应理解为“被证明”。

正确选项 A

Stravinsky's 以及 Arnold Schonberg's 中,'s 后省略了重复的名词 music。

14. In 1982 the median income for married-couple families with a wage-earning wife was \$ 9,000 more than a family where the husband only was employed.

- (A) a family where the husband only
- (B) of a family where only the husband
- (C) that for families in which only the husband
- (D) a family in which only the husband
- (E) those of families in which the husband only

必杀三步

一步:比较对象之间要有可比性

A D 选项 the median income 和 a family 进行比较,比较对象不对等。✎ 排除 A D

第二步:关系代词和关系副词

A B 选项 关系副词 where 表示在...地方,定语从句逻辑意思不合理。习惯搭配为: a family/families in which... ✎ 排除 A B

第三步:修饰语的位置

修饰语的位置不能随意改变,除非原句修饰关系不合理。

A E 选项 only 修饰 was employed,丈夫仅仅被雇用,逻辑意思不合理,only 位置及修饰对象需改变。✎ 排除 A E

补选

代词指代

作为比较对象的名词重复时,用 that/those 替换名词。

E 选项 复数代词 *those* 无法替换单数名词 *income*。

正确选项 C

that 指代作为比较对象的重复名词 *income*, 使比较对象对等。

介词 *for* 比表示所属关系的介词 *of* 更合理, 并且与主句中 *for families* 形式上对称。

only 位置改变, 修饰 *husband*, 仅仅丈夫被雇用, 逻辑意思合理。

15. *The Federalist papers*, a strong defense of the United States Constitution and important as a body of work in political science as well, represents the handiwork of three different authors.

- (A) and important as a body of work in political science as well, represents
- (B) as well as an important body of work in political science, represent
- (C) and also a body of work of importance in political science is representing
- (D) an important body of work in political science and has been representative of
- (E) and as political science an important body of work too, represent

读题

papers, 名词性同位语, *represents...*

必杀三步

一步: 平行结构形式要对称

A 选项 名词短语 *a strong defense* 与形容词 *important* 形式不对称, 不能构成平行结构。

➤ 排除 A

二步: 主谓结构

A C 选项 复数主语 *papers* 与单数谓语动词 *represents/is representing*, 主谓不一致。

D 选项 单数谓语动词短语 *has been representative of* 缺主语, 主谓结构不完整; 而且, *be representative of* 不如 *represent* 简洁。 ➤ 排除 A C D

三步: 副词的准确使用

E 选项 *too* 作为副词不能修饰名词短语 *an important body of work*。 ➤ 排除 E

补遗

1> 时态判断

C D 选项 把原句一般现在时分别改为现在进行时和现在完成时, 但没有明显的时间标志和上下文逻辑线索表明这种对原句时态的改变更符合逻辑关系。 ➤ 排除 C D

2> 逻辑意思的合理性

E 选项 *as political science* 与 *an important body of work* 间的修饰关系不合理, 因为一组作品不可能作为政治科学。 ➤ 排除 E

正确选项 B

as well as 前后 *a strong defense* 和 *an important body* 形式对称。

16. Last spring a Colorado health department survey of 72 playgrounds in private child-care centers found unsafe conditions in 95 percent of them and they ranged from splinters to equipment near collapse.

- (A) unsafe conditions in 95 percent of them and they ranged
- (B) conditions in 95 percent were unsafe and ranging
- (C) the ranging of unsafe conditions in 95 percent of them to be
- (D) that 95 percent had unsafe conditions ranging
- (E) that 95 percent of them had conditions that were unsafe; the range was

读题

A survey of ... found unsafe conditions and they ranged from ... to ...

必杀四步

一步:代词指代的一致性

A 选项 第一个代词 *them* 指代 72 playgrounds, 第二个代词 *they* 指代 *unsafe conditions*, 相同的代词(包括数上相同的代词)无法指代同一对象。 ➤ 排除 A

二步:平行结构形式要对称

B 选项 *and* 的连接对象(句子 *conditions were unsafe* 和 *-ing* 形式 *ranging from...to...*)形式不对称。 ➤ 排除 B

三步:习惯用法

C 选项 *the ranging of sth. to be from... to...* 不符合习惯表达;而且, *range (v.)* 有名词形式 *range (n.)*, 就不能使用 *the ranging* 代替 *range (n.)*。 ➤ 排除 C

四步:表达的简洁性和清楚性

E 选项 定语从句 *that were unsafe* 不简洁,直接可以用形容词 *unsafe* 修饰 *conditions*; 分号后 *the range* 缺少修饰语进行限定,意思含混。 ➤ 排除 E

正确选项 D

-ing 分词 *ranging* 就近修饰名词 *unsafe conditions*。

17. The sale of government surplus machinery will begin at 9 a.m. and continue until the supply lasts.

- (A) will begin at 9 a.m. and continue until the supply lasts
- (B) begins at 9 a.m., continuing until the supply lasts
- (C) will begin at 9 a.m. and, until the supply lasts, will continue
- (D) begins at 9 a.m. and, as long as the supply may last, it continues
- (E) will begin at 9 a.m. and continue as long as the supply lasts

必杀四步

一步:不能改变原句合理的意思和重心

B 选项 句子结构:主句 + *continuing*。 *continuing* 分词短语充当从属性成分,而原句中 *continue* 是主句的谓语,并列关系改为主从关系,改变原句的重心。 ➤ 排除 B

二步:并列结构中的省略

C 选项 句子结构: *sb. will do X1 and will do X2*。并列结构第二个 *will* 多余,必须省略。 ➤ 排除 C

三步:情态动词不能随意添加、省略或替换

D 选项 情态动词 *may* 无故添加,错。 ➤ 排除 D

四步:逻辑意思的合理性

区别 A、E 两个选项, 需要考虑逻辑表达: A 选项, until 表示时间关系; E 选项, as long as 表示条件关系。逻辑上, 销售(sale)和供应(supply)之间的关系应属于条件关系, 所以 E 选项比 A 选项更合理。 ➤ 排除 A

正确选项 E

18. Bringing the Ford Motor Company back from the verge of bankruptcy shortly after the Second World War was a special governmentally sanctioned price increase during a period of wage and price controls.

- (A) Bringing the Ford Motor Company back from the verge of bankruptcy shortly after the Second World War was a special governmentally sanctioned price increase during a period of wage and price controls.
- (B) What brought the Ford Motor Company back from the verge of bankruptcy shortly after the Second World War was a special price increase that the government sanctioned during a period of wage and price controls.
- (C) That which brought the Ford Motor Company back from the verge of bankruptcy shortly after the Second World War was a special governmentally sanctioned price increase during a period of wage and price controls.
- (D) What has brought the Ford Motor Company back from the verge of bankruptcy shortly after the Second World War was a special price increase that the government sanctioned during a period of wages and price controls.
- (E) To bring the Ford Motor Company back from the verge of bankruptcy shortly after the Second World War, there was a special price increase during a period of wages and price controls that government sanctioned.

读题

Bringing sth. was an increase. 动名词短语 doing sth. 作主语, 名词短语作表语。

必杀四步

一步: 逻辑搭配的合理性

-ing 形式强调动作, 动作性名词强调状态、结果, 两者不能用 be 动词等同起来。

A 选项 doing sth. is + 动作性名词(an increase) 是 GMAT 考试中常见的逻辑搭配错误形式。 ➤ 排除 A

二步: 简洁性原则

C 选项 that which 就等于 what, 但 that which 不简洁。 ➤ 排除 C

三步: 时态的选择

D 选项 after the Second World War 为时间标志, 表示过去时间概念, 应该用一般过去时, what 从句中谓语动词 has brought 时态错。 ➤ 排除 D

四步: 定语从句的修饰对象

E 选项 that government sanctioned 语法上应就近修饰 controls, 但逻辑上应修饰 price increase, 定语从句修饰对象不明确。 ➤ 排除 E

补遗

不能改变原句的合理意思

E 选项 to bring 目的关系强加, there be 句型强调自然存在, 都改变了原句的合理意思。

✎ 排除 E

正确选项 B

what 从句可以和名词短语并列, what 从句相当于名词短语。

that 定语从句修饰 price increase, during 介词短语修饰 sanctioned, 修饰关系层次非常清楚。

Section 2

1. Originally published in 1950, *Some Tame Gazelle* was Barbara Pym's first novel, but it does not read like an apprentice work.

- (A) does not read like an apprentice work
- (B) seems not to read as an apprentice work
- (C) does not seem to read as an apprentice work would
- (D) does not read like an apprentice work does
- (E) reads unlike an apprentice work

话题

-ed 分词短语 + 句子 1 + but 句子 2。

-ed 分词短语在句首, 逻辑主语等于句子主语, *Some Tame Gazelle* 被出版, 逻辑意思合理。

必杀二步

345

一步: 不能改变原句的合理意思

B C 选项 随意添加实义动词 seem to, 改变原句意思。✎ 排除 B C

二步: 习惯用法

1> like 的习惯用法:

like + 名词, 表示比较, 正确; like + 名词, 表示举例, 错; such as + 名词, 表示举例, 正确。

do like.../be like.../be unlike..., 正确; do unlike..., 错(应该用否定词否定动词 do 而非介词 like)。

like/unlike X1, X2 + verb..., 表示 X1 和 X2 比较。

like + 句子, 错, 应改为: as + 句子/just as + 句子/even as + 句子, 强调动作相似性。

2> as 的习惯用法:

as 作介词: as + n. 表示作为...

as 作连词: 表示时间, 当...时候; 表示原因, 因为...; 表示过程, 随着...; 表示动作的相似性(GMAT 考试中出现最多的形式), 就像..., 其主从结构形式有: as + 句子, + 主句; as + 句子, + so + 主句; as + 句子, + so too + 主句(主句要用部分倒装)。

D 选项 like(介词) + 句子, 永远错。

E 选项 reads unlike 不符合习惯用法。✎ 排除 D E

正确选项 A

2. Although all the proceedings of the Communist party conference held in Moscow were not carried live, Soviet audiences have seen a great deal of coverage.

- (A) all the proceedings of the Communist party conference held in Moscow were not carried live
- (B) all the Communist party conference's Moscow proceedings were not carried live
- (C) all the Communist party conference Moscow proceedings have not been carried alive
- (D) not all the Communist party conference Moscow proceedings have been carried alive
- (E) not all the proceedings of the Communist party conference held in Moscow were carried live

必杀二步

一步:全部否定和部分否定的习惯表达

none of + 名词, 表示全部否定; not all + 名词, 表示部分否定。

A B C 选项 all + 名词 + be not 既可以表示是全部否定也可以表示部分否定, 在标准书面语中永远错。 ➤ 排除 A B C

二步:易混词的辨析

原句中形容词 live 表示现场的, be carried live 表示现场直播。

D 选项 形容词 alive 表示活着的, 使逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 D

补选

不能随意改变修饰语的功能

B C D 选项 Moscow 作定语修饰 proceedings, 而原句 Moscow 作介词宾语, 词的功能发生改变, 必然导致原句意思的改变。

正确选项 E

3. In cold-water habitats, certain invertebrates and fish convert starches into complex carbohydrates called glycerols, in effect manufacturing its own antifreeze.

- (A) in effect manufacturing its own antifreeze
- (B) effectively manufacturing antifreeze of its own
- (C) in effect manufacturing their own antifreeze
- (D) so that they manufacture their own antifreeze
- (E) thus the manufacture of its own antifreeze

读题

in 介词短语 + 主句 + in effect + -ing 分词短语

in effect + -ing 分词短语在句尾作伴随状语。

必杀二步

一步:代词指代

A B E 选项 划线部分的 its 必须指代主句中的单数名词, 但主句中没有单数名词, 代词 its 没有指代对象。 ➤ 排除 A B E

二步:简洁性原则

同等情况下-ing 分词短语作状语比 so that 状语从句更简洁,优先选择-ing 分词形式。

➤ 排除 D

补选

不能改变原句的合理意思

B 选项 effectively (有效地) 改变原句 in effect (事实上) 的意思。 ➤ 排除 B

习惯用法

E 选项 thus + n. 永远错; thus 的正确用法: 句子, thus + doing...。 ➤ 排除 E

正确选项 C

in effect 保持原句合理意思, manufacturing 分词短语作状语更简洁, their 指代清楚。

4. Lawmakers are examining measures that would require banks to disclose all fees and account requirements in writing, provide free cashing of government checks, and to create basic savings accounts to carry minimal fees and require minimal initial deposits.

- (A) provide free cashing of government checks, and to create basic savings accounts to carry
- (B) provide free cashing of government checks, and creating basic savings accounts carrying
- (C) to provide free cashing of government checks, and creating basic savings accounts that carry
- (D) to provide free cashing of government checks, creating basic savings accounts to carry
- (E) to provide free cashing of government checks, and to create basic savings accounts that carry

读题

sb. are examining measures that require banks to disclose..., provide..., and to create....

必杀二步

一步:习惯用法

require sb. to do; require + that 从句(必须使用虚拟语气); require of sb. + that 从句(必须使用虚拟语气); sth. be required of sb.。

B C D 选项 require banks creating 搭配错。 ➤ 排除 B C D

二步:不定式的并列

不定式并列有两种形式: to do...and to do... 和 to do... and do...; 第一个不定式的 to 必须保留,后面不定式的 to 必须全部保留或者全部省略。

A 选项 to disclose..., provide..., and to create..., 不定式 to provide 和 to create 的 to 必须全部省略或者全部保留。 ➤ 排除 A

补选

平行结构的连接词

在平行结构的最后一个并列项前必须加上连接词。

D 选项 require banks to disclose..., to provide..., creating..., 如果是 to disclose 和 to provide 并列, creating 作伴随状语, to provide 前必须加上连接词 and; 如果是 to disclose, to provide 和 creating 并列, creating 前也必须加上 and。

正确选项 E

5. Although she had signed a pledge of abstinence while being an adolescent, Frances Willard was 35 years old before she chose to become a temperance activist.

- (A) while being an adolescent (B) while in adolescence
(C) at the time of her being adolescent (D) as being in adolescence
(E) as an adolescent

必杀三步

一步: 状语从句的省略形式

状语从句的省略形式: 表示转折、时间、条件的连词 + 形容词短语 / 分词短语

标准书面语中的错误形式: 表示转折、时间、条件的连词 + 介词短语 / 名词短语

B 选项 while + 介词短语, 错。排除 B

二步: 习惯用法

D 选项 as + being 不符合习惯用法。排除 D

三步: 表达简洁性

A 选项 while being... 等于 as, while being 表达不简洁。

C 选项 at the time of... 表达不简洁。排除 A C

正确选项 E

6. In his eagerness to find a city worthy of Priam, the German archaeologist Schliemann cut through Troy and uncovered a civilization a thousand years older as was the city Homer's heroes knew.

- (A) older as was the city Homer's heroes knew
(B) more ancient than the city known to Homer's heroes
(C) older than was the city known to Homer's heroes
(D) more ancient of a city than Homer's heroes knew
(E) older of a city than was the one known to Homer's heroes

必杀三步

一步: 习惯用法

A 选项 older as 永远错, 正确的搭配为: older than, as old as。排除 A

二步: 比较对象形式上要对称

C 选项 比较对象是名词 civilization 和句子 the city was, 形式不对称, 错。排除 C

三步: 词的位置不能随意改变

词的位置的改变会导致修饰关系变化, 从而改变原句的意思, 所以任何的词的位置改变都必须有充分的理由。

D E 选项 把原来在比较从句中的词 city 放到了主句中, 使原句意思产生重大改变, 而且

ancient of 及 old of 两个搭配永远错。✕ 排除 D E

正确选项 B

7. Migraine, the most debilitating common form of headache, afflicts perhaps 18 million Americans, who collectively lose 64 million workdays a year, and they cost the nation \$ 50 billion in medical expenses and lost work time.

- (A) year, and they cost the nation \$ 50 billion in medical expenses and lost
- (B) year and thus cost the nation \$ 50 billion in medical expenses and lost
- (C) year, so as to cost the nation \$ 50 billion in medical expenses and lost
- (D) year that costs the nation \$ 50 billion in lost medical expenses and
- (E) year, which thus cost the nation \$ 50 billion in lost medical expenses and

读题

Migraine, 名词性同位语, afflicts Americans, who lose sth., and they cost the nation ...

必杀三步

一步: 并列句的省略

两个句子并列, 主语相同, 第二句的主语必须承接第一句的主语省略。

A 选项 who 定语从句中, they 多余, 必须省略。✕ 排除 A

二步: 不能随意添加结果关系

C 选项 随意添加 so as to 表示动作 lose 64 million workdays a year 的结果, 逻辑意思不合理。✕ 排除 C

三步: 定语从句修饰对象的合理性

D 选项 定语从句 that costs the nation... 就近修饰名词 year, 逻辑意思不合理。

E 选项 非限定性定语从句 which thus cost the nation... 就近修饰 year, 逻辑意思不合理。

✕ 排除 D E

正确选项 B

8. In astronomy the term "red shift" denotes the extent to which light from a distant galaxy has been shifted toward the red, or long-wave, end of the light spectrum by the rapid motion of the galaxy away from the Earth.

- (A) to which light from a distant galaxy has been shifted
- (B) to which light from a distant galaxy has shifted
- (C) that light from a distant galaxy has been shifted
- (D) of light from a distant galaxy shifting
- (E) of the shift of light from a distant galaxy

必杀三步

一步: 整体意思和所属关系的区别

A B C 选项 the extent + 定语从句, 定语从句解释说明 extent, 强调整体意思。

D E 选项 the extent of 强调所属关系, 表示谁的范围, 改变了原句的合理意思和重心。

✕ 排除 D E

第二步:习惯用法

the extent to which...: to which 作定语修饰 the extent, 强调 the extent。

to the extent that...: 整个结构作状语, 强调 that 从句的内容。

C 选项 the extent that 不符合习惯搭配。✂ 排除 C

第三步:被动语态

未划线部分 by the rapid motion of... 表示动作执行者, 标志着必须使用被动语态。

B 选项 a distant galaxy has shifted toward... 使用主动语态, 错。✂ 排除 B

正确选项 A

9. In one of the most stunning reversals in the history of marketing, the Coca-Cola company in July 1985 yielded to thousands of irate consumers demanding that it should bring back the original Coke formula.

- (A) demanding that it should (B) demanding it to
(C) and their demand to (D) who demanded that it
(E) who demanded it to

必杀三步

一步:虚拟语气

demand 表示要求, 后面的宾语从句必须使用动词原形表示虚拟语气。

A 选项 should 没有省略, 错。✂ 排除 A

第二步:习惯用法

demand 的习惯搭配为: demand n. from/for n.; demand that...; demand to do...。

B E 选项 demand it to bring back... 不符合习惯搭配。✂ 排除 B E

第三步:平行结构概念要对等

C 选项 and 就近连接两个名词短语 thousands of irate consumers 和 their demand, 两者概念不对等, 不能构成平行结构, 并且把原句中的修饰成分改变为并列成分, 改变原句的重心。✂ 排除 C

正确选项 D

定语从句作定语与分词短语作定语的区别

定语从句作定语强调具体时间、具体行为; 分词短语作定语强调动作的多次性、重复性, 没有明确时间概念。

本题中有具体的时间和事件, 所以用 who demanded 比用 demanding 更合理。

10. Even though its per capita food supply hardly increased during two decades, stringent rationing and planned distribution have allowed the People's Republic of China to ensure nutritional levels of 2,000 calories per person per day for its population.

- (A) Even though its per capita food supply hardly increased during
(B) Even though its per capita food supply has hardly increased in
(C) Despite its per capita food supply hardly increasing over
(D) Despite there being hardly any increase in its per capita food supply during
(E) Although there is hardly any increase in per capita food supply for

读题

Even though..., + 主句

必备三步**一步:时态判断**

during two decades 不一定标志着必须使用完成时态,是否用完成时态由时间标志或者逻辑关系决定。

完成时态的时间标志之一:within/during/over/in + the past/last/recent + 时间短语。

逻辑关系:由上下文逻辑关系决定主从句时态是否一致。

A 选项 主句的现在完成时(have allowed)和从句的一般过去时(increased)不一致;从主从句的逻辑关系看,两动作应同步,时态应保持一致,所以 A 选项错。 ➤ 排除 A

二步:不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

despite (介词) + 名词,侧重点在名词上,强调部分概念;even though (连词) + 句子,侧重点在主谓结构上,主谓结构强调一个整体概念。GMAT 考试中经常出现用一个相同意思的介词代替连词的错误选项。

C 选项 despite (介词) + food supply (名词短语的核心词)用部分概念代替整体概念,改变原句合理重心。

E 选项 there be 句型表示自然存在,原句 sth. increase 表示主动增加的概念,改变原句的合理意思。 ➤ 排除 C E

三步:永远错误的形式

D 选项 despite + there being 永远错,正确用法:despite + 名词短语。 ➤ 排除 D

正确选项 B

11. Very popular from 1900 until the 1920's, the renewed interest in ceiling fans began when the energy crisis in 1974 forced homeowners to look for alternative methods of heating and cooling.

- (A) Very popular from 1900 until the 1920's, the renewed interest in ceiling fans began
- (B) The renewed interest in ceiling fans, which were very popular from 1900 until the 1920's began
- (C) After they were very popular from 1900 until the 1920's, the renewed interest in ceiling fans was beginning
- (D) Ceiling fans were very popular from 1900 until the 1920's, with renewed interest beginning in them
- (E) From 1900 until the 1920's ceiling fans were very popular, and now the renewed interest in them has begun

读题

Very popular, the interest in...began when...

必备三步**一步:逻辑主语**

形容词短语在句首,逻辑主语等于句子主语。

A 选项 the interest in ... was very popular 逻辑搭配不合理, interest 不能合理地充当 very popular 的逻辑主语。✂ 排除 A

第二步:时态判断

C 选项 when the energy crisis in 1974 forced... 决定了主句的过去进行时 was beginning 不合理, 应该使用一般过去时。

E 选项 一般现在时的时间标志 now 和一般过去时的时间标志 when the energy crisis in 1974 forced... 相互矛盾, 并且现在完成时态 has begun 与两个时间标志都不符合。
✂ 排除 C E

第三步:不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

D 选项 把原句的主句内容 The interest in ... began 改为从属性成分 with interest beginning, 而把原句的从句部分改为主句 Ceiling fans were very popular, 主从关系颠倒。

E 选项 把原句的主从关系改为并列关系, 使原句的从属性成分变为并列的主句, 改变原句的重心。✂ 排除 D E

正确选项 B

保持了原句的合理重心: The interest in ... began ...

定语从句就近修饰名词 ceiling fans, ceiling fans were very popular 逻辑搭配合理。

12. The British Admiralty and the War Office met in March 1892 to consider a possible Russian attempt to seize Constantinople and how they would have to act militarily to deal with them.

- (A) how they would have to act militarily to deal with them
- (B) how to deal with them if military action would be necessary
- (C) what would be necessary militarily for dealing with such an event
- (D) what military action would be necessary in order to deal with such an event
- (E) the necessity of what kind of military action in order to take for dealing with it

第三步

一步:代词指代

A 选项 根据代词指代一致性原则, 句末代词 them 应该指代前一个代词 they 所指代的对象 the British Admiralty and the War Office, 代入后 how 从句逻辑意思不合理。

B 选项 代词 them 指代句中唯一的复数名词 the British Admiralty and the War Office, 逻辑意思同样不合理。✂ 排除 A B

第二步:修饰对象的单一性

C 选项 militarily 可以向前修饰形容词 necessary, 也可以向后修饰介词短语 for doing, 修饰对象产生争议, 并且 be necessary for doing 不符合习惯搭配, 正确用法为: be necessary to do。✂ 排除 C

第三步:句子结构的完整性

E 选项 what 从句作介词宾语, 但该从句缺少谓语动词, 结构不完整。✂ 排除 E

正确选项 D

1> 动作的目的的表达

动作的目的用 to do.../in order to do...表示。

2> 平行结构

X1 and X2 met to consider a possible Russian attempt and what...: what 从句相当于一个名词短语,与名词短语 a possible... attempt to 形式对称,构成平行结构。

3> 代词指代不清时的修改方法

代词指代不清时的修改方法之一:such + 概括性名词,如 such an event。

13. In ancient times, Nubia was the principal corridor where there were cultural influences transmitted between Black Africa and the Mediterranean basin.

- (A) where there were cultural influences transmitted
- (B) through which cultural influences were transmitted
- (C) where there was a transmission of cultural influences
- (D) for the transmitting of cultural influences
- (E) which was transmitting cultural influences

此题三步

一步:永远错误的形式

A 选项 there be sth. done 永远错,应改为 sth. be done。

C 选项 there be + a/an + 动作性名词(transmission)永远错。 ➤ 排除 A C

二步:用词倾向性

如果一个动词有名词形式,如 transmission 是 transmit 的名词形式,GMAT 考试中倾向于用名词形式,而不使用其-ing 形式(the transmitting)来代替名词形式。 ➤ 排除 D

三步:定语从句逻辑意思的合理性

E 选项 把 the principal corridor 代入到定语从句中,the principal corridor was transmitting cultural influences 逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 E

补选

选项之间的用词差异分析

比较选项之间的差异是找到解题突破口的最有效方法:比较 A B C 三个选项,发现定语从句的 where 和 through which 的差异;关系副词 where = 介词 + 关系代词,但 where 无法明确地表示文化影响的传播与走廊的关系是 in which(在走廊上)还是 through which(通过走廊),所以 through which 比 where 更清楚明确。 ➤ 排除 A C

正确选项 B

14. Based on accounts of various ancient writers, scholars have painted a sketchy picture of the activities of an all-female cult that, perhaps as early as the sixth century B.C., worshipped a goddess known in Latin as Bona Dea, "the good goddess."

- (A) Based on accounts of various ancient writers
- (B) Basing it on various ancient writers' accounts
- (C) With accounts of various ancient writers used for a basis
- (D) By the accounts of various ancient writers they used
- (E) Using accounts of various ancient writers

必杀三步**一步:逻辑主语**

A 选项 -ed 分词短语在句首,逻辑主语等于主句的主语。Scholars were based on the accounts of ... 逻辑意思不合理,所以主句主语 scholars 不能充当-ed 分词短语的逻辑主语。✂ 排除 A

二步:代词指代

B 选项 代词 it 可以指代主句中的多个单数名词如 a sketchy picture 或 an all-female cult, 代词指代对象不清。✂ 排除 B

三步:简洁性原则

C D 选项 C 选项中的 with accounts of... used for a basis 和 D 选项中的 by the accounts of ... they used 表达故意复杂化,显得累赘、不简洁。✂ 排除 C D

补选**修饰对象的合理性**

C 选项 过去分词 used 就近修饰 writers 逻辑不合理。

D 选项 定语从句 they used 就近修饰 writers 逻辑意思也不合理。

正确选项 E

using accounts of ... 表达准确、简洁; scholars 充当 using 的逻辑主语,逻辑意思合理。

354

15. Quasars are so distant that their light has taken billions of years to reach the Earth; consequently, we see them as they were during the formation of the universe.

- (A) we see them as they were during
- (B) we see them as they had been during
- (C) we see them as if during
- (D) they appear to us as they did in
- (E) they appear to us as though in

必杀三步**一步:时态判断**

B 选项 整个句子中没有出现过任何过去的时间和行为,使 as 状语从句的过去完成时 they had been 没有依据。✂ 排除 B

二步:习惯用法

as, as if, as though 都表示好像...,引导状语从句。区别在于:as 引导的从句描述的是真实的情况,as if 和 as though 引导的从句,描述的是非真实情况。

C E 选项 as if / as though 隐含地表示从句内容不是真实的,不符合原句的意思。

✂ 排除 C E

三步:逻辑意思的合理性

D 选项 as 状语从句中的 did 代替重复的动词 appear, they appear to us as they appeared to us in the formation of the universe,逻辑意思不合理。✂ 排除 D

补选

不能改变原句的合理意思和重心

原句强调我们的主动行为 we see quasars, D、E 选项强调 quasars appear to us, 改变了原句的重心。

正确选项 A

16. Selling several hundred thousand copies in six months, the publication of "Maple Leaf Rag" in 1899 was an instant hit, helping to establish Scott Joplin as the preeminent ragtime composer.

- (A) Selling several hundred thousand copies in six months, the publication of "Maple Leaf Rag" in 1899 was an instant hit, helping to establish Scott Joplin as the preeminent ragtime composer.
- (B) The publication in 1899 of "Maple Leaf Rag" was an instant hit; in six months they sold several hundred thousand copies and it helped establish Scott Joplin as the preeminent ragtime composer.
- (C) Helping to establish Scott Joplin as the preeminent ragtime composer was the publication of "Maple Leaf Rag" in 1899, which was an instant hit; it sold several hundred thousand copies in six months.
- (D) "Maple Leaf Rag" was an instant hit; it helped establish Scott Joplin as the preeminent ragtime composer, published in 1899 and selling several hundred thousand copies in six months.
- (E) Published in 1899, "Maple Leaf Rag" was an instant hit, selling several hundred thousand copies in six months; it helped establish Scott Joplin as the preeminent ragtime composer.

读题

Selling...copies, the publication was an instant hit, helping to ...

-ing 分词短语 selling...copies 在句首, 逻辑主语等于句子的主语, -ing 分词短语 helping to do 在句尾作主句的伴随结果状语。

必杀四步

一步: 逻辑主语

A 选项 句子主语 the publication 无法合理地充当 selling...copies 的逻辑主语。

✂ 排除 A

二步: 代词指代

B 选项 复数代词 they 无法指代单数名词短语 the publication of ..., 代词没有指代对象。

✂ 排除 B

三步: 不能改变原句的合理重心

C 选项 Helping to do was the publication of..., 倒装语序强调 sth. help to do, 而原句的意思重心在于 sth. was an instant hit, C 选项改变原句的重心, 并且过去进行时也没有依据。✂ 排除 C

四步: 修饰语修饰对象的合理性

D 选项 -ed 分词 published 和 -ing 分词 selling 并列, 作定语就近修饰名词 composer, 修饰对象不合理。✂ 排除 D

正确选项 E

17. Under Napoleon the French were not able to organize an adequate supply system, and it was a major cause of the failure of their invasion of Russia.

- (A) Under Napoleon the French were not able to organize an adequate supply system, and it
- (B) The French being unable to organize an adequate supply system under Napoleon
- (C) For the French under Napoleon, to be unable to organize an adequate supply system
- (D) The inability of the French under Napoleon to organize an adequate supply system
- (E) The French inability under Napoleon of organizing an adequate supply system

此题四步

一步:代词指代

A 选项 划线部分代词 it 向前指代单数名词短语 an adequate supply system, 代入后“有效的供应系统是失败的原因”逻辑意思不合理。✂ 排除 A

二步:主谓一致

B 选项 being unable to 修饰主语核心词 the French, the French 和 was 主谓不一致, 并且法国人是失败的原因, 逻辑意思不合理。✂ 排除 B

三步:习惯用法

正确用法: one's ability / inability + to do; ability / inability + of sb. to do

E 选项 ability / inability + of doing 永远错。✂ 排除 E

四步:逻辑搭配的合理性

名词短语强调动作的结果、状态, 不定式短语强调动作本身。从逻辑上分析, 失败的原因应该是动作的结果而不是动作本身。

C 选项 to be unable to do... was a major cause of the failure of... 主语与表语的逻辑搭配不合理。the inability of sb. to do... 作主语, 句子的逻辑意思更清晰、更合理。
✂ 排除 C

正确选项 D

18. Scientists calculated that the asteroid, traveling at 46,000 miles an hour, is on an elliptical path that orbits the Sun once a year and regularly brings it back toward Earth.

- (A) hour, is on an elliptical path that orbits the Sun once a year and regularly brings it
- (B) hour, is orbiting the Sun once a year on an elliptical path that regularly brings it
- (C) hour, once a year orbits the Sun, regularly bringing it on an elliptical path
- (D) hour and orbiting the Sun once a year on an elliptical path, regularly bringing it
- (E) hour, orbits the Sun on an elliptical path once a year and that regularly brings it

读题

Scientists calculated that the asteroid is on a path that...

此题四步

一步:句子结构

D 选项 calculated 的宾语从句中缺少谓语动词。 ➤ 排除 D

第二步: -ing 分词短语的逻辑主语

C 选项 calculated 的宾语从句中, the asteroid orbits the sun, bringing it on a path, 代词 it 指代 asteroid, bringing 作伴随状语修饰 orbits, 逻辑主语等于 asteroid, asteroid brings itself on a path 逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 C

第三步: 平行结构功能要相同

E 选项 sb. calculated that 句子 1 and that 句子 2, that 句子 1 作宾语从句, that 句子 2 作定语从句, 两者功能不相同, 不能构成平行结构, 并且 that 句子 2 没有修饰的对象。
➤ 排除 E

第四步: 逻辑意思的合理性

A 选项和 B 选项在语法上都没有错误, 比较 A、B 选项, 从选项间的差异入手:

A 选项 that orbits the sun 修饰 path, 轨道绕着太阳转;

B 选项 the asteroid is orbiting the sun, 小行星绕着太阳转。

根据科学事实, A 选项逻辑意思不合理。 ➤ 排除 A

正确选项 B

宾语从句使用一般现在时表示科学事实, 与主句时态可以不一致。